

THE CONSTRUCTION OF AN HIERARCHICAL CONTROLLED-LANGUAGE  
VOCABULARY FOR USE AS AN INDEXING TOOL IN THE  
LINGUISTICS AND LITERATURE SUBJECT FIELDS

C.S.H. OVENS



UOVS - BIBLIOTEEK



\*198802272001220000018\*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF AN HIERARCHICAL CONTROLLED-LANGUAGE  
VOCABULARY FOR USE AS AN INDEXING TOOL IN THE LINGUISTICS AND  
LITERATURE SUBJECT FIELDS

Cora Sygun Heidrun Ovens

Submitted to fulfil the requirements for the degree

**MAGISTER BIBLIOTHECOLOGIAE**

in the

**Faculty of Arts**

(Department of Library and Information Science)

at the

**University of the Orange Free State**

**Supervisor:** Professor D W Fokker

BLOEMFONTEIN

JANUARY 1988

Financial support by the Human Sciences Research Council for this research project is gratefully acknowledged. Opinions uttered and conclusions drawn in the course of this dissertation are those of the author alone and may under no circumstances be regarded as a reflection of the opinions and conclusions of the Human Sciences Research Council.

## A C K N O W L E D G E M E N T S

My especial gratitude is expressed to the following persons:

- \* Professor D W Fokker for his unfailing assistance throughout the course of this research project
  
- \* Professor A J Viljoen and Mrs A M Dippenaar, Director and Deputy Director of the University of the Orange Free State Library Service respectively, for their active support and sympathy
  
- \* My family for their support

# C O N T E N T S

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	i	i	i
LIST OF FIGURES	i	x	
LIST OF TABLES	x	i	

## CHAPTER 1

### THE PROBLEM AND ITS SETTING

1.1	Introduction	1
1.2	The problem	7
1.2.1	The subproblems	8
1.3	Methodology	8
1.3.1	Literature survey	8
1.3.2	Sources for descriptors	9
1.3.3	Thesaurus construction	9
1.3.4	Submission to experts	9
1.3.5	Testing the thesaurus	10
1.4	The delimitations	10
1.5	Definitions	10

## CHAPTER 2

### LITERATURE SURVEY

2.1	Introduction	13
2.2	Definitions and basic principles	14
2.3	Thesaurus construction theory	24
2.4	Subject fields in thesaurus construction	28
2.5	Alternatives to the construction of new thesauri	29

2.5.1	Specialised thesauri	30
2.6	The environment of the thesaurus	30
2.7	Recall vs precision	31
2.8	Coordination	33
2.9	Preliminaries to thesaurus construction	35
2.10	Methods of thesaurus compilation	36
2.11	Rules for thesaurus construction	38
2.11.1	The form of the descriptor	38
2.11.2	Scope notes	41
2.11.3	Compound terms	42
2.11.4	Relationships of terms	44
2.11.4.1	The equivalence relationship	44
2.11.4.2	The hierarchical relationship	46
2.11.4.3	The associative relationship	47
2.12	Computerised thesaurus construction	49
2.13	Thesaurus cost	50
2.14	Thesaurus size	51
2.15	Thesaurus presentation	52
2.16	Testing	58
2.17	Thesaurus updating	59
2.18	Conclusion	60

## CHAPTER 3

### METHODOLOGY OF CONSTRUCTING THE THESAURUS

3.1	Sources of terms	61
3.2	Design of the work form	65

3.3	Rules to govern the structure of thesaurus terms	70
3.3.1	Nouns	70
3.3.2	Acronyms, abbreviations and initials	71
3.3.3	Homographs and homonyms	71
3.3.4	Slang and foreign terms	71
3.3.5	Spelling, place names and personal names	71
3.3.6	Numbers	72
3.3.7	Punctuation and diacritic marks	72
3.4	Compound terms	72
3.5	Definition of hierarchical and rela- tional indicators	73
3.5.1	The equivalence relationship	73
3.5.2	The hierarchical relationship	74
3.5.2.1	Narrower and broader terms	74
3.5.3	The associative relationship	75
3.6	The scope of the thesaurus	76
3.7	The final checking of the thesaurus' structure	78
3.8	Layout	78

## CHAPTER 4

### SUBMISSION TO THE DEPARTMENTS AND TESTING

4.1	Submission of the thesaurus to the language and literature departments	82
-----	---	----



4.2	Amendments	84
4.3	Testing the thesaurus	85
4.3.1	Practical problems experienced in indexing	85
4.3.2	Results of indexing	88
4.3.3	Thesaurus terms used in indexing	89

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **CONCLUSION**

5.1	The use of the thesaurus in practice	94
5.1.1	Computerisation	95
5.1.2	Continued amendments	95
5.1.3	Revisions of the thesaurus	96
5.2	Summary of findings	96
5.3	Recommendations	98

<b>REFERENCES</b>	<b>1 0 0</b>
-------------------	--------------

<b>APPENDIX 1</b>	<b>List of periodicals subscribed to by the language and literature departments of the University of the Orange Free State, 1985</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>APPENDIX 2</b>	<b>Indexes in which periodicals in Appendix 1 are indexed</b>	<b>114</b>

APPENDIX	3	Final list of periodicals con- sidered suitable for indexing	126
		A . Unindexed periodicals	126
		B . Periodicals indexed in <i>Current Contents</i> only	130
		C . Periodicals indexed in <i>Index to SA periodicals</i> only	130
APPENDIX	4	Periodicals excluded from the final list of periodicals to be indexed	132
APPENDIX	5	Results of the indexing test	133
APPENDIX	6	Old and new descriptors used in the indexing test	155
APPENDIX	7	Thesaurus of linguistics and literature terms	160

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2.1	Ogden and Richards' basic triangle model	25
Figure 2.2	Relationship between concepts, words and the thesaurus	25
Figure 2.3	Part of a page of a typical thesaurus	53
Figure 2.4	ERIC thesaurus sample term display	54
Figure 2.5	KWIC display of descriptors in a thesaurus	55
Figure 2.6.	Two-way hierarchical term display from a thesaurus	56
Figure 3.1	Typical entry from the main source for linguistic terms	63
Figure 3.2	Typical entry from the main source for literary terms	64
Figure 3.3	Form used for thesaurus entries	66
Figure 3.4	Working form completed with data derived from term shown in Figure 3.1	67
Figure 3.5	Working form completed with data derived from term shown in Figure 3.2	68

Figure 3.6	Part of a typical "family tree" from top term LANGUAGE to bottom term ROMANISATION	79
Figure 3.7	Thesaurus entries showing layout	81

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1	Analysis of the 100 articles tested with regard to language and subject matter	87
Table 2	Analysis of the new terms added in the course of indexing with reference to subject matter covered	90
Table 3	Usage distribution of thesaurus and new terms in indexing	92

# C H A P T E R    1

## THE PROBLEM AND ITS SETTING

### 1.1    INTRODUCTION

The economic problems experienced by information centres world-wide in coping with the plethora of published material, as well as some duplication coupled with, however, inevitable gaps in the available information resources makes it desirable to analyse such sources in depth and to make the results available in easily accessible form, if only from the point of view of co-operation with other information centres according to the principle of financial resource sharing. Nowadays the computer provides a superior vehicle for this purpose. Terminology, particularly in the field of the humanities, is diffuse, changes rapidly as the focus of research concentrates on new methodologies and schools of thought and is complicated by language differences. Information indexing and retrieval in this field are hampered by these semantic problems.

A large centralised information centre such as an university library might well analyse its collection of periodicals and monographs in depth and place the results in a computerised database for use by students and research workers and even by outside users. The employment of a controlled-language indexing vocabulary for this purpose appears to offer superior means of information retrieval.

As subject librarian to eleven language and literature departments at the University of the Orange Free State, namely the departments of African languages, Afrikaans and Netherlands, Drama and Theatre, English, General Linguistics, Literary studies, German, Greek, Latin, Romance Languages and Semitic Languages, the author had the opportunity of observing, over a period of some two years, that of the 244 periodicals subscribed to by these departments, which comprise English, American, Dutch, German, Latin, Afrikaans and French language journals covering the broad subject areas of **linguistics** and **literature studies**, not many more than two thirds were indexed. Indeed, the majority of the periodicals of South African origin are indexed only in the *Index to South African Periodicals* which, however, is usually about two years in arrears and thus not as useful as it might be, particularly when it is remembered that this is the only regular index covering most South African periodicals. Many of the other indexes covering some of the periodicals under consideration are not published at all frequently. A few of the periodicals are indexed only in *Current Contents* which is not an index at all in the proper sense of the word, consisting merely of collections of contents pages of the periodicals "indexed" and thus representing a current awareness service.

It was also noted that very many symposium and conference proceedings, festschriften and surveys in anthology form are never indexed anywhere at all, and hence the contents of these documents, in the form of frequently highly relevant articles by acknowledged authorities in their fields are, to all intents and

purposes, "lost" for retrieval purposes.

An additional problem appeared to be that of isolation. The University of the Orange Free State is virtually the only major resource centre within the radius of some hundreds of kilometers, and any hard copy indexes not made available by the University Library Service would be inaccessible for consultation by students and academic personnel in most cases. Economic considerations preclude the subscription to more than a few of the major available indexes covering the humanities and, more particularly, linguistics and literature.

The foregoing considerations prompted an informal survey of the periodicals subscribed to, in order to confirm the author's impressions. A list of the relevant periodicals (Appendix 1) was checked against the 1984 *Ulrichs International Periodicals Directory* to ascertain which of the journals were indexed and, if so, in which indexes. The results are given in Appendix 2. It was then found that *Ulrichs International Periodicals Directory* is far from reliable in that a copy of a list of journals indexed in the *Arts and Humanities Citation Index* was procured and checked against the list of "unindexed" periodicals. Some of these were found to be indexed after all in *AHCI*. However, the fact that many journals are not indexed was certainly disquietening. Appendix 3 gives the final list of unindexed periodicals, and of periodicals indexed in *Current Contents* and the *Index to SA Periodicals* only; Appendix 4 the few periodicals considered unsuitable for indexing. The idea was born



to index:

a) those journals which were not covered by hard copy indexes **available in the UOFS Library Service,**

b) those journals which were heavily in arrears as far as indexing is concerned, and which were urgently required to be indexed up to date, i.e. **South African periodicals** indexed in the *Index to South African Periodicals,*

c) those symposium and conference proceedings, festschriften and articles in anthologies which would be of major use to the user group served.

To index the above-mentioned materials, then, would be of the greatest utility in meeting and anticipating user needs at the UOFS Library Service, particularly if a database compiled in this fashion could be computerised for easier storage and retrieval. An additional consideration was that the humanities are but poorly covered in both hard copy and computerised online databases and that our South African research fields are not always in perfect accord with trends followed in Europe and particularly the United States, where most of the major indexes and computerised databases originate.

Since some need for the indexing of various information sources had already been felt amongst various departments at the University of the Orange Free State, and a general lack of a uniform method of doing so experienced; and since the Library Service had been approached previously in order to furnish advice concerning

this matter, it was decided by the Libray Service to launch a research project on the feasibility and moreover the design of an indexing system which might accommodate all the needs for such a system by all departments at the University. It was further decided that the periodicals of the literature and linguistics departments would be involved in this pilot project, particularly since their subject literature was poorly covered in existing indexes, both hard copy and online. It was also felt that the natural sciences are, in some respects, easier to index, covered more efficiently by existing indexes and hence demanded in-house indexing systems less urgently.

The next step was to carry out an informal survey as to the feelings of the eleven departments concerned. All of them agreed that a "local" database, preferably computerised, would be of considerable value, and some departments offered suggestions and their help as soon a suitable system was designed and ready to be implemented. An investigation was also made as to how many other departments would be affected by the overlap between articles indexed for the language and literature departments and subjects touched upon in the course of such indexing which would be of interest to such other departments and faculties at the University. It was found that apart from the eleven language and literature departments, the Departments of Biblical Studies, Fine Arts, History, Music and Philosophy and the Faculties of Law, Social Sciences and Theology would also benefit from such an internal database even if only the linguistics and literature periodicals were to be indexed.

At this stage, an estimate of the volume of indexing to be expected per annum and hence averages per week and per day was made, by consulting information given in Appendix 3. Those periodicals suitable for indexing were identified and an estimate of the number of periodical, book, symposium and conference proceeding articles to be indexed per annum was calculated. About 2 500 - 3 000 periodical articles and perhaps another 1 200 articles from other sources could be expected per annum; working on a year of 260 working days, some 15 articles would be expected to be indexed daily. It was decided that the information officer responsible for the eleven departments in question could handle the indexing required as part of the duties involved in the job description, particularly if help in the shape of a data typist, as well as expert assistance with the assigning of descriptors from subject specialists in the departments was forthcoming.

However, a stumbling block arose in that no suitable thesaurus of descriptors appeared to be available. For various reasons, to be discussed in the following chapter, it was decided that a controlled-language vocabulary would be preferable, particularly in view of the language complication - many of the common English literature and linguistics terms have not yet been uniformly translated into Afrikaans. However, such a thesaurus of terms, especially one covering both linguistics and literary criticism, simply could not be traced. Available hardcopy indexes, such as the *Humanities Index*, employed Library of Congress subject headings, which were adjudged as too clumsy and at the same time

not specific enough for a computerised database as a result of their pre-coordinate nature.

As a result it was decided that a thesaurus would have to be constructed to meet the need for controlled, hierarchically structured descriptors. Enquiry at various institutions in South Africa revealed too that no such thesaurus had been constructed in this country to date.

The task of constructing such a thesaurus was entrusted to the author as a result of her experience over a period of two years in the subject field from the points of view of handling enquiries by students and lecturers, of regularly consulting the literature concerned, and of being familiar with at least some of the subject terminology in the English language. Moreover, two subject dictionaries were chosen (22, 43) as containing particularly helpful indications of various relationships between terms to act as bases for the thesaurus. The inductive method of thesaurus construction was chosen as being more suitable for the particular circumstances of the pilot project, as will be described in Chapter III.

## **1.2 THE PROBLEM**

The problem this study has set out to solve, therefore, is the construction of a thesaurus of linguistics and literature descriptors showing hierarchical relationships and reconciling the two fields covered in a meaningful fashion.

## **1.2.1 The Subproblems**

**1.2.1.1** The **first** subproblem was to find out how to set about constructing a controlled-language thesaurus in the humanities.

**1.2.1.2** The **second** subproblem was to find out where authoritative sources of descriptors to be included in the proposed thesaurus might be obtained.

**1.2.1.3** The **third** subproblem was how to apply the answers to subproblems one and two and to construct such a thesaurus in good earnest.

**1.2.1.4** The **fourth** subproblem was how to check the thesaurus constructed for adequacy of terms included and logic of the hierarchical relationships involved.

**1.2.1.5** The **fifth** subproblem was to test the usefulness of the thesaurus thus amended and produced in its final format.

## **1.3 METHODOLOGY**

### **1.3.1 Literature survey**

It was decided that the **first** subproblem would be handled by surveying the literature of thesaurus construction in the humani-

ties and that a suitable format as well as a methodology of thesaurus construction would be chosen as a result of this survey.

### **1.3.2 Sources for descriptors**

Practices recommended in the literature consulted would guide the choice of suitable sources for descriptors. However, circumstances obtaining in the practical environment of the study would also play their role in this connection, in order to solve the **second** subproblem.

### **1.3.3 Thesaurus construction**

A thorough grasp of the principles of thesaurus construction, obtained from a study of the literature, would now be employed in isolating suitable descriptors from the sources chosen in accordance with the general practice. The descriptors identified in this fashion would be arranged in an hierarchically structured vocabulary or thesaurus covering the subject field of language and literature in order to solve the **third** subproblem.

### **1.3.4 Submission to experts**

The draft thesaurus thus constructed would be submitted to the language and literature departments for suggestions and feedback in order to solve the **fourth** subproblem.

### 1.3.5 Testing the thesaurus

After any alterations and amendments suggested by the language and literature departments had been made, the usefulness of the thesaurus would be tested by indexing a certain number of randomly chosen articles with its help.

## 1.4 THE DELIMITATIONS

It was decided that the thesaurus would be open-ended in that it could not possibly hope to include all the terms needed in the indexing of all the varied periodicals to be indexed. The thesaurus of terms will be a starting point only in that its use as an indexing tool, particularly for a computerised database, will cause many terms to be added to it, necessitate the elaboration of certain terms into several more specific, narrower terms and cause other terms to be discarded. For instance, terms for particular languages, e.g. GERMAN LANGUAGE, and specific literary works, e.g. SHAKESPEARE, WILLIAM. TWELFTH NIGHT, would not be included at this stage, but will only be added as and when encountered in the practical indexing situation.

## 1.5 DEFINITIONS

**Thesaurus:** A controlled-language hierarchically structured vocabulary of descriptors and entry terms for the purpose of indexing documents or for help in formulating search strategies

**Descriptors:** Indexing terms or keywords structured hierarchically and subject to certain rules

**Documents:** Any article contained in a journal or book, any monograph or any other written, graphic or three-dimensional representation containing information

**Database:** Corpus of bibliographic references, representing indexed documents, in a machine readable and searchable format

**Broader term or BT:** Descriptor which is superordinate to narrower, more specific descriptors which are related to it generically or in a part-whole relationship

**Narrower term or NT:** Descriptor which is hierarchically subordinate to one or more broader terms

**Related term or RT:** Descriptor which is related by association to another term. The relationship cuts across the hierarchical structure of these terms.

**Scope note or SN:** Definition or delimitation in meaning of the descriptor in the context of the indexing vocabulary

**USE:** Reference from a non-preferred descriptor to a preferred descriptor

**Use for or UF:** List of non-preferred terms given with a preferred term

**Preferred term:** Descriptor used for indexing

**Non-preferred term:** So-called "entry-vocabulary" which refers the indexer/user from a term not to be used to a term to be used

**Entry-vocabulary:** All the non-preferred terms which lead the indexer/user to the correct descriptor

**Modifiers:** Terms in parentheses after descriptors which are homographs to clarify in which context they are used in the



thesaurus

**Homographs:** Words of different meaning but the same spelling, which must be qualified by modifiers to make their meaning clear

**Indexing:** The identification of concepts representing a document's contents, and translating the concepts into descriptors derived from thesauri and other sources

**Pre-coordination:** The combining of several words to form descriptors in the form of compound terms

**Post-coordination:** Single-term descriptors only are used in the indexing of documents. Combinations of these single terms in the search process retrieve compound subjects

**Concepts:** Units of thought

## C H A P T E R 2

### LITERATURE SURVEY

#### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

A manual search of the various catalogues of the UOFS Library Service and hard copy indexes such as LISA and LIBRARY LITERATURE was supplemented with online searches on the DIALOG LISA and INFORMATION SCIENCE ABSTRACTS databases. Initial searches on the combination "thesaurus construction or development" with "humanities or languages or linguistics or literature" in various forms retrieved so few documents that articles on the former concept alone were retrieved. It was then found that when a few of the basic works were consulted (i.e. items 1, 11, 18, 19, 20, 30, 33, 44, and 47 of the list of references), very little useful additional information could be culled from the other items; most authors merely repeated or reframed basic principles adduced in the aforementioned publications. In addition, the great majority of publications dealing with the practical construction of specific thesauri for specific subjects dealt with subjects in scientific and technological disciplines. The general tenor appeared to be that thesaurus construction in the humanities and social sciences was far more difficult than that in the sciences (e.g. 46, p. 336), but no practical hints on how to approach such construction were vouchsafed. The literature search confirmed, however, that there was no thesaurus available in the linguistics and literature field. Most of the documents concerned were also very meagre on the theoretical side, although almost uniform in

recommendations of practical rules for the form descriptors should take. It was adjudged futile to widen the search for yet more articles and monographs on the subject, when this general uniformity was taken into account.

## 2.2 DEFINITIONS AND BASIC PRINCIPLES

From a study of the literature it appears that the thesaurus is of use to three groups of persons associated with information storage and retrieval systems, viz. the user, whom it may assist in formulating his requests for information, the intermediary in the shape of the information officer/librarian who physically retrieves the required information for the user and the indexer who uses the thesaurus for the purpose of assigning descriptors to a document to be indexed. It may well happen that groups one and two may be merged, when the user retrieves documents without the help of an intermediary, or that groups two and three are merged, when the indexer also retrieves the information he has encoded and stored in an information retrieval system for the user at the latter's request. The information storage and retrieval system is presumed to be a store of documents, in the widest sense of the word, on a more or less narrow and specific subject or range of disciplines, which documents have been indexed and may be retrieved according to a definite system.

Indexing means the examination of a document and establishing its contents by means of identifying the concepts used by the author

and translating them into appropriate indexing terms (11, p. 2). The indexer should at the same time bear in mind for whom the information contained in the document is intended and for what purpose this person will use it (33, p. 185), and subject knowledge as well as an appreciation of user needs are also most important in indexing (12, p. 330).

A document has been defined as "any item, printed or otherwise, which is amenable to cataloguing or indexing" (11, p. 1; 19, p. 2 and 20, p. 4).

A concept is defined as "a unit of thought" (11, p. 1). The subject analysis of a document is then accomplished by identifying the principal concepts, for which the following guide may be used:

Did anything happen?

If so, to whom or what?

Where?

Was an identified agent or instrument involved?

Was the topic viewed from a special or unusual viewpoint by the author? (4, p. 6)

It may be added that indexing is by no means a simple procedure and concept identification is difficult. Indexers frequently differ widely in their interpretation of concepts (37, p. 35). Decisions must be taken as to the depth of indexing to be striven for: how detailed it is to be, what constitutes an indexable unit of information, how many terms, on average are to be assigned to

a document (3, p. 1). There is also the question of what the basis of indexing is to be, viz. symbols, i.e. words in the text, or concepts, which exist in the human mind, but are expressed in symbols (3, p. 1). Indexing problems arise in the morphological variants of words, e.g. spelling, plurals, etc. (one of the solutions being the use of stems or roots) and in the proper identification of multi-word terms (44, p. 64). Errors due to concept analysis failure, translation failure, omissions, lack of specificity in the vocabulary used and lack of specificity in indexing, may occur in indexing (33, p. 185).

"Indexing terms" is the final component of the indexing process to be defined. There are various definitions: "the representation of a concept in the form of either

- a term derived from natural language, preferably a noun or noun phrase, or

- a classification symbol" (11, p. 1)

or "essentially 'labels' assigned to document classes" (33, p. 115), "the representation of a concept, preferably in the form of a noun or noun phrase" (20, p. 4), "preferably a noun or noun phrase which represents a concept" (19, p. 2), "descriptors are those concepts under which entries are made in the inverted file" (44, p. 115), and, comprehensively, "a term is the generic word for the semantic unit of an indexing language. A concept is a term which attempts as far as possible to have a specific meaning, and a descriptor is a term which encompasses a range of concepts grouped in some classificatory or arbitrary manner. A keyword is any term which is 'preferred' for use in indexing and

retrieval, and a lead-in term is one not so used, but which is referred to a keyword" (18, p. 9). It may be noticed that some of these definitions contradict one another in the meaning assigned to various terms. However, the basic meaning of an "indexing language" is revealed quite clearly, namely that it is a **controlled** language (usually with reference to orthography and synonymy) of **descriptors** (in uniterm or phrase form), which are employed in **indexing** to represent **concepts** (usually, but not always, uniconcepts) contained in a **document** and thus representing the author's ideas or thoughts. The descriptors may (or may not) be structured **hierarchically** to facilitate both indexing and retrieval.

Indexing terms or indexing language may take three forms, or combinations thereof. The indexer can employ "free language terms", i.e. terms he assigns to the document derived from his own knowledge of the subject. These terms may be noted in an authority list or term list for consistency in indexing, or even in something termed a "free language thesaurus" (1, p. 47) which has the advantages of no information loss, no loss in specificity, no vocabulary lag and that human error is eliminated (?), but the disadvantages of higher input costs, a greater burden placed on the searcher and a higher incidence of false drops in retrieval (33, p. 139). Presumably free language thesauri operate best in a computerised form. The second option the indexer has is "natural language", i.e. to use terms employed by the author, again minimally controlled, and collected into a "natural lan-

guage thesaurus" (52, p. 132). "Natural language" is more frequently urged as a *source* for controlled language indexing terms (49, p. 161; 37, p. 34; 34, p. 4), some authors contending that an indexing language is only of value when linked to a corpus of literature (32, p. 46; 45, p. 69; 5, p. 347; 19, p. 16). On the other hand, Lancaster maintains that an indexing language must primarily be based on "free language" employed by users of the information retrieval system in formulating their queries (33, p. 32), and Svenonius contends that too much vocabulary control may be deleterious to the user's search in that most thesaurus relationships are viewpoint dependent and no thesaurus could possibly be constructed incorporating all possible viewpoints (46, pp. 337-338). The third source of indexing terms is the controlled indexing language or thesaurus proper.

Definitions of what a thesaurus is are legion. The term thesaurus itself is derived from the Greek word meaning storehouse or treasury (18, p. 4) and some of the definitions below are inadequate or else refer to mere term or authority lists. Definitions of "indexing languages" are also included when these obviously stand for controlled language thesauri:

- "A thesaurus is a lattice of descriptors which displays polyhierarchical linkages and often a number of 'temporary relationships'" (18, p. 40)

- " A compilation of words and phrases showing synonymous, hierarchical and other relationships and dependencies, the function of which is to provide a standardized vocabulary for information storage and retrieval" (47, p. 18)

- "A standard catalogue of words from which an indexer or enquirer draws a few to represent the content of one particular document. This identity should hold sufficiently well for that document to be recognized within a collection of documents as one satisfying an enquiry expressed in those words - or in different words of similar meaning" (47, p. 18)

- "All thesauri are synthetic systems in which index terms may be combined either at the indexing or searching stage; but they may vary in their level of pre-coordination" (1, p. 22)

- "A controlled list of terms, with indication of conceptually associated terms, for use in information retrieval systems, in connection with post-coordinate indexing" (52, p. 129)

- "The thesaurus, an authority list or controlled vocabulary of terminology, is an enumeration of approved index terms from which the indexer and searcher make their selections. Entries also appear for nonapproved terms and the user is referred to appropriate approved terms" (41, p. 117)

- "The surface structure of a thesaurus consists of the individual terms and the labels ascribed to them. The 'syntax' of the surface structure is artificially imposed by the constructor of the thesaurus, who defines the relations between terms according to his understanding of the particular field concerned. The deep structure, on the other hand, forms a semantic network, in which the individual terms are nodes and the relations between them links" (32, p. 45)

- "A thesaurus is a compilation of selected terms with



appropriate term interrelationships displayed in such a way as to promote maximum consistency in the description of concepts for indexing and searching" (30, p. 149)

- "A vocabulary based on these principles - natural language, hospitality, adequate cross-referencing, and ease-of-use - we shall dub a 'thesaurus'" (49, p. 162)

- "A means for displaying the terms in a controlled indexing language, together with indications of their *a priori* relationships" (19, p. 2)

- "The vocabulary of a controlled indexing language ... formally organized so that the a priori relationships between concepts (e.g. as 'broader' and 'narrower') are made explicit" (20, p. 4)

- "A thesaurus can be defined as a structural vocabulary for use in information storage and retrieval systems" (42, p. 341)

- "Lists descriptors alphabetically, endeavors to control synonyms and homographs, and displays generic-specific and other relationships between terms" (33, p. 23)

- "A thesaurus is in essence a subject headings list of simple concepts only and it does not contain any compound subjects. The single concept however may consist of more words than one" (8, p. 30)

- "A thesaurus is a grouping or clustering of terms into certain subject categories called concept classes. In a document retrieval system, clustering provides for retrieval of all items containing terms in a concept class when any term in the class occurs in a user query. A term may be placed in more than one concept class, thus providing for ambiguous terms" (7, p. 124)

- "A thesaurus must list terms, exhibit relationships and define vocabulary" (5, p. 346)

- "The main agent in establishing a coincidence of vocabularies in indexing and searching by conducting both operations in a common language" (18, p. 2)

- "A controlled list of index terms is generally known as a *controlled vocabulary* or as an *authority list*" (33, p. 1)

- "A type of 'transformer'" (32, p. 46)

- "A controlled set of terms selected from natural language and used to represent, in summary form, the subjects of documents" (20, p. 4)

- "Exists primarily to bring the vocabulary of the indexer and the vocabulary of the searcher into coincidence. Normally it will provide a control over synonyms and near-synonyms to prevent different indexers from using different terms to express identical subject matter" (33, p. 2)

- "Consists of symbols or combinations of symbols representing information in the system" (14, p. 261)

- "Should be seen as a list of alternatives to be used at will" which in time "begins to assimilate the characteristics of its owners - the users" (47, p. 53)

The purpose of the thesaurus in indexing is said to be fourfold:

- to control terms used in indexing and to enable concepts expressed by the author of a document or formulated by the user in an enquiry, to be translated into a controlled language used in indexing,

- to limit the number of terms with regard to specificity in expressing concepts contained in a document,
- to ensure consistency in indexing, and
- to serve as an aid to retrieval (19, p. 1)

In other words, terminological control provides a situation where, no matter where the indexer or the searcher starts, the thesaurus should lead him to the correct term for the concept envisaged (44, p. 4). Terms are restricted to selected single meanings within the particular thesaurus, by means of scope notes or by their positions in the hierarchy, and, in the case of synonyms, one term is preferred and the other leads to that preferred term by means of a cross reference. Any synonyms of a preferred term serve as access terms (20, p. 8; 19, p. 3). Control implies prescription, by means of cross references, and suggestion, by means of Related Terms or "see also" references (33, p. 187). The advantages of a controlled vocabulary are that it solves semantic problems and identifies related concepts, guides and interprets for, the indexer and user, reduces the scattering of terms and results in high recall and precision of retrieval, provided it is well constructed. The disadvantages are high costs resulting from the need for trained indexers, time-lag in terminology, and the fact that indexers may misunderstand or misinterpret documents to be indexed (14, p. 262). An indexing language should suit the subject covered as well as enquiries received dealing with that subject and be compatible with both. It should contain no very rare and no very common concepts, should use ambiguous words only in one specifically defined sense (47, pp. 21-22); it should mandatorily include a list of descriptors and optionally a list

of role indicators and/or relators and be constructed according to a set of formation rules (44, p. 28) or syntax or order of elements (14, p. 261). The thesaurus also serves to validate indexing in terms of spelling, synonymy, etc. (50, p. 71). The fact that words derive meaning from the context in which they are used reinforces the need for controlling indexing vocabulary, so that meanings are fixed exactly for the purpose of indexing (41, p. 118). Thesauri should be simple, reliable, economical, and acceptable to users and operators of information storage and retrieval systems (18, p. 139). Deficiencies of thesauri may take the form of an inability to indicate the meaning of a document and an inability to express an enquiry (46, p. 334); also, the fact that they are never complete (47, p. 120): they always lag somewhat behind the newest terminology.

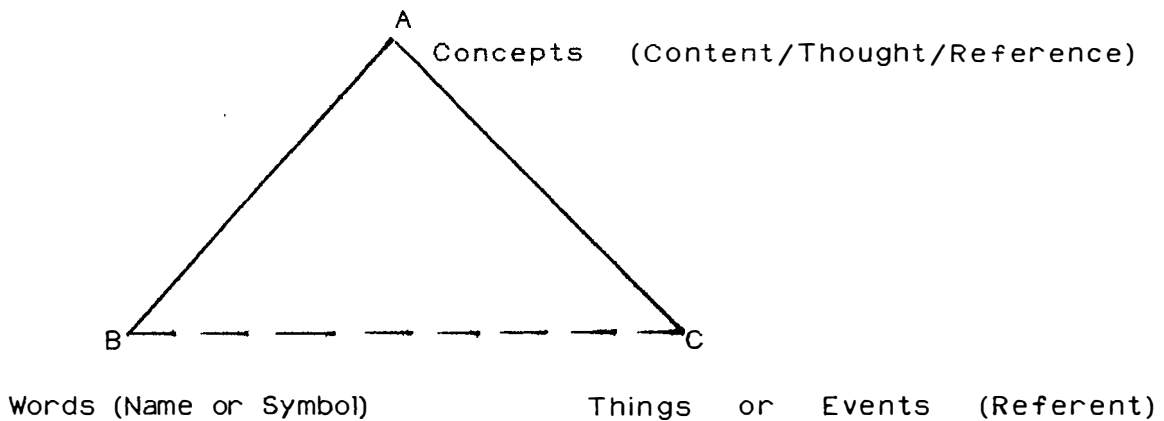
There appear to be, then, almost as many definitions and conceptions of thesauri as there are thesauri. Some of the definitions above seem to define word lists rather than thesauri, the difference being that whereas the former are straightforward lists of preferred and non-preferred terms, the latter contain cross-references (18, p. 6). Some definitions lay stress on the information retrieval system and the user, some on polyhierarchies, but most "fail to mention anything about the underlying or assumed semantic theory upon which statements on construction of a thesaurus are based" (30, p. 149). For the purposes of this study, the term **thesaurus** will be taken to mean an alphabetical list of descriptors, controlled as to syno-

nymy and orthography and indicating hierarchical and associative relationships, provided with scope notes and qualifiers where necessary and presented in a certain uniform format, for the purpose of indexing documents so that they may be retrieved with maximum recall and precision.

### 2.3 THESAURUS CONSTRUCTION THEORY

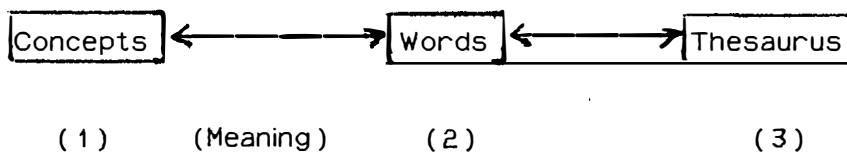
Kim very pertinently points out that very many guides to thesaurus construction, with quantities of rules, exist, but hardly any literature discusses why such rules are needed. He adduces from various definitions and functions of thesauri that a thesaurus should be founded on two different theories - a semantic and an epistemic theory (29, p. 149). He discusses two theories of meaning: the analytical or referential theory and the operational or contextual theory of meaning.

The former theory, derived from Ogden and Richards, views meaning as having three different components: concepts, words, and things or events (see Figure 2.1). Meaning exists between relationships of the components, such as the symbolisation relationship between concepts and words, and the reference relationship between concepts and things or events, or words and things or events. The former is a linguistic relationship, the latter two non-linguistic relationships. Kim decides that the concepts -> words relationship is crucial for thesaurus construction and should be reciprocal and reversible (see Figure 2.2), i.e. words -> con-



**Figure 2.1 Ogden and Richards' basic triangle model**

(Adapted from: KIM, C. Theoretical foundations of thesaurus construction and some methodological considerations for thesaurus-updating. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 24, no. 2, 1973, p. 150)



**Figure 2.2 Relationship between concepts, words and the thesaurus**

(Adapted from: KIM, C. Theoretical foundations of thesaurus construction and some methodological considerations for thesaurus-updating. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 24, no. 2, 1973, p. 150)

cepts, concepts -> words (29, p. 150). A thesaurus must retrieve

words which reflect concepts; it endeavours to establish one-to-one relationships between words and concepts.

The second theory of meaning, the operational (contextual) theory, postulates a new meaning or concept of the term "concept": that it is synonymous with a set of operations; if it is not, it is meaningless. "The true meaning of a word is to be found by observing what a man does with it, not what he says about it" and "meaning of a word is its use ... to determine use is to determine its context" (29, p. 151). "Meaning is therefore all the contexts in which a word may occur" (29, p. 151).

The first semantic theory is concerned, therefore, with meaning in speech; the second theory with meaning in language; they thus complement each other. In thesaurus construction, however, the referential theory of meaning is more apposite (29, p. 151). In retrieval, moreover, the thesaurus does more than retrieve documents : it acquaints us with the meaning it represents as a result of retrieving documents, i.e. the meaning of the words it retrieves (29, p. 152).

In the epistemic context, Kim asserts that although most thesauri/indexing vocabularies are supposed to be *dynamic*, they are constructed to describe a specific domain of language. The author takes exception to this definition as indicating a *static* view of the field of knowledge and finds contradiction in this juxtaposition: "it is analogous to saying: one cannot think of

something if that something is not linguistically expressible" (29, p. 152), "in short ... language formulates thought instead of the other way around" (29, p. 152). Kim maintains that by implying that vocabularies formulate our knowledge, instead of the reverse, we create areas of knowledge by controlling vocabularies which inhibit creative thinking, which is absurd (29, p. 153). In this context, Lancaster's plea that the user should be allowed to formulate enquiries in his own "natural" language, and that the information officer should only then translate the concepts expressed into retrieval language by means of the thesaurus, should be mentioned (33, p. 190). A thesaurus may be used by the information officer to formulate searches for users (50, p. 71). Summing up, Kim admits that no theory of thesaurus construction and maintenance has been formulated by him, but that when such a theory is formulated, it must account for concepts of meaning and knowledge and must be based on semantic and epistemic theories: it must "*account for the conversion of what is read or written into knowledge and the conversion of knowledge into what is read or written*" (29, p. 155: Kim's italics).

Kleinbart describes the thesaurus as a metalinguistic network and the indexing process as "a flow of information from the literature through the thesaurus and the system, to the user" (32, p. 46). This seems a very pertinent point in that metalanguage is defined as "The language or set of symbols which is used to analyse and describe another language" (22, p. 140), i.e. it is largely an artificial language; and since a thesaurus by reason of the control it exercises over terminology and by its



viewpoint-oriented approach (46, pp. 337-338) is highly artificial, the analogy seems justified.

## 2.4 SUBJECT FIELDS IN THESAURUS CONSTRUCTION

The subject fields to be indexed play a major role in thesaurus structure and hence construction (46, p. 336). It would appear that the natural sciences and technology make far more funds available for developing thesauri and that such thesauri are more liable to consist of terms readily amenable to logical analysis, division and structuring (21, p. 133). Then too, there are fewer unique descriptors which are used more heavily in these disciplines, whereas in the social sciences, a much smaller proportion of the total number of terms available is used frequently (30, p. 6). Social science vocabulary tends to be imprecise and ambiguous, and much overlapping in meaning occurs (21, p. 133; 17, p. 211). The same may be said for the humanities, perhaps to an even greater extent (52, p. 130). Few thesauri have been published in these areas: the construction of new thesauri can rarely lean on the guidance of published thesauri (41, p. 119). Thesaurus construction in the humanities or even the social sciences is certainly very poorly represented in the literature. The majority of theoretical and practical guides to the design and construction of thesauri refers to natural sciences and technology. What has been advocated for the subject of literature studies, related to the humanities, is the use of part-controlled vocabularies, i.e. a small controlled stock of very broad descriptors supplemented

by free language terms by the indexer, based on his subject knowledge and thus dealing with rapidly changing terminology (21, pp. 133-134; 44, p. 57; 46, pp. 333-334). This seems a good solution except that retrieval would be complicated by the high incidence of uncontrolled free language terms.

## **2.5 ALTERNATIVES TO THE CONSTRUCTION OF NEW THESAURI**

Since thesaurus construction is such an enormous task to undertake, many authors advise that convertible thesauri be constructed or used (1, p. 48), i.e. that very general macrothesauri be adapted to specific subject fields. The adaptation of existing thesauri, if at all possible, is urged (1, p. 5; 15, p. 127; 5, p. 347; 33, p. 164; 44, p. 10). The adaptation of a very basic thesaurus as a basis for a new thesaurus is described (40, pp. 441-442). The problem of reconciling (50, p. 71) different thesauri or descriptors from downloaded document references which were indexed originally with the help of different thesauri is discussed but not resolved (31, pp. 26-33) and methods of facilitating such a step described (39, pp. 140-141). Reindexing might have to be considered if reconciliation fails completely (31, p. 33). The problems attendant on multilingual thesauri are treated by various authors and appear to be even more complicated (47, p. 46; 4, pp. 12-13; 33, p. 174). Computer technology is advocated for the development of such thesauri in most cases.

### 2.5.1 Specialised thesauri

The thesaurofacet "completely integrates the thesaurus and the faceted classification. The vocabulary contains both a complete classification and a complete thesaurus, one complementing the other, and is thus able to achieve the full advantages of both" (33, p. 66) and appears to be far more flexible and to represent an advance on the straightforward thesaurus (39, p. 138).

"String rotation", whereby keywords are assigned by the indexer with subject knowledge, arranged in a meaningful sequence, i.e. a logical string, and then connected by means of various punctuation marks denoting various types of association, is an alternative to indexing with the aid of a thesaurus. Rotation takes place to provide access to every keyword. This method may be used in a manual or a computerised system (12, p. 325).

"Minimum vocabularies", containing no terms capable of verbal definition by means of other terms in the vocabulary, are also advocated (51, p. 129).

Vocabularies generated by automatic (computerised) indexing are discussed in more detail in section 2.12 of this chapter.

## 2.6 THE ENVIRONMENT OF THE THESAURUS

Before thesaurus construction commences, the retrieval system it is to serve should be studied (1, p. 2). Such a system may be

evaluated by either user criteria and management criteria or by general criteria such as coverage, usability, recall and precision, response time, presentation, user effort (18, p. 126), and output format (47, p. 107). Testing may be done by means of real queries as well as made-up ones (47, p. 107). The user, in fact, must be kept in mind during construction as well as during maintenance of an indexing language, and of course during indexing (44, p. 5; 45, p. 69; 17, p. 214), since the user and indexer are, in a sense, partners (52, p. 238). The user should be the source of indexing vocabulary in that significant words of actual questions should form the basis of thesaurus construction (5, p. 346), i.e. such words would become a pool of potential terms which must then be structured to form thesaurus terms, much as any other source of terms.

## 2.7 RECALL VS PRECISION

One of the most important aspects of an information retrieval system is that of recall versus precision. To test for both, a search should be made for which results can be checked independently. The formulae for recall and precision can be calculated as follows:

	Relevant	Not relevant
Documents retrieved	a	b
Documents not retrieved	c	d

Then

$$\text{Recall} = a / (a + c)$$

$$\text{Precision} = a / (a + b)$$

$$\text{Fallout} = b / d$$

A recall and precision figure of 80% should be aimed for (47, p. 108). Recall and precision, however, vary inversely, according to some authors (18, p. 12), but not always and not necessarily, according to others (46, p. 335). Retrieval failures should be analysed in terms of thesaurus quality, indexing quality, searching quality and the quality of the user-system interface. Thesaurus failures may be due to lack of specificity and/or ambiguous and spurious relationships. On the other hand, if vocabulary is very specific, high precision but low recall may result; it is better, however, to err on the side of high precision (33, pp. 107-112). Specificity could be restricted to core areas to keep the size of the thesaurus to reasonable proportions (19, p. 19; 20, p. 60).

Indexing systems may be recall orientated, in which case there is strict synonym control, word form control, frequently in the shape of stem and root use, and classification, including hierarchies, lattices, facet analysis, semantic factoring and clumps or clusters; or precision orientated with coordination, links (18, p. 45; 47, p. 27; 41, p. 124; 39, p. 141, 33, p. 123), roles (47, p. 27; 41, p. 124; 39, p. 141; 33, pp. 126-127), weighting and relational indexing (18, p. 15). Precision devices include increased shades of meaning by means of increased number of speci-

fiers, coordination, linking, relational indicators and weighting (33, pp. 12, 132; 14, p. 270; 18, p. 55; 47, p. 126); recall devices include grouping into classes, synonym control and grouping by statistical association (33, p. 12; 14, p. 270). Precision lies in the level of pre-coordination (1, pp. 7-8). "If, however, one designs a high-relevance system, i.e. more index entry terms, then one can possibly achieve a high recall as well by the simple expedient of additional searches" (5, p. 350).

## 2.8 COORDINATION

Coordination simply means the number of concepts expressed by a single descriptor. "Some words in the English language, for example, are 'conceptually pre-coordinate' in that they express, in themselves, a relationship between two or more concepts" (33, p. 6), e.g. LAMPSHADE, SUNSTROKE, WOODLAND. Coordinate indexing relies on a number of basic words (27, p. 120). Uniterms, i.e. strictly one-word descriptors, are discussed by Townley (47, p. 19) and it is maintained that they are *not* necessarily single-word terms (5, p. 351). They cannot, however, show syntax and may cause false associations (13, pp. 21-22; 44, p. 118). Some of the earliest thesauri consisted of uniterms only (42, p. 342). Problems associated with uniterms include those concerning synonyms, homographs, generic searches, false drops and problems due to viewpoint and context (33, p. 22).

Uniconcepts, on the other hand, imply that descriptors may be

uniterms or compound terms, but only a single concept is expressed. Modern thesauri tend also to include pre-coordinated terms expressing polyconcepts (42, p. 342).

There are different types of thesauri, then: pre-coordinated classified, post-coordinated, or subject headings (8, p. 1). Post-coordination means that basic classes only are included, pre-coordination implies classes which are the logical product of two or more classes (33, p. 5).

Post-coordinate systems are synthetic and manipulative (33, p. 6): single concepts are combined during the searching phase (14, p. 272). Post-coordination makes for less precision; commonly occurring word combinations, such as bound terms which are terms only associated with each other (33, p. 22), should be pre-coordinated even in largely post-coordinated vocabularies (14, p. 272). Post-coordination appears to be more favoured in thesaurus construction (24, p. 39; 5, p. 345), but one gets the impression that where a strict adherence to post-coordination alone would be detrimental to the quality of the information service or to user interest, convenience will permit a certain measure of pre-coordination, in that pre-coordinated uniconcepts unique to the subject field covered will be included.

It appears that in the sciences, compound terms result in better retrieval (18, p. 43) by reason of specificity in indexing, and compound terms mean pre-coordination (18, p. 3). Pre-coordination indicates that coordination is done at the time of indexing, but

even compound terms can be coordinated with yet other terms at the time of searching for complex retrieval. Pre-coordination reduces false drops, but adds to the cost of the thesaurus by increasing vocabulary size. It also lowers recall (14, p. 272; 18, p. 43). In pre-coordination, word sequence depends on usefulness to the user (33, p. 41). However, pre-coordination can also bind terms unnecessarily (1, p. 24), thus increasing costs and false drops, but does lead to greater specificity in indexing provided pre-coordination is employed carefully in thesaurus construction, especially with regard to the subject field covered, i.e. only core subject terms should be pre-coordinated. To reduce compound terms, they are factored into single-word concepts (45, p. 71) as will be detailed later.

## **2.9 PRELIMINARIES TO THESAURUS CONSTRUCTION**

Firstly, the field to be covered by the thesaurus has to be defined and delimited with its purpose kept in mind (31, p. 45; 8, p. 3; 32, p. 27; 41, p. 347; 1, p. 67), i.e. the core subject areas must be delimited very carefully and the amount of detail displayed in their descriptors decided upon. Related but less immediate subjects should also be covered, but a certain amount of upward posting (20, p. 32; 19, p. 9; 45, p. 72) may well be permitted so as to save on the number of descriptors in these fields. A good method is to analyse a certain number of documents typical of the subject area(s) covered and to draw up frequency tables for concepts encountered. Concepts may then be grouped



roughly and a basic framework for the envisaged thesaurus created. The viewpoint of the thesaurus should be decided upon with reference to documents to be indexed with its aid and to the users to be served by the resultant database of references. Decisions as to the degree of post- or pre-coordination of descriptors should also be taken at this stage. Next, sources must be decided on, if a new thesaurus is to be constructed. Townley divides potential sources into *unsystematic (primary)* and *systematic (non-primary)* sources. The former include etymological dictionaries, published works which have influenced the user, common knowledge, subject glossaries, ephemeral trade literature, research reports, state-of-the-art reports, the compiler's own subject knowledge and professional experience, documentation created by users, original work and users' enquiries. *Systematic (non-primary)* sources include library subject headings, universal classification schemes, encyclopaedias, nomenclatures, specialist classification schemes, equipment catalogues, indexes to periodicals, abstracts and books, etc., current contents, subject specialists and handbooks (47, pp. 53-54). He adds that there should be a time limit to sources, as well as a preferred order of them. Overes names some sources as well (40, p. 443) and mentions that a test thesaurus a few pages long was constructed as a pilot study (40, p. 441).

## 2.10 METHODS OF THESAURUS COMPILATION

There are two basic methods of compiling the thesaurus:

- the committee approach (30, p. 3; 5, p. 347; 17, p. 214;

33, pp. 27-28), where a group of subject experts identifies a list of terms, or edits a list of submitted terms, choosing those of relevance for the field to be covered. Alternative names for this approach are the deductive method (19, p. 16; 20, p. 59) and the "Gestalt" method (32, p. 45; 33, p. 28).

- The other approach, the analytical (32, p. 45; 8, p. 1), empirical (30, p. 3), or inductive method (19, p. 16; 20, p. 59) identifies candidate terms from the representative literature, and those terms' relevance is usually judged by their frequency of occurrence in the literature, often by a single compiler. New terms are added immediately as they are identified by indexers.

The former method is more suitable for a broad approach, the latter for highly specialised vocabularies. Whatever approach is used, the task of the individual compiler or committee is to establish a basic candidate list of terms for the thesaurus, i.e. term selection (51, p. 130; 41, p. 118; 5, p. 353; 28, pp. 364-365; 30, p. 3; 7, p. 124; 34, p. 5; 13, p. 23). Terms are culled from subject specialists, subject literature and a variety of primary and non-primary sources as enumerated in section 2.9 above. The basic list is then checked for duplication, consistency and to make sure that the core subjects are covered adequately. It will usually be found that the more sources are consulted, the more duplication of terms takes place, but valuable indications of synonymy will be obtained in this way. Older sources may well give outdated terminology. Frequency tables and concordances, where available, are most useful. The final list of terms is

then consolidated, analysed, faceted, grouped, structured and related to form a thesaurus.

## **2.11 RULES FOR THESAURUS CONSTRUCTION**

Whereas the definition of concepts concerning thesauri as well as theory of thesaurus construction appears to differ greatly from author to author, there is a remarkable uniformity in the rules proposed by most authors for constructing thesauri. It should be mentioned that many authors do not prescribe rigid adherence to rules, but maintain that "circumstances alter cases" and that user convenience, peculiarities of the subject field covered and even the size of the proposed thesaurus may well cause deviation from the general rules.

### **2.11.1 The form of the descriptor**

Descriptors can represent:

- concrete entities, such as
  - things and their physical parts (20, p. 8; 19, p. 3)
  - materials (20, p. 9)
- abstract entities, such as
  - actions and events (20, p. 9; 19, p. 3)
  - properties
  - disciplines or sciences
  - units of measurement (20, p. 9)
  - 'classes-of-one' or proper nouns (20, p. 10; 19, p.3)

The form of the descriptor is preferably a noun or noun phrase, the latter in the shape of an adjectival or prepositional phrase (20, pp. 10-11; 19, p. 3). Adverbs should never be used except when phrases include them as part of a commonly accepted term for which there is no alternative (20, p. 11; 19, p. 3). Verbs should not be used but converted into nouns or verbal nouns (20, p. 12; 19, p. 3). Acronyms or abbreviations should not be used as preferred terms except when very widely known and when the full form is rarely used or generally ignored (20, p. 12; 19, p. 3; 18, p. 21; 45, p. 70; 33, p. 74; 14, p. 265).

As far as singulars and plurals are concerned,

- count nouns, answering the question "How many?", take the plural form, although

- parts of the body can provide exceptions in that those parts of which only one exists per person, take the singular (20, p. 14; 19, p. 4)

- non-count nouns, answering the question "How much?", take the singular, but if

- a substance or material is a class with more than one member, the class is expressed in the plural (20, p. 14; 19, p. 4)

- abstract concepts take the singular, but again, if they are

- classes with more than one member, the plural

- where the singular and plural form of a term refer to different concepts, both are entered but qualified in parentheses to bring out the different meanings

- where spellings of the singular and plural differ widely, a cross reference is made from the singular to the plural (20, p. 15; 19, p. 4).

Homographs or homonyms, i.e. words spelled the same way but differing in meaning, are also specified in parentheses to bring out the difference in meaning (20, p. 16; 19, p. 4; 18, p. 48; 47, p. 26; 50, p. 73; 45, p. 71; 33, p. 72; 14, p. 265).

The most widely accepted spelling, e.g. English or American, is accepted according to geographic situation. If necessary, cross references are made (20, p. 16; 19, p. 4; 18, p. 21; 45, p. 70; 14, p. 265).

Loan words, adopted from other languages, are incorporated if well-established (20, p. 17; 19, p. 4; 45, p. 70). Transliterations should be standardised (20, p. 17; 19, p. 5).

Slang terms and jargon (20, p. 17; 19, p. 5; 45, p. 70) or "jargonisms" (47, p. 42) may only be used when no widely accepted alternative exists. Trade names should not be used if a well-known alternative exists (20, p. 18; 19, p. 5; 45, p. 70), and depending on the user groups served, a consistent choice must be made between the common and scientific names of concepts (20, p. 18; 19, p. 5; 25, p. 40).

Place names should be given in the most widely accepted form (20, p. 18) and proper names are excluded in some thesauri. When they

are included, they are given in the most commonly accepted local form (20, p. 19), but surnames and personal names are given in their original forms (20, p. 20; 47, p. 42). A good entry vocabulary must be used with synthesised terms (1, p. 25).

Numbers present a problem in that they are written as integers but filed as pronounced, hence not in numerical sequence. They should really be treated arithmetically (47, p. 43) and certainly made as consistent as possible (41, p. 121). Ranges of measurements should be given if required (47, p. 26).

Prefixes may also present a problem when they are hyphenated onto the main word. Since punctuation should be avoided if at all possible on account of filing problems, especially in a computerised database (18, p. 2; 47, p. 42; 45, p. 71; 33, p. 73), prefixed words should be written as one or as two separate words without the hyphens (47, p. 42). Initials can cause filing problems too and are best avoided or treated as acronyms (47, p. 41), as are contractions (18, p. 21).

### **2.11.2 Scope notes**

Scope notes must be used to define ambiguous terms (41, p. 121; 18, p. 66; 47, p. 27; 44, pp. 145-147; 41, pp. 121, 123; 45, p. 71; 14, p. 266), but may also comprise the date the term was adopted, the term's source and instructions to indexers such as with which other terms to combine this term (20, p. 20; 19, p. 5). Scope notes, however, are not part of the term to which they

are attached, unlike qualifiers in parentheses.

### 2.11.3 Compound terms

Consistency is important in the treatment of compound terms. There are procedures and criteria for deciding whether a compound term may be retained in its pre-coordinated form or must be factored into separate components, each to become a separate descriptor (20, p. 21; 19, p. 5; 18, p. 3; 47, p. 91; 23, p. 28; 5, pp. 352-353; 33, pp. 74-76).

Too many compound terms make the thesaurus inflexible (40, p. 443). Semantic factoring, whereby even single words expressing multiconcepts, as well as compound terms, are factored into very simple uniterms, is not recommended as leading to loss of retrieval precision (20, p. 21; 19, p. 6; 44, p. 130; 33, p. 7; 47, p. 28), but it does render essential aspects of a compound explicit and a very small number of elements results (44, pp. 77-78; 4, pp. 10-11). Syntactical factoring (or analysis) is applied to terms which can be factored without loss of meaning, since "a compound concept is narrower than each of its components" (44, p. 84). Grounds for deciding this depend on the interrelationships and roles of the parts of the compound term. Lancaster defines syntactical analysis as a type of computerised sentence parsing which determines "structural dependencies between words in a sentence, and will store a syntactic representation of the sentence, or at least a reduced syntactic structure, in the form

of a tree or 'abstract graph', each word being a node in the tree and the syntactic dependencies represented by branches" (33, p. 140). Most compound terms can be analysed into the *focus* or *head* which is the noun component identifying the broader class to which the term as a whole refers, and the *difference* or *modifier* referring to a characteristic or logical difference which narrows the connotation and specifies a subclass of the *focus* (20, p. 22; 19, p. 6).

Factoring proceeds by consideration of

- things, objects, entities (concrete and abstract), equipment, materials
- properties, states, conditions, characteristics, processes
- goals, objectives, purposes (44, p. 94)

or by

- activities
- people
- things
- characteristics (51, p. 132)

Facet analysis helps to elucidate the true meaning of words (33, p. 29) and is important in establishing hierarchies (33, p. 43).

Compound terms should be factored if

- the *focus* refers to part or property and the *difference* to the whole or possessor of that part or property (20, pp. 25-26; 19, p. 7)
- the name of the whole is modified by the name of its part or property



- a transitive action is modified by the name of the patient on which the action is being performed (20, p. 26; 19, p. 7)

- the name of a thing or material is modified by the name of an action performed on it

- an intransitive action is modified by the performer of the action (20, p. 27; 19, p. 8)

- the name of a thing may be modified by the intransitive action's name in which it is or was engaged (20, p. 28; 19, p. 8).

Word order should be natural, not inverted, in compound terms (20, pp. 28-29; 19, p. 8; 18, p. 44; 47, p. 27; 14, p. 263).

#### **2.11.4 Relationships of terms**

There are three classes of inter-term relationships in thesauri: the equivalence, or compulsory (39, p. 139; 42, p. 342) relationship, the hierarchical, or optional or indicative (39, p. 139; 42, p. 342) relationship, and the associative, or alternative (39, p. 139; 42, p. 342) relationship (20, p. 29; 19, p. 8). Relationships can also be indicated by clustering/clumping or by grouping of terms according to association (1, p. 30; 39, p. 136; 17, p. 212; 33, p. 123; 7, pp. 126-132).

##### **2.11.4.1 The equivalence relationship**

This is the relationship between preferred and non-preferred

terms. Reference is made from the non-preferred term to the preferred term by a USE reference and from a preferred to a non-preferred term by means of a UF (use for) reference (20, p. 30, 19, p. 9; 18, p. 69; 47, p. 25; 33, pp. 77-78; 32, p. 46). This relationship covers synonyms, quasi-synonyms and upward posting.

True **synonyms** are rare in natural language but occur more frequently in controlled languages where terms have rigidly defined meanings (33, p. 72). Commonly occurring synonyms fall into the following classes:

- terms of different linguistic origin
- popular versus scientific names
- common nouns versus trade names (20, p. 30; 19, p. 9; 1, p. 27; 18, p. 18; 14, p. 268)
- variant names for emerging concepts
- current terms versus outdated terms
- variant spellings
- geographical variation
- abbreviations versus full names
- factored and unfactored forms of a compound term (20, p. 31; 19, p. 9; 14, p. 268; 1, p. 27; 18, p. 18; 25, pp. 37-40)

The preferred term in each case should conform to local common usage and user needs and consistency should be maintained (20, p. 31; 19, p. 9). Synonyms which are non-preferred terms may also be referred to as the "lead-in" or entry vocabulary (44, p. 30; 45, p. 70; 23, p. 28; 15, p. 125).

**Quasi-synonyms** are really terms which may be opposite points of a continuum in natural language, but are treated as synonyms for the purpose of the controlled language, or near-synonyms in some cases (20, p. 32; 19, p. 9; 18, p. 19; 1, p. 28; 41, p. 122; 47, p. 25).

Another type of synonym is **upward posting**, sometimes used to reduce the number of terms in a thesaurus, but which should be avoided if possible (20, p. 32; 19, p. 9; 45, p. 72), depending on the level of specificity envisaged. Upward posting may be employed for marginal areas of interest covered by the thesaurus.

Preferred terms may be distinguished typographically from non-preferred terms in thesauri - the former are printed in capitals, the latter in lower-case letters (27, p. 127; 20, p. 7), or alternatively in heavier type (preferred terms) and lighter type (nonpreferred terms).

#### **2.11.4.2 The hierarchical relationship**

This is based on degrees of superordination and subordination and expressed in terms of BT (broader term) and NT (narrower term) (20, p. 33; 19, p. 9; 47, p. 23; 14, p. 269; 32, p. 46; 33, pp. 24-25, 79-80). Some thesauri also give the top term (TT) for each term, i.e. the top term in that term's hierarchy (47, p. 79). A top term can stand on its own.

There are three kinds of hierarchical relationships: generic relationships, part-whole relationships and instance

relationships (20, p.33; 19, p. 8). Node labels are sometimes used in hierarchies (particularly in classified thesauri) to show by which characteristic classes are subdivided (20, p. 34; 19, p. 10; 45, p. 70; 23, p. 29).

- The **generic** relationship identifies the link between a class and its members (20, pp. 34-35; 14, p. 269; 45, p. 72; 19, p. 10; 25, p. 43)

- the **part-whole** relationship comprises
  - body systems and organs
  - geographical locations
  - disciplines
  - hierarchical social structure (20, pp. 36-37; 19, p. 10; 18, p.25; 25, p. 42)

These are frowned upon by some authors (1, p. 29).

- the **instance** relationship identifies general classes and members thereof (usually "classes-of-one") (20, p. 38)

- **polyhierarchical** relationships: logically, some concepts can belong to more than one class at the same time (20, p. 38; 19 pp. 10-11; 47, p. 24; 1, p. 29; 44, p. 80; 41, p. 117; 45, p. 72).

#### 2.11.4.3 The associative relationship

This relationship is the hardest to define. Terms are not members of an equivalence set, nor within the same hierarchy. The relationship between terms is one of mental association only, is reciprocal and indicated by RT (related term). In some thesauri, related terms are automatically reciprocals, but not in others

(33, p. 8). As an economy measure, alphabetically adjacent related terms can be eliminated (33, p. 82). Related terms are usually, but not always, on the same hierarchical level (13, pp. 26-27). There are two types of related terms: those belonging to the same category and those belonging to different categories (20, p. 39; 10, p. 11; 45, p. 72; 14, p. 270; 41, p. 123; 50, p. 74; 14, p. 270; 25, p. 32).

- Terms belonging to the **same** category are "siblings" with overlapping meanings, where each term has an exact definition but is nevertheless used loosely and the terms are often interchanged and hence the indexer/user must be reminded of one when using the other term. Concepts linked by familial and derivational relationships also belong to this group (20, p. 40; 19, p. 11).

- Terms belonging to **different** categories, typically
  - a discipline and the objects or phenomena studied
  - an operation or process and its agent or instrument
  - an action and its product
  - an action and its patient
  - concepts related to their properties
  - concepts related to their origins
  - concepts linked by casual dependence
  - a thing and its counter agent
  - a concept and its unit of measurement
  - syncategorematic phrases and their embedded nouns(20, pp. 41-44; 19, pp. 11-12; 48, pp. 150-151; 33, pp. 80-81)
- a very general term and its suggested alternatives

- a scope note term and other meanings of that term in natural language which are excluded by the scope note
- two processes which occur in sequence
- a situation or condition and what may occur in it
- possible cause and effect
- apparent opposites which can also be construed as interacting factors (33, pp. 80-81)

## **2.12 COMPUTERISED THESAURUS CONSTRUCTION**

Lancaster names several advantages of computerised indexing and thesaurus construction, but mentions that a large entry vocabulary is essential for an online thesaurus (33, pp. 212-216) and is also more cost effective under these circumstances (33, pp. 219-227). The computer can be used to check the internal consistency of its structure (42, p. 346).

Building a thesaurus by computer usually involves natural language indexing of a large quantity of documents, even full text input into the computer (20, p. 61; 4, p. 2). Terms are then chosen by frequency of occurrence (30, p. 3; 41, p. 119; 17, p. 212; 20, p. 61), and clumping, clustering and grouping of compound terms yields a thesaurus vocabulary. However, the results may be inferior to thesauri constructed by human agency (33, pp. 153-159). Term clustering for automatic thesaurus construction is strongly recommended by Crawford (7, p. 125). The computer can be used to analyse semantic proximity of terms (54, p. 111), as well

as for generating reciprocals (28, p. 363; 40, p. 442). The computer can certainly reduce clerical labour and the necessity for proofreading (10, p. 102; 14, p. 274; 53, p. 52), and some authors foresee that costs will be lower as well, but the danger of false drops increases when automatic indexing takes place (4, pp. 2-3), and "the computer, however, cannot replace the intellectual work of selecting and providing relationships between terms to be included in the thesaurus" (14, p. 274). Updating and maintenance are greatly facilitated (33, p. 90; 14, p. 274). A stop list of common words can be built into the computer program (33, p. 137).

Kleinbart discusses artificial intelligence in the context of thesaurus construction, and hopes for improvement of intelligent software for improved thesaurus construction (32, p. 47).

Wessel (53, p. 37) maintains that fully automated indexing may well produce worse results in information retrieval than manual or intellectual indexing.

### **2.13 THESAURUS COST**

This subject is discussed by several authors. The fact that a good thesaurus is expensive to draw up, but facilitates efficient indexing (47, p. 113) is maintained. Wall states that *TEST, Thesaurus of Engineering and Scientific Terms*, cost as much as \$40 per term to compile (50, p. 78). Computerisation of the thesaurus and indexing reduced editorial staff decision and pro-

cessing time by an estimated 30% (28, p. 367). A warning about the costliness of thesaurus construction is sounded by Lancaster (33, p. 218). The small "minimum" thesaurus supplemented with free term indexing would appear to be a cheaper proposition (21, p. 136).

## 2.14 THESAURUS SIZE

The size of the thesaurus will depend on several factors, such as scope and complexity of the subject field, the kind of documents indexed, and the level of exhaustivity and specificity of indexing envisaged (44, p. 6). Townley recommends that the size should not be too large for a human to assimilate, viz. about 500 to 2000 terms (47, p. 35; 5, p. 349), and Overes et al. compiled a thesaurus of some 1500 terms (40, p. 444), Hoffmann one of 520 terms (24, p. 38), and Kazlauskas one of 2700 terms (28, p. 366). Manecke found that thesaurus size varied extraordinarily - from as low as 1000 terms to a maximum of 20 000 terms. The proportion of descriptors to entry vocabulary varied as dramatically (37, p. 34). Pre-coordinate thesauri will automatically be more voluminous than uniterm thesauri (33, p. 98), since many compound terms are composed of various combinations of but a few single word terms. Thesaurus size should be set tentatively as part of the preliminaries to thesaurus construction (41, p. 119). Inevitably, thesaurus size increases as the collection of indexed documents grows (18, p. 127). To prevent excessive growth, the introduction of classificatory elements is recommended (39, p. 136), or alternatively, the adoption of some form of "hybrid" vocabulary (i.e.



a small basic controlled vocabulary augmented with free language terms) (21, p. 136). Usually, a growth plateau is reached after an initial fast increase of terms. New "candidate" terms should be introduced for a trial period, and reviewed for final acceptance after twelve months, at this stage (33, p. 103).

## 2.15 THESAURUS PRESENTATION

Thesauri may be presented in various different ways. (For an example of typical, good thesaurus entries, see Figures 2.3 to 2.6). Many thesauri are arranged alphabetically (28, p. 367; 37, p. 34), but such alphabetical thesauri may also

- be subdivided by broad subject class
- display clusters and arrowgraphs
- display hierarchical structures
- display hierarchical classification
- display broad faceted classification
- display faceted classification of detailed groups

There are also some thesauri arranged in systematic order, with alphabetical indexes (1, pp. 55-67; 13, p. 25; 52, p. 241). Many good thesauri have descriptors arranged alphabetically, and this main display is supplemented with systematic displays (37, p. 34), permuted descriptors and a hierarchical display of descriptors (40, pp. 444-446) as well as graphic displays (37, p. 34; 20, p. 44).

The finished thesaurus should consist of a

**Learning Specialists (1966 1980)**  
USE SPECIALISTS

**Learning Stations (Classroom)**

USE LEARNING CENTERS  
(CLASSROOM)

**LEARNING STRATEGIES** *Oct. 1983*

CIJE: 35      RIE: 48      GC: 110

SN Rules, principles, and procedures used to facilitate learning, frequently applicable to a variety of specific learning tasks (note: for self-discovered, self-selected learning strategies, coordinate with "cognitive style")

UF Learning To Learn

NT Reading Strategies

BT Methods

RT Associative Learning

Behavioral Objectives

Classroom Techniques

Cognitive Development

Cognitive Processes

Cognitive Style

Discovery Learning

Educational Strategies

Encoding (Psychology)

Experiential Learning

Heuristics

Inquiry

Intentional Learning

Language Processing

Learning

Learning Activities

Learning Modalities

Learning Modules

Learning Motivation

Learning Processes

Mastery Learning

Memory

Metacognition

Mnemonics

Observational Learning

Pacing

Problem Solving

Prompting

Psychoeducational Methods

Sequential Learning

Simulation

Skill Development

Study Skills

**LEAST SQUARES STATISTICS**

*Oct. 1980*

CIJE: 51      RIE: 22      GC: 820

SN Statistics that are designed to provide estimates that minimize the probability of large errors by minimizing the sum of squared errors (the "least squares method" fits a curve to a given set of data such that the sum of the squares of the distances from each point of the data to the fitted curve is a minimum)

BT Statistical Analysis  
Statistics

RT Correlation  
Error Of Measurement  
Factor Analysis  
Predictive Measurement  
Probability  
Regression (Statistics)  
Statistical Significance

**LEATHER**

*Mar. 1980*

CIJE: 4      RIE: 11      GC: 910

SN (note: prior to mar80, the instruction "leather crafts, use handicrafts" was carried in the thesaurus)

UF Leather Crafts

RT Art Materials  
Handicrafts  
Industrial Arts  
Patternmaking

**Leather Crafts**

USE LEATHER

**Leave Of Absence (1968 1980)**

USE LEAVES OF ABSENCE

**LEAVES OF ABSENCE**

*Mar. 1980*

CIJE: 69      RIE: 250      GC: 630

SN Authorized absences from duty or employment

UF Leave Of Absence (1968 1980)

NT Sabbatical Leaves

RT Attendance  
Fringe Benefits  
Personnel Policy  
Reentry Workers  
Released Time  
Scope Of Bargaining  
Teacher Employment Benefits  
Vacations

**Figure 2.3 Part of a page of a typical thesaurus**

(Reproduced from: THESAURUS of ERIC descriptors. James E. Houston, editor/lexicographer. 10th ed. Phoenix, Arizona: Oryx Press, 1984, p. 147)

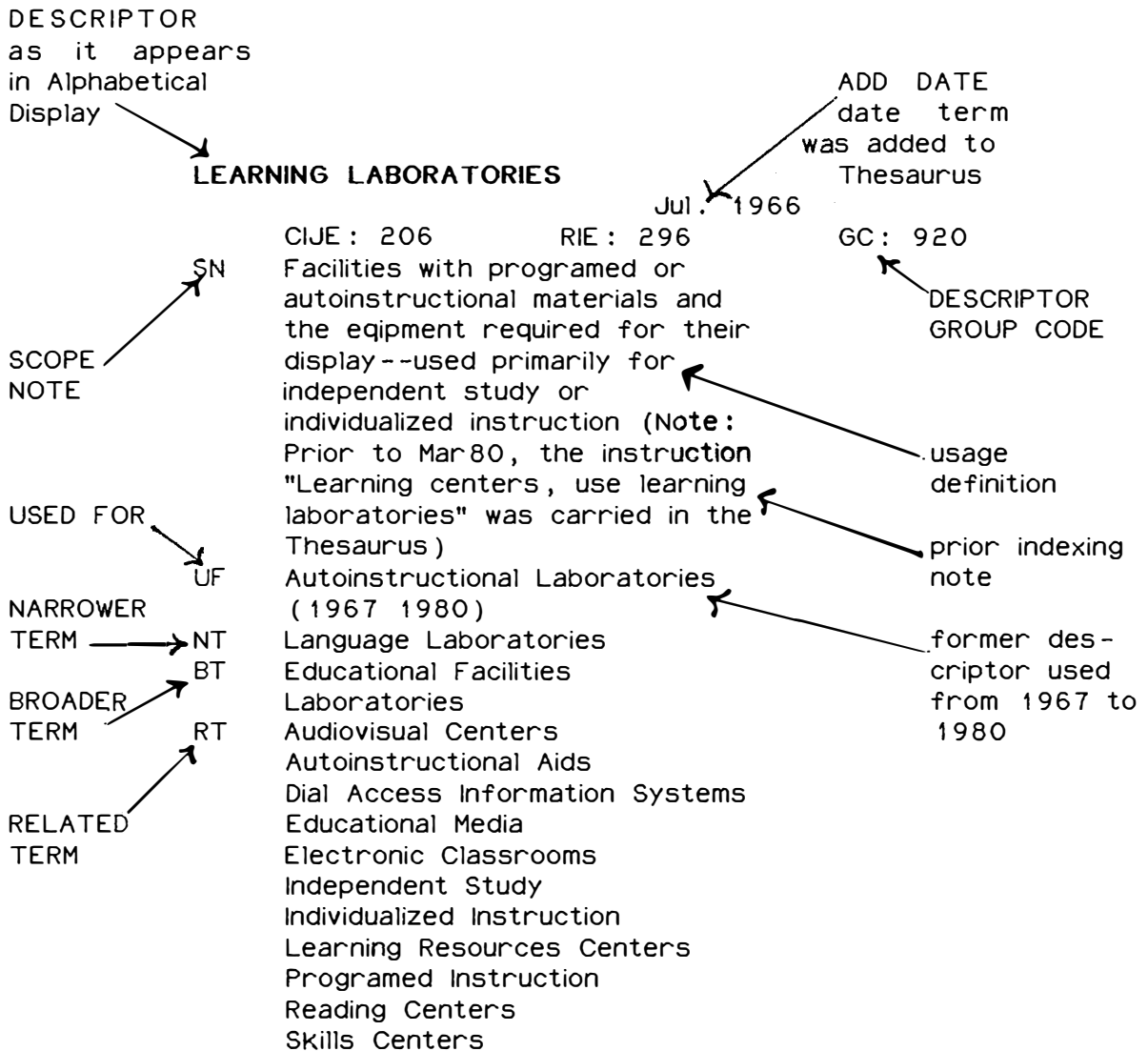


Figure 2.4 ERIC thesaurus sample term display

(Adapted from: FEINBERG, H. The thesaurus in indexing and searching: a review. *In: Indexing specialized formats and subjects*. Edited by Hilda Feinberg. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, 1983, p. 275)

STUDENT LEADERSHIP  
     LEADERSHIP STYLES  
     LEADERSHIP TRAINING  
     LEAFLETS Use PAMPHLETS  
 LEARNING TO LEARN Use LEARNING STRATEGIES  
     LEARNED HELPLESSNESS Use HELPLESSNESS  
     LEARNER AUTONOMY Use PERSONAL AUTONOMY  
     LEARNER OUTCOMES Use OUTCOMES OF EDUCATION  
     SLOW LEARNERS  
         LEARNING  
     ACTION LEARNING Use EXPERIENTIAL LEARNING  
         LEARNING ACTIVITIES  
     ACTIVITY LEARNING (1968 1978) Use EXPERIENTIAL LEARNING  
         LEARNING ACTIVITY PACKAGES Use LEARNING MODULES  
         LEARNING ACTIVITY PACKETS Use LEARNING MODULES  
     ADULT LEARNING  
     ADVENTURE LEARNING Use ADVENTURE EDUCATION  
 APPROXIMATIVE SYSTEMS (LANGUAGE LEARNING) Use INTERLANGUAGE  
     ASSOCIATIVE LEARNING  
     AURAL LEARNING  
     AURAL LANGUAGE LEARNING Use AURAL LEARNING and LANGUAGE ACQUISITION  
         LEARNING CENTERS (CLASSROOM)  
     LIVING LEARNING CENTERS  
         LEARNING CHARACTERISTICS (1968 1980) Use LEARNING  
 COMPUTER ASSISTED LEARNING Use COMPUTER ASSISTED INSTRUCTION  
     CONTINUOUS LEARNING (1967 1980) Use LIFELONG LEARNING  
         LEARNING CONTRACTS Use PERFORMANCE CONTRACTS  
     STUDENT LEARNING CONTRACTS Use PERFORMANCE CONTRACTS  
     MATURATION LEARNING CONTROVERSY Use NATURE NURTURE CONTROVERSY  
         LEARNING CYCLES Use LEARNING PROCESSES  
         LEARNING DIFFICULTIES (1966 1980) Use LEARNING PROBLEMS  
         LEARNING DISABILITIES  
     SPECIFIC LEARNING DISABILITIES Use LEARNING DISABILITIES  
     DISCOVERY LEARNING  
     DISCRIMINATION LEARNING  
     ENGAGED TIME (LEARNING) Use TIME ON TASK  
         LEARNING EXPERIENCE  
     CLINICAL LEARNING EXPERIENCE Use CLINICAL EXPERIENCE  
     EXPERIENTIAL LEARNING  
     EXPLORATORY LEARNING Use DISCOVERY LEARNING  
     FOREIGN LANGUAGE LEARNING Use SECOND LANGUAGE LEARNING  
     LANGUAGE LEARNING (FOREIGN) Use SECOND LANGUAGE LEARNING  
     IMITATIVE LEARNING Use OBSERVATIONAL LEARNING  
     INCIDENTAL LEARNING  
     INDEPENDENT LEARNING Use INDEPENDENT STUDY  
     INTEGRATED LEARNING Use INTEGRATED ACTIVITIES and LEARNING ACTIVITIES  
     INTENTIONAL LEARNING  
 INTERFERENCE (LANGUAGE LEARNING) (1968 1980) Use INTERFERENCE (LANGUAGE)  
     LEARNING KITS Use LEARNING MODULES  
     LEARNING LABORATORIES  
     LANGUAGE LEARNING LEVELS (1967 1980)  
     LIFELONG LEARNING  
     MASTERY LEARNING

Figure 2.5 KWIC display of descriptors in a thesaurus

(Reproduced from: THESAURUS of ERIC descriptors. James E. Houston, editor/lexicographer. 10th ed. Phoenix, Arizona: Oryx Press, 1984, p. 288)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:GROUPS</li> <li>LEADERS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.COMMUNITY LEADERS</li> <li>.YOUTH LEADERS</li> </ul> </li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>::PUBLICATIONS</li> <li>::REFERENCE MATERIALS</li> <li>:GUIDES</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERS GUIDES</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:ABILITY</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERSHIP <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.BLACK LEADERSHIP</li> <li>.INFORMAL LEADERSHIP</li> <li>.STUDENT LEADERSHIP</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERSHIP QUALITIES</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:RESPONSIBILITY</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERSHIP RESPONSIBILITY</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:BEHAVIOR</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERSHIP STYLES</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:TRAINING</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEADERSHIP TRAINING</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>::DISABILITIES</li> <li>::DISEASES</li> <li>:POISONING</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEAD POISONING</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>::FACILITIES</li> <li>:LABORATORIES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:FACILITIES</li> <li>:EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING LABORATORIES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.LANGUAGE LABORATORIES</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING MODALITIES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:EDUCATIONAL MEDIA</li> <li>:INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING MODULES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:MOTIVATION</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING MOTIVATION <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LEARNING PLATEAUS</li> </ul> </li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:PROBLEMS</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING PROBLEMS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>:COGNITIVE PROCESSES</li> </ul> </li> <li>LEARNING PROCESSES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.BEHAVIOR CHAINING</li> <li>.COGNITIVE MAPPING</li> <li>.CONCEPT FORMATION</li> <li>.DISCOVERY PROCESSES</li> <li>.EXTINCTION (PSYCHOLOGY)</li> <li>.GENERALIZATION</li> <li>..STIMULUS GENERALIZATION</li> <li>.MEMORIZATION</li> <li>.PRIMACY EFFECT</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
--	--

Figure 2.6 Two-way hierarchical term display from a thesaurus (Reproduced from: THESAURUS of ERIC descriptors. James E. Houston, editor/lexicographer. 10th ed. Phoenix, Arizona: Gryx Press, 1984, p. 539)

- title page
- contents list
- introduction
- systematic or graphic display (where appropriate)
- alphabetical section (20, p. 61)

The introduction or preface should be comprehensive (18, p. 79; 14, pp. 276-277; 45, p. 73; 19, pp. 19-20; 47, pp. 31-32), containing a general explanation of theories and principles followed and the specific rules employed in the creation of formats of descriptors, preferably with examples to illustrate them, meanings of symbols and abbreviations, filing rules, how to use the thesaurus and updating procedures envisaged.

Alphabetisation should be consistently word by word (preferred in most library manual systems), where a space is recognised as significant, or letter by letter, where spaces are disregarded (18, p. 65; 47, p. 39; 45, p. 74). It must be borne in mind that the computer files punctuation marks in a certain fashion, i.e. usually before alphanumeric characters. Most published thesauri seem to be filed in the letter by letter fashion.

Descriptors, as mentioned before, may be given in capitals, or bold face, non-descriptors in lower case letters (47, p. 135; 18, p. 68).

KWIC or KWOC indexes of compound terms, usually prepared by computer, are particularly useful (47, pp. 36-37; 50, pp. 73, 75;

12, p. 326).

Various methods of graphic display are given, and recommended due to the fact that relationships can be displayed at a glance (47, p. 37; 5, p. 355; 33, p. 55), viz. tree structures (19, p. 16), arrowgraphs (19, p. 16; 33, p. 58), and the "circular" thesaurus (33, p. 58). Unusual graphic displays tend, however, to increase printing costs.

Classificatory additions, or numbering descriptors, should be done at this stage of thesaurus construction (47, p. 30; 21, p. 133), if the thesaurus is to be a classified one.

Lancaster maintains that, if the thesaurus is computerised, postings for the number of times a term is used can be very useful for providing statistics (33, p. 94), but Townley argues that the benefits are disproportionate to the labour involved (47, p. 119)

And finally, to prevent duplication of labour, it is recommended that Aslib is notified each time a new thesaurus is constructed (20, p. 62; 19, p. 16).

## 2.16 TESTING

Several authors maintain that the thesaurus, once compiled, should be tested by indexing a certain number of documents with its aid: at least one thousand documents (1, p. 84), 1000 - 2000 documents (44, p. 411), or 50 documents (40, p. 443; 8, p. 15)

are the figures given in the literature consulted. Rolling postulates the construction of an "error dictionary" from errors found during indexing, much like the thesaurus in structure, which can be computerised and will automatically correct indexing (42, p. 345).

The thesaurus may also be evaluated according to the following criteria:

- degree of conceptual completeness
- terminological completeness
- thesaurus display (44, p. 9)

## **2.17 THESAURUS UPDATING**

The most important thing to realise, even before thesaurus construction is undertaken, is that a thesaurus is never finished, but must be updated and adapted for as long as it is used for indexing (40, p. 447; 50, p. 75; 49, p. 163; 33, pp. 103-104; 15, p. 128; 10, p. 110; 14, pp. 278-279; 21, p. 135). Computerisation certainly makes updating and general maintenance easier (47, p. 118). The types of changes to be expected are in the homonym/synonym structure, lead-in vocabulary, changes in indexing language such as new descriptors added, outdated descriptors removed, subdividing heavily posted terms into narrower subclasses, changing definitions, addition or elimination of hierarchical relationships and the adding or elimination of associative relationships (44, pp. 457-458; 1, pp. 86-87; 47, p. 123).



Kim maintains that unless a thesaurus is "updated by both input and output people, then the communication process between authors and readers is essentially a one-way (or linear as opposed to cybernetic) communication" (29, p. 153) and complains that few thesauri are updated or even constructed on this principle.

## **2.18 CONCLUSION**

Although much practical advice may be found in the literature surveyed on the physical form descriptors should take and on display standards for the finished product, thesaurus construction theory appears to be a somewhat neglected field. Perhaps a thesaurus is such a pragmatic instrument that most authors approach its construction purely pragmatically; moreover, some of the almost universal guidelines may have reached the status of principles of thesaurus construction in lieu of a more theoretical foundation of this subject, although most authors hasten to add, after adducing such guidelines, that they are in no way to be taken as prescriptive, but must bow to user convenience and special circumstances. The pragmatic approach to thesaurus construction has been followed in this study, as will be seen in subsequent chapters, and assurances that the rules are suggestive, rather than prescriptive, have also been taken into consideration, in that user needs and enquiries have been kept firmly in mind in the choice of descriptors for inclusion as well as the form taken by such descriptors.

## METHODOLOGY OF CONSTRUCTING THE THESAURUS

## 3.1 SOURCES OF TERMS

Because the eleven language and literature departments' staff were too busy to constitute a committee of experts to generate terminology, or even to have any regular say in the admission of terms to the thesaurus, it was decided to follow the analytical approach to generating thesaurus terms, in that the author would consult suitable sources of terminology and choose candidate terms for inclusion in the thesaurus. Since the author had had some empirical experience in the field and was familiar with much of the terminology arising from enquiries in the subject as well as regular consultation of relevant literature, and since thesaurus construction would form part of her daily duties as information officer in the subject field, this step was approved by the management of the Library Service as well as the eleven departments concerned.

A number of subject dictionaries and encyclopaedias covering the fields of linguistics and literature studies are available in the UoFS Library Service. All of them were scanned, and the two most suitable chosen in terms of coverage of the terminology, helpfulness in definitions and suggestions for synonyms and relationships to other terms. One of the chosen works was a dictionary of linguistics (22) and the other a dictionary of literary terms

(43). Figure 3.1 shows a typical entry from the linguistics dictionary, and figure 3.2 a typical entry from the literary terms dictionary. However, several other similar works were used to supplement these sources (2, 6, 9, 16, 26, 35) at various stages of compiling the thesaurus. The dictionaries were examined entry by entry, and a decision made as to whether each term in question should be included in the thesaurus. Once it was decided that a term should be included, a scope note (if adjudged necessary) was derived from the dictionary's definition of the term; and broader, narrower and related terms were derived from the various terms mentioned in the course of the dictionary's definition. "Use" and "use for" cross references were derived in the same way.

Problems arose frequently when the same term was found to describe different concepts in linguistics and literary studies. A solution was found by assigning, e.g., the linguistic meaning to the singular form of the term and the literary meaning to the plural form of the term, or vice versa; e.g. the term LETTER is used to represent any character in the alphabet, and defined thus in its scope note, whereas the term LETTERS is used to designate epistles, and is qualified by this latter term in parentheses. When singular or plural forms could not be used, two or more numbered scope notes define the different meanings which can be assigned to the term, e.g. the term FREQUENCY has two scope notes, viz.

1. Number of times word occurs in text

### LANGUAGE PLANNING

Collective term for a complex of efforts to improve interdialect and international communication *either* by studying the relationships between pairs of languages (dialects) *or* by creating a new language system. Whereas attempts to devise → artificial auxiliary languages have not had any marked success, the comparison of languages has proved very helpful in many ways, e.g. in → translation, by research into and standardisation of specialised terminologies, by the design of → union languages and → writing systems, etc. → institutional linguistics. Alternative terms: planned language change; prescriptive linguistics. (10.1 Tauli).

Figure 3.1 Typical entry from the main source for linguistic terms

(Adapted from: HARTMANN, R.R.K. and STORK, F.C. *Dictionary of language and linguistics*. London: Applied Science Publishers, 1972, p. 126)

## rhyme

Similarity or identity of \*sound in words. Two words rhyme (or rime) when their accented vowels and all succeeding sounds are identical: *rain, stain; skating, dating; emotion, demotion; fascinate, deracinate*. Rhyme is more than an ornament in \*poetry. It provides pleasing sense impressions; it helps to establish stanzaic form; it is an aid in memorizing; it contributes to the \*unity of a poem. For comment on the many different kinds of rhyme in poetry, see DOUBLE RHYME, END RHYME, EYE RHYME, FEMININE RHYME, HALF RHYME, HEAD RHYME, IMPERFECT RHYME, INTERNAL RHYME, LEONINE VERSE, MASCULINE ENDING, PERFECT RHYME, RHYME ROYAL.

Figure 3.2 Typical entry from the main source for literary terms

(Adapted from: SHAW, H. *Dictionary of literary terms*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1972, p. 323)

## 2. Number of vibrations per second of sound waves

British spelling, geographical variation and words commonly used in the South African English context are given in preference to American usage. Cross references are used for doubtful cases concerning these usages.

### 3.2 DESIGN OF THE WORK FORM

A special form was designed for the purpose of transcribing each term (Figure 3.3). The purpose of the second item, "Title", was to assign a separate field for any titles of literary works by specific authors which might be criticised in specific periodical articles. This field was not used at all, since the decision was made that specific authors and their specific works would not be included in the thesaurus at this stage, but would be added as they were encountered in the practical indexing situation. Thus the few author/title entries included in the thesaurus at this stage (Appendix 7) are the result of the testing of the thesaurus by indexing some 100 articles as discussed in Chapter 4 below.

The terms derived from the two technical dictionaries were transcribed, one by one, onto the forms. (See Figures 3.4 and 3.5 for examples of how a form is completed from the term encountered in one of the two main sources, viz. the terms shown in Figures 3.1 and 3.2). As each term was entered, all USE and USE FOR references, SCOPE NOTES and BROADER, NARROWER and RELATED TERMS were added immediately, and forms were at once made reciprocally for

TERM \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

USE/UF \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

SN \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

BT \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

NT \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

RT \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Figure 3.3 Form used for thesaurus entries**

TERM LANGUAGE PLANNING

TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

USE/UF PLANNED LANGUAGE CHANGE; PRESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS

SN COLLECTIVE TERM FOR COMPLEX OF EFFORTS TO IMPROVE  
INTERDIALECT COMMUNICATION

BT \_\_\_\_\_

NT \_\_\_\_\_

RT INSTITUTIONAL LINGUISTICS

**Figure 3.4 Working form completed with data derived from  
term shown in Figure 3.1**



TERM   RHYME  

TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

USE/UF   RIME  

SN            SIMILARITY OR IDENTITY OF SOUND IN WORDS           

BT \_\_\_\_\_

NT    DOUBLE RHYME; END RHYME; EYE RHYME; FEMININE RHYME;    HALF  
   RHYME; HEAD RHYME; IMPERFECT RHYME; INTERNAL RHYME; LEONINE  
   VERSE; MASCULINE ENDING; PERFECT RHYME; RHYME ROYAL           

RT \_\_\_\_\_

Figure 3.5 Working form completed with data derived from term shown in Figure 3.2

each of these USE, USE FOR, BROADER, NARROWER and RELATED TERMS, so that inconsistencies could be traced as soon as each term's entry was completed. The incomplete entries resulting from reciprocals were kept in alphabetical order to facilitate additions in the course of transferring terms from the dictionary to the working forms. Additions made in the course of this transfer of terms to the working forms, as arising from intellectual relationships recognised only at this stage, were also added reciprocally. Terms were frequently moved from one form to another form as illogicalities became apparent, or as decisions were made regarding near-synonyms and similar cases. It may be added that, at a later stage, the whole thesaurus was cross checked once again for internal consistency.

As far as the subjects covered are concerned, the two basic "top terms" from which the vast majority of terms included arose, were **LANGUAGE** with narrower terms **CATEGORISATION**, **COMPETENCE** and **PERFORMANCE**, **CULTURE AND LANGUAGE**, **ECOLOGY OF LANGUAGE**, **INDEX**, **KINESICS**, **LANGUE** and **PAROLE**, **LINGUISTIC SKILLS**, **LINGUISTICS** and **LOGIC IN LANGUAGE**, and related terms **COMMUNICATION**, **LANGUAGES**, **\*LANGUAGE VARIATION** and **ORIGIN OF SPEECH**; and **LITERATURE** with narrower terms **AESTHETICS**, **BLACK LITERATURE**, **BOOK**, **CENSORSHIP**, **#COMPARATIVE LITERATURE STUDIES**, **CRITICISM**, **GENRE**, **IDEOLOGY**, **LIBEL**, **LITERARY MOVEMENTS**, **LITERARY PERIODS**, **LITERARY PRIZES**, **\*LITERARY STUDIES**, **LITERARY THEORIES**, **RHETORIC**, **SLANDER**, **STYLISTICS** and **WORD GAMES**, and related terms **\*ART**, **\*MUSIC** and **\*MYTHOLOGY**. Terms prefaced by the symbols \* or # show that they were added to the original draft version of the thesaurus as a

result of the indexing exercise described in chapter 4, or as a result of suggestions by members of the language and literature departments, respectively.

### 3.3 RULES TO GOVERN THE STRUCTURE OF THESAURUS TERMS

The literature study revealed that, although very little prescription exists generally in the fields of pre-coordination and post-coordination, certain rules for the form of terms were generally accepted and tended to promote uniformity and consistency. Thus certain rules were adhered to in the construction of this thesaurus.

#### 3.3.1 Nouns

Terms were very strictly used only in noun form; if the dictionary entries were in adjectival, verbal or adverbial form, noun versions were derived from these forms. According to the general rule, count nouns and concrete entities were used in the plural as far as possible (with the exception, in a few cases, of clashes in meaning discussed above in section 3.2), and abstract and non-count nouns were used in the singular. One exception was made in the case of literary periods, for which adjectival forms were used, so that the terms **ELIZABETHAN**, **GEORGIAN**, etc. are used in preference to **ELIZABETHAN PERIOD**, **GEORGIAN PERIOD**, etc. The exception was made so that a user searching for **ELIZABETHAN POETRY**, for instance, would not have to combine the search terms **POETRY** and **ELIZABETHAN PERIOD**,

which juxtaposition would appear somewhat pedantic.

### **3.3.2 Acronyms, abbreviations and initials**

These are kept to a minimum according to the general rule, except when the abbreviated form is more commonly used than the full form. Where used, initials have been written as acronyms.

### **3.3.3 Homographs and homonyms**

These terms are differentiated by qualifiers in parentheses after the term concerned, e.g. **LETTERS (Epistles)**.

### **3.3.4 Slang and foreign terms**

Some slang terms have been included when their usage is so widespread that they are more easily recognisable than standard language terms, or when the latter do not appear to exist, e.g. **CLOAK AND DAGGERS**; however, where more conventional terms exist, cross references are made, e.g. **Whodunits use Detective stories**. Foreign terms, particularly in the literary field, abound and are almost impossible to translate. They have been included with scope notes defining their meanings, e.g. **BILDUNGSROMANE**.

### **3.3.5 Spelling, place names and personal names**

As mentioned above, British spelling has been preferred to American spelling, and South African English usage with regard to place names has been followed, e.g. **CAPE PROVINCE**, not **CAPE OF GOOD HOPE**. However, the personal names included so far and to be added in future, are given in the original form prevalent

in the person's home land or language. Author/title references give the title of an author's work in the original language in which it was written, e.g. **MANN, THOMAS. Tod in Venedig.**

### **3.3.6 Numbers**

The few numbers included so far have been written as integers, e.g. **PAPYRUS BEROLINENSIS 2966.**

### **3.3.7 Punctuation and diacritic marks**

Both have been avoided as far as possible, with one exception: author/title references are written SURNAME COMMA FIRST NAME(S) FULL STOP TITLE, with the surname and first name(s) in capitals, but the title in lower case letters, e.g. **CHAUCER, GEOFFREY. Troilus and Criseyde.** All other punctuation or diacritic marks have been avoided, except for parentheses enclosing the qualifiers which differentiate homonyms. Hyphenated words have been written as one word where the prefix cannot stand alone, e.g. **COORDINATION** or written as two words where the prefix can stand alone, e.g. **MISE EN SCENE.**

## **3.4 COMPOUND TERMS**

Although the use of compound terms is frowned upon by some thesaurus compilers who advocate uniterms or single word concepts, others permit the use of compound terms to a greater or lesser degree. It is emphasised that user convenience should be the guideline in this vexed argument. Indeed, to split the term

GERMAN LANGUAGE into LANGUAGES and GERMANY or the term SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE into SOUTH AFRICA and ENGLISH (LANGUAGE) and LITERATURE would result in very many "false drops" during retrieval. Consequently a number of compound terms has been used, especially in the more esoteric specialist reaches of linguistics and literary studies, hence the volume of this thesaurus is quite large. Very many more compound terms, especially the author/title entries and the names of all the various languages will still have to be added in the practical indexing situation to make it fulfill its envisaged function.

### 3.5 DEFINITION OF HIERARCHICAL AND RELATIONAL INDICATORS

#### 3.5.1 The equivalence relationship

As found in the practice of thesaurus making, there are very few true synonyms of linguistic and literary terms, but many terms synonymous to all intents and purposes, due to

- different linguistic origins, including different geographical and personal origins
- variant names for emerging concepts
- current terms versus outdated ones
- variant spellings
- geographical variation
- abbreviation versus full names

The preferred term which was chosen in each instance conformed to user convenience and literary consensus as far as possible, and the non-preferred terms led to this term by means of a USE reference, e.g. **Contractions use Abbreviations.** The preferred

term also lists all its synonyms by means of a USE FOR reference, e.g. ABBREVIATIONS of CLIPPED WORDS, CONTRACTIONS, SANDHI. In actual use, some of the preferred terms may have to be changed to more commonly used terms, and in time outdated terms will have to be replaced by more modern terms.

### 3.5.2 The hierarchical relationship

#### 3.5.2.1 Narrower and broader terms

Some terms are in clear subordination to other terms, and the former are defined as NARROWER TERMS (NT), whereas the latter are known as BROADER TERMS (BT).

Generic relationship is the link between a class and its member, e.g. **LANGUAGES** is the BT (broader term) and **GERMAN LANGUAGE** is a NT (narrower term) referring to a more specific type of language. Many such generic relationships have been used in the thesaurus.

The part-whole relationship, though frowned upon by some thesaurus compilers, has also been employed extensively, principally to help the indexer in his task and the user in information retrieval. A typical example is **PLAYS** as the broader term and component parts of plays such as **ACTS**, **ENTRACTES** and **EPILOGUES** as narrower terms. Geographical locations have been treated similarly, e.g. **BELGIUM** (the broader term) and **ANTWERP** (the narrower term).

Some polyhierarchical relationships, i.e. terms with more than one broader term, have also been assigned, e.g. **ACOUSTIC PHONETICS** is a narrower term of both **ACOUSTICS** (broader term) and **PHONETICS** (broader term).

### 3.5.3 The associative relationship

This relationship concerns **RELATED TERMS (RT)** and is most difficult to define, being one of mental or intellectual association between terms and reciprocals. Related terms are sometimes, but not always, on the same hierarchical level and may belong to the same category, with overlapping meanings, e.g. **ALPHABETS** (term) and **NOTATION** (RT or RELATED TERM). Alternatively, related terms may belong to different categories but have some connection, usually intellectual, to each other, e.g. **POETRY** (term) and **DRAMA** (RT or RELATED TERM). This thesaurus assigns related terms freely, again in the hope of leading the user to the exact term needed for information indexing or retrieval, based on his convenience. The method followed was purely pragmatic, especially where the sources did not give any help, in that a type of psychological "free association" procedure was followed with each new term added - terms that sprang to the mind as the new term was encountered were noted down immediately. Those associated terms which were obviously not sub- or superordinate to the original term were usually assigned to the RT relationship. Opposites were very frequently given as related terms, e.g. **REGULAR VERBS** and RT **IRREGULAR VERBS**. Frequently terms with several narrower terms suggested the associative relationships at the next lower level.



Unfortunately, beyond mentioning that the associative relationship is the most difficult to define, the literature surveyed gave no practical hints as to a scientific derivation of related terms, hence the above somewhat vague methods were followed. It was found that very many of the related terms were only added at an advanced stage in the construction of the thesaurus, and particularly many were added when

- a greater knowledge of the subject areas was gained through the defining of terms in that area

- the "family trees" were drawn up, as discussed in section 3.7 below

Many related terms were also the result of user enquiries, juxtapositions encountered in articles surveyed and in the subject knowledge acquired by the author over a period of two years' work as information officer for these subjects.

### 3.6 THE SCOPE OF THE THESAURUS

It was realised from the beginning that to enumerate some specific concepts, e.g. the names of all the languages likely to be encountered in indexing the language and literature periodicals in the library, would be almost impossible. The same principle holds for specific authors of literary works, and particularly the literary works of a specific author. Thus no personal names, e.g. of leaders of linguistic schools of thought and of similar persons, were included in the first draft. It was decided that as the inclusion of such names and terms was made necessary through

their being encountered in the practical indexing situation, it would be done, with due reference to correct form and spelling and language, in the case of literary works. The practical indexing test, discussed in chapter 4, has added a number of such terms to the thesaurus in its present state. These new terms are singled out by being preceded by an asterisk (Appendix 9). It was also decided that personal names or author/title entries would not show any relationships, whether hierarchical or associative, hence **SHAKESPEARE, WILLIAM. \*The tempest** would *not* be a related term of **SHAKESPEARE, WILLIAM. Hamlet**. This decision was taken for two reasons - so that space would be saved, and because such relationships do not seem logical for personal names or author/title entries. On the other hand, languages such as **UGARITIC LANGUAGE** would be fitted into the hierarchical network, being, logically, a narrower term of **LANGUAGES**.

Very many terms, especially of a general kind, e.g. **THEORIES**, of a very specialised nature, e.g. **PSEUDOCLEFT SENTENCES**, and of marginal areas of interest, e.g. **ART**, were also not included originally, on the same principle. Some, as the above examples, have since been added as a result of the practical indexing test, and very many more are expected to be added when the thesaurus is in use. On the other hand, it is expected that some terms, if never used, can be deleted after a period of a year or so, when the thesaurus has been used for indexing and retrieval for some time.

### 3.7 THE FINAL CHECKING OF THE THESAURUS' STRUCTURE

When all terms from the two dictionaries had been transcribed onto the forms with their various relationships, it was decided that, to check the internal consistency to a certain degree, the thesaurus which had been kept in alphabetical order so far, would be sorted into all the hierarchical relationships in the form of "family trees". This entailed considerable labour but was worth the effort since it suggested new relationships, uncovered major inconsistencies and clarified relationships in general. Extensive alterations were made to the existing structure, and many terms expanded or consolidated (see Figure 3.6 for a typical "family tree" structure).

The thesaurus was then typed into a word processor, and in the course of proofreading further alterations were made.

### 3.8 LAYOUT

The layout chosen for the thesaurus was based on the example of the *ERIC thesaurus of descriptors* and consists of the entry terms typed in capital letters, followed by (if appropriate) the USE or UF term(s), the SN (scope note), the BT (broader term), the NT (narrower term) and finally the RT (related term) (Figure 3.7). The terms were set out in two columns on the page (see Appendix 7) to save space. It was also decided that the entry vocabulary, that is the terms which are non-preferred and lead the user to the preferred term, would be typed in lower case

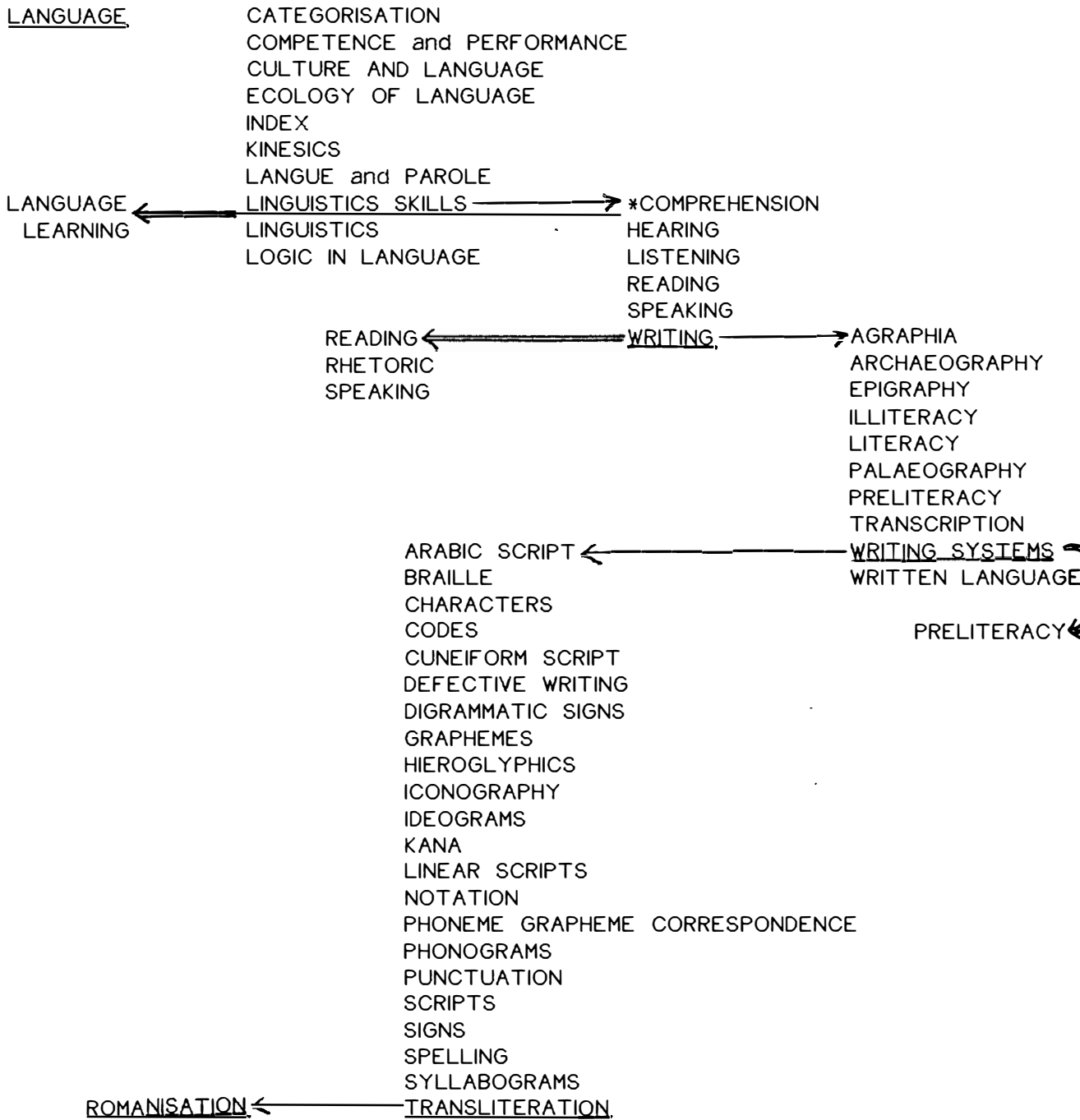


Figure 3.6 Part of a typical "family tree" from top term LANGUAGE to bottom term ROMANISATION

Narrower term →  
 Related term ==>

letters, whereas preferred terms are given in capitals. The thesaurus terms are in alphabetical order and filing is word by word, i.e. **ORIGIN OF SPEECH** files before **ORIGINALITY**. This filing method was chosen as being more commonly used in the library world to date and thus being more familiar to the user of the library service.

Autoinstruction

USE Programmed instruction

PROGRAMMED INSTRUCTION

UF Autoinstruction

SN Method of teaching based  
on the principles of be-  
haviourism

BT Language teaching

NT Linear programmes

RT Language laboratories  
Language learning

**Figure 3.7 Thesaurus entries showing layout**

## C H A P T E R 4

### SUBMISSION TO THE DEPARTMENTS AND TESTING

#### 4.1 SUBMISSION OF THE THESAURUS TO THE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE DEPARTMENTS

When the final proofreading was completed, copies of the thesaurus were submitted to nine language and literature departments, viz. the departments of

- African languages
  - Afrikaans and Netherlands
  - English
  - General linguistics
  - Literary studies
  - German
  - Greek
  - Latin
- Semitic languages

The two remaining departments, of Drama and theatre and of Romance languages, were too busy to examine it.

The departments were furnished with a copy of the first draft of the thesaurus, accompanied by a covering letter, signed by the Director of the Library Service, explaining that as part of a pilot study concerning indexing, the thesaurus had been compiled since there was no thesaurus covering linguistics and literature available. It described the layout and structure, as well as the

purpose of the thesaurus briefly, and submitted it for expert evaluation with regard to its suitability as an indexing tool. Commentary and suggestions for improvements were requested from all staff members of the departments concerned, and the fact that such feedback would lead to amendment of the thesaurus, was mentioned. In practice, the thesaurus and covering letter were taken personally to each departmental head and further verbal clarification given by the author.

It may be mentioned that most departments found it impossible to go through the thesaurus term for term, and that most of them concentrated on their subject specialities alone.

Feedback was, on the whole, favourable and varied from brief expressions of appreciation to elaborate lists of additions and elaborations. One of the departmental heads took the trouble of explaining his suggested amendments personally and discussing their incorporation in the thesaurus with the author. Several departments suggested additional sources where new terms could be found. No department questioned the internal structuring or logic of the thesaurus, and only additions, no deletions, were suggested. However, the thesaurus was found, by some of the literature departments, to be too American and linguistics orientated. This criticism was felt to be very fair and a result of the better quality of the linguistics dictionary used as main source and also due to the fact that both main sources are of American origin. It was felt, however, that literary and, indeed, linguistic terms not included could be added as needed when indexing



with the help of the thesaurus was begun. It was for this reason, too, that some of the suggested specialised terminology was not included as yet in the thesaurus in its present form.

#### 4.2 AMENDMENTS

The inputs of these departments were incorporated in the great majority of cases and many terms were added, relationships amended and scope notes expanded as a result. Terms added as a result of the departments' input are marked with # in the thesaurus (Appendix 9). Each new addition was fitted, as far as possible, into the existing hierarchical network, i.e. it was given broader, narrower and related terms, already existant or derived from the primary or some of the other sources named in the list of references, where applicable. As a result of this, some of the original terms in the thesaurus, present in the first draft, are marked with the # symbol in certain of their relationships, but not in others. The amending of the first draft of the thesaurus involved considerable time and intellectual labour, but the ready acceptance of the thesaurus by the departments made it very worthwhile.

Some of the departments kindly offered to draw up lists of terms to be added in the future; an offer which was gratefully accepted. It was heartening, however, to find that the thesaurus found general acceptance as a tool which would be useful and which was capable of improvement when used practically, i.e. that it was a

useful base to build on, whatever its limitations and shortcomings. The author is most grateful for all comments and suggestions offered by the departments concerned.

### **4.3 TESTING THE THESAURUS**

It was decided that a sample of one hundred articles would be indexed with the help of the thesaurus as a means of testing its efficacy. In order to choose the articles randomly, the latest copy available in the library service of each of the periodicals in Appendix 3 was obtained. Some of the more recent numbers had been sent for binding recently, hence some of the articles indexed are two or three years old. Since Appendix 3 lists only 91 titles, the difference was made up by generating 9 random numbers between 1 and 91 by means of the Lotus 1-2-3 computer programme, and in this way, a further 9 periodical titles from Appendix 3 were duplicated and the total of articles to be indexed brought up to 100. From each periodical, then, the second article in the number available was indexed with the exception of two or three periodicals which only contained one article, which article was then chosen to be indexed. In this way, randomness was obtained.

#### **4.3.1 Practical problems experienced in indexing**

The articles indexed, with the descriptors assigned to them, are given in Appendix 5. Those descriptors which were not found in the thesaurus are marked with \*. In practice, it was found that the articles dealing with linguistic subjects were easier to index than the ones dealing with literature, partly due to the

fact that linguistics appears to be a more exact science than literary studies, and partly vindicating the criticism that the thesaurus is somewhat biased towards linguistics terminology. Literary studies dealing with specific literary works were dealt with in the following fashion: actual texts, such as poems or one-act plays, were assigned the descriptors, e.g., **POEMS** and **TEXTS**; studies, on the other hand, of specific works, were assigned the descriptors, e.g., **CHAUCER, GEOFFREY. Troilus and Criseyde** and **CRITICISM** as well as any other specific aspect discussed in the article concerning the particular work, such as, e.g., **COURTLY LOVE**. If an author was discussed generally, his name would be assigned as well as **CRITICISM** and any other aspect of his work particularly treated, but discussion of specific works was dealt with by assigning author/title descriptors of the particular work in question. Authors' names could also be assigned together with descriptors such as **INTERVIEWS** or **BIOGRAPHIES** if the article in question did not deal with his work, but with himself.

As can be seen from Table 1, only 40% of the articles indexed were written in the English language, and some 19% of the articles did not deal with either literary or linguistic subjects. Another practical problem was how to convey the concept, say, of **AMERICAN POETRY**, since American poetry is written in the English language, but hails from America. Such cases, i.e. when English language literature from outside England was to be described, were dealt with by assigning the descriptors **ENGLISH LAN**

LANGUAGE OF ARTICLE	NUMBER INDEXED	SUBJECT OF ARTICLE	NUMBER INDEXED
English	40	Linguistics	44
Dutch	17	Literary	33
German	25	Literary texts	4
French	5	Ancient history	8
Afrikaans	11	Art & culture	4
Latin	1	Religious	2
Flemish	1	Science	1
		Psychology	4
Totals	100	Totals	100

**Table 1 Analysis of the 100 articles tested with regard to language and subject matter**

GUAGE, AMERICAN LITERATURE and POETRY for the example given above. ENGLISH POETRY, however, would be described by means of the terms ENGLISH LANGUAGE and POETRY, and DUTCH NOVELS by means of the terms DUTCH LANGUAGE and NOVELS. This might seem somewhat clumsy, but to swell the thesaurus with terms such as AMERICAN POETRY, NOVELS, PLAYS etc., or DUTCH, AFRIKAANS, etc. LITERATURE, seemed unwarranted. It will be realised that a certain amount of post-coordination will have to take place during the retrieval process, but since the database will be computerised, in actual fact a search statement such as (DUTCH and NOVELS) will retrieve the article indexed with the descriptors DUTCH LANGUAGE and NOVELS quite easily. However, in the interests of precision and recall, it is envisaged to make the thesaurus available to users formulating search statements to help them use the correct terminology in their searches. Unfortunately there is not yet a computerised database of indexed articles available to test precision and recall of indexing using the thesaurus as an aid.

#### **4.3.2 Results of indexing**

Of the hundred articles indexed, 40% were written in English, 25% in German, 17% in Dutch, 11% in Afrikaans, 5% in French and 1% each in Latin and Flemish (Table 1). As far as subject matter is concerned, 45% of the articles dealt, broadly, with languages and linguistics, including the teaching of foreign languages, 33% with literature in all its aspects, 4% were literary texts, i.e. original poems, short stories and plays, 8% dealt with ancient history, 4% each with psychology and art and culture, 2% with

Biblical subjects and 1% with scientific subjects. It was thus not surprising that many terms needed for the indexing of these articles were not to be found in the thesaurus as it stood at the time of indexing. Lest a false impression of the effectiveness of the thesaurus be given by the above statement, however, Appendix 5 shows quite clearly that many articles were indexed with terms existent in the thesaurus alone, or with such terms with the addition merely of personal names, author/title descriptors or names of languages. The effectiveness of the thesaurus was found to be considerable in this practical exercise.

#### 4.3.3 Thesaurus terms used in indexing

As shown in appendix 6, some 183 thesaurus terms were used 405 times in the indexing of the hundred articles, and 241 new terms, used 338 times, had to be added to the thesaurus; these terms are marked with \* in Appendix 7. The average number of thesaurus terms assigned to each article was thus 7.44.

Of the 241 new terms added to the thesaurus (see Table 2), 23 were the names of languages and 6 of particular literatures, e.g. **JAMAICAN LITERATURE**, which could not be specified by other terms since they are written in the English language, but hail from another country. 10 names of authors and 30 author/title entries had to be made; and a further 7 names of linguists such as **Noam Chomsky** were added, as well as 6 other names, too diverse to be specified. 8 entries relate to various educational processes connected with language teaching and 21 entries cover

SUBJECT	NUMBER OF TERMS USED
Author/title	30
General	26
Languages/Dialects	23
Places	21
Psychology	21
Linguistics	20
Literary	17
Art & culture	13
Authors	10
Religion	9
Education	8
Politics	8
Linguistic names	6
Literatures	6
Other names	6
Science	6
Economics	5
Artists & works	4
Law	2
Total	241

**Table 2 Analysis of the new terms added in the course of indexing with reference to subject matter covered**

the psychological field. Some 13 entries relate to the arts, and a further 8 to political subjects, and 8 to economic systems as well as 6 to scientific subjects. 21 places are named. 20 terms relate to linguistic subjects, and 17 to literary subjects; there are the names of four artists (two with specific works), 9 religious terms and 26 terms too general to subdivide. 2 terms relate to legal subjects. These figures prove that the majority of new terms added does not relate to the core subjects set out to be represented in the thesaurus.

Table 3 shows the distribution of term usage for both terms derived from the thesaurus as it stood at the time of indexing, as well as for the new terms added.

To sum up, it will be noticed that some 127 terms, i.e. 52,7% of the new entries have nothing to do with language, linguistics and literature as such, due to the fact that many of the periodicals subscribed to by the eleven language and literature departments are of very broad scope, particularly the classical ones, and also due to the randomness preserved in the selection of articles for indexing.

The exercise was successful, however, in proving that the thesaurus is useful for indexing and should prove to be an efficacious tool in a practical indexing situation. The names of languages encountered then, as well as authors and author/title entries can be made easily as and when needed.



NUMBER OF THESAURUS TERMS	FREQUENCY OF USE	NUMBER OF NEW TERMS	FREQUENCY OF USE
109	1	206	1
31	2	18	2
9	3	6	3
20	4	5	4
5	5	1	5
2	6	2	6
1	8	1	10
1	9	1	11
1	11	1	14
1	13		
2	14		
1	21		
Totals	183	241	

**Table 3 Usage distribution of thesaurus and new terms in indexing**

It should be added, perhaps, that all terms added and marked with a \* symbol as a result of this exercise, were fitted into the hierarchical network and given broader, narrower and related terms where appropriate, as was the case for terms added at the suggestion of the departments to whom the thesaurus was submitted, which terms are marked with the # symbol. However, since the \* marked terms deal frequently with subjects a long way from the core subjects covered by the thesaurus, many of them stand alone. It was also explained in chapter 3 that personal names and author/title entries would on principle not be given broader, narrower and related terms, but that the names of specific languages would be subordinate to the descriptor **LANGUAGES**.

## C H A P T E R 5

### CONCLUSION

#### 5.1 THE USE OF THE THESAURUS IN PRACTICE

It may be concluded from the practical indexing exercise carried out with the aid of the thesaurus (see section 4.3) that it can become a useful tool for the purpose of furnishing descriptors for documents covering the fields of literature and linguistics. The University of the Orange Free State Library Service is at present concerned with the carrying out of an indexing project, for which an input format has been created which can not only handle all types of documents such as books, periodical articles, reports, articles from symposium and conference proceedings and pamphlets, but may also be adapted to include the description of physical objects, such as works of art or medical equipment. The format is also designed, most importantly, to promote uniformity of indexing procedure on the campus amongst all departments, and is reconcilable with the format of the national bibliographic network, SABINET. Thus indexed items may in time be incorporated not only in the Library Service's database on the University's main frame computer, i.e. the computerised catalogue of the Library Service's holdings of monographs, but may even be incorporated in the national database which comprises SABINET.

It is for this purpose, i.e. uniformity, that the thesaurus was compiled in an effort to promote the controlled use of a

descriptor language, since a thesaurus covering the language and literature fields could not be traced anywhere. The compilation of the thesaurus, then, has simply provided a tool for indexing periodicals covering a certain subject field.

### **5.1.1 Computerisation**

As a medium of storage and retrieval for a database created by means of indexing documents, the computer is, in this day and age, the obvious tool. The indexing project of the Library Service is designed to make use, at first, of microcomputer hardware and software for the purpose of input. In time, the database created in this way may then be downloaded onto the main frame computer. The thesaurus itself is at present stored in a word processor and a microcomputer, but could also be loaded onto the main frame computer. In this way, amendment of the thesaurus is simplified greatly.

Retrieval of items indexed by means of descriptors comprising the thesaurus is a simple matter provided that such items have been computerised. The thesaurus would then be of use not only to the indexer, but also to the user in quest of information as a means of suggesting search terms to him. Hence it has been the goal of the author to make the thesaurus as user friendly as possible.

### **5.1.2 Continued amendments**

It is of the greatest importance that when the thesaurus is used in the practical indexing situation, it is kept up to date not only by the addition of new terms, but also by the deletion of

terms rarely used. It is felt that the establishment of an editorial committee of experts in the field would be of the greatest use in this connection. Such a committee could decide on the suitability for inclusion of new terms; could decide on the deletion of rarely used terms, which latter terms could be traced easily in a computerised database after a period of time, such as a year, had elapsed after first using the thesaurus for indexing. The committee might even help in quality control of indexing with the help of the thesaurus, which is very necessary in the building up of an efficient database.

### **5.1.3 Revisions of the thesaurus**

The thesaurus as it stands must be revised continually as necessitated by the exigencies of indexing with its aid. Here, too, computerisation of the thesaurus will make such revision a simple matter. Printouts of revised versions could be made at stated intervals for the use of indexers and users. The upkeep of the thesaurus will naturally be the task of the Library Service which is sponsoring the indexing project and will act in a co-ordinating and advisory capacity.

## **5.2 SUMMARY OF FINDINGS**

It was found that no thesaurus exists to cover the literature and linguistics fields. An investigation of the literature uncovered the basic principles of thesaurus construction and although great variation, very little prescription and practically no guidance

as far as the construction of thesauri was uncovered, some basic rules for the form of descriptors were derived. Accordingly, it was decided that two basic sources for possible thesaurus terms would be used. These sources supplied the raw materials, i.e. terms for which various relationships would be assigned in order to form an hierarchically constructed, controlled-language vocabulary to cover the language and literature fields. Non-preferred terms would lead to preferred terms, and preferred terms were to be qualified by scope notes and qualifiers, if appropriate, as well as indications of their relationships to other terms by means of giving the broader term(s), narrower term(s) and related term(s). Under each preferred term would be listed, as well, nonpreferred terms rejected in its favour. When all terms were derived in this fashion, "family trees" were drawn up to check for internal consistency. At this stage the thesaurus was typed with the aid of a word processor and the proofread final product was submitted to nine language and literature departments of the University of the Orange Free State. The departments offered comment and feedback and amendments were made accordingly to the thesaurus. A practical exercise was now attempted in that 100 articles chosen randomly from periodicals not found to be indexed effectively elsewhere, were indexed with the help of the thesaurus. Although many new terms had to be added to the thesaurus as a result of this exercise, principally due to the fact that many of the articles did not cover the fields of language and literature alone, it was still found that the thesaurus was a useful tool for its purpose, i.e. it can be used for the indexing of language and literature periodicals effectively.

### 5.3 RECOMMENDATIONS

The thesaurus in its final state may now be used for the indexing of language and literature periodicals, especially of those not indexed, or not indexed effectively, elsewhere. It is recommended that:

- The material indexed with the help of the thesaurus is computerised by means of suitable microcomputer hardware and software

- The thesaurus be kept up to date with terms added as and when needed as a result of indexing documents

- The inclusion of such new terms be subject to their control by an editorial committee, composed of indexer's and subject specialists

- The indexing be subject to quality control by a committee appointed for this purpose. Possibly the editorial committee could assist in this task as well

- Information retrieval from the computerised database comprising the indexed records be tested rigorously with reference to actual user queries, and that anomalies and deficiencies should result in amendment of the thesaurus if felt to be appropriate

- The database so created should be checked against descriptors comprising the thesaurus at the end of a certain period of time with the view of streamlining the thesaurus by deleting terms not used, expanding terms which are used too frequently and

by checking relationships of descriptors for internal consistency

- The thesaurus be regarded as a living growing entity if it is to be used for the purpose for which it was compiled



## R E F E R E N C E S

1. AITCHISON, J. and GILCHRIST, A. 1972. *Thesaurus construction: a practical manual*. London: Aslib
2. AITCHISON, J. 1976. *The articulate mammal: an introduction to psycholinguistics*. London: Hutchinson
3. ANDERSON, J.D. 1983. Essential decisions in indexing systems design. *In: Indexing specialized formats and subjects*. Edited by Hilda Feinberg. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, pp. 1-2
4. AUSTIN, D. 1986. Vocabulary control and information technology. *Aslib Proceedings*, vol. 38, no. 1, pp. 1-15
5. BLAGDEN, J.F. 1968. Thesaurus compilation methods: a literature review. *Aslib Proceedings*, vol. 20, no. 8, pp. 345-359
6. BOOIJ, G.E., KERSTENS, J.G. en VERKUYL, H.J. 1975. *Lexicon van de taalwetenschap*. Utrecht: Het Spectrum. (Het wetenschappelijk boek; nr. 549)
7. CRAWFORD, R.G. 1979. Automatic thesaurus construction based on term centroids. *Canadian Journal of Information Science*, vol. 4, pp. 124-136

8. CROGHAN, A. 1971. *A manual on the construction of an indexing language using educational technology as an example.* London: Coburgh Publications
9. CRYSTAL, D. 1985. *A dictionary of linguistics and phonetics.* Oxford: Blackwell, in association with Deutsch. (Language library)
10. DEXTRE, S.G. and CLARKE, T.M. 1981. A system for machine-aided thesaurus construction. *Aslib Proceedings*, vol. 33, no. 3, pp. 102-112
11. DOCUMENTATION - *Methods for examining documents determining their subjects, and selecting indexing terms.* 1985. [Paris]: International Organization for Standardization. (International Standard; ISO 5963)
12. DUTTA, S. and SINHA, P.K. 1984. Pragmatic approach to subject indexing: a new concept. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 35, no. 6, pp. 325-331
13. EDWARDS, J.S., DOUGLAS, C.H. and JOHN, R.W. 1973. Developing a music education thesaurus. *Journal of Research in Music Education*, vol. 21, no. 1, pp. 20-29
14. FEINBERG, H. 1983. The thesaurus in indexing and searching: a review. *In: Indexing specialized formats and subjects.* Edited by Hilda Feinberg. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, pp. 260-

15. FREEDMAN, B. 1972. Thesauri for vocabulary control. *Drexel Library Quarterly*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 125-128
16. FROMKIN, V. and RODMAN, R. 1978. *An introduction to language*. 2nd ed. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
17. GHOSE, A. and DHAWLE, A.S. 1977. Problems of thesaurus construction. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 28, no. 4, pp. 211-217
18. GILCHRIST, A. 1971. *The thesaurus in retrieval*. London: Aslib
19. GUIDELINES for the establishment and development of monolingual thesauri. 1979. [London]: British Standards Institution. (BS 5723: 1979)
20. GUIDELINES for the establishment and development of monolingual thesauri. 1984. [Paris]: International Organization for Standardization. (Draft international standard; ISO/DIS 2788)
21. HARRIS, K. 1986. Part-controlled vocabulary for literature studies. *International Classification*, vol. 13, no. 3, pp. 133-141

22. HARTMANN, R.R.K. and STORK, F.C. 1972. *Dictionary of language and linguistics*. London: Applied Science Publishers
23. HOFFMANN, G. 1971. Untersuchungen zum Aufbau von Thesauri für das Patentschrifttum. *Informatik*, vol. 18, no. 3, pp. 27-31
24. HOFFMANN, G. 1972. Untersuchungen zum Aufbau von Thesauren für das Patentschrifttum. *Informatik*, vol. 19, no. 1, pp. 37-39
25. HUTCHINS, W.J. 1975. *Languages of indexing and classification: a linguistic study of structures and functions*. Stevenage, Herts.: Peregrinus. (Librarianship and information studies; no. 3)
26. HYMAN, L.M. 1975. *Phonology: theory and analysis*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston
27. JOLLEY, J.L. 1976. The terminology of coordinate indexing. *Aslib Proceedings*, vol. 28, no. 3, pp. 120-128
28. KAZLAUSKAS, E.J. and HOLT, T.D. 1980. The application of a minicomputer to thesaurus construction. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 31, no. 5, pp. 363-368

29. KIM, C. 1973. Theoretical foundations of thesaurus construction and some methodological considerations for thesaurus-updating. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 24, no. 2, pp. 148-156
30. KIM, C. 1982. Retrieval language of social sciences and natural sciences: a statistical investigation. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 33, no. 1, pp. 3-7
31. KIRTLAND, M. and HARPER, S. 1980. Integrating borrowed records into a database: impact on thesaurus development and retrieval. *Database*, vol. 3, no. 4, pp. 26-33
32. KLEINBART, P. 1985. Prolegomenon to 'intelligent' thesaurus software. *Journal of Information Science*, vol. 11, no. 2, pp. 45-53
33. LANCASTER, F.W. 1972. *Vocabulary control for information retrieval*. Washington, DC: Information Resources Press
34. LÉVERY, F. 1972. Les problèmes posés par le vocabulaire documentaire et l'organisation des dictionnaires et thésaurus. *T.A. Informations*, vol. 13, no. 1, pp. 1-8
35. LEVINSON, S.C. 1983. *Pragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. (Cambridge textbooks in linguistics)

36. **MACCAFFERTY, M.** (comp.) 1977. *Thesauri & thesauri construction*. London: Aslib. (Aslib bibliography; no. 7)
37. **MANECKE, H.J.** 1976. Aufwand und Nutzen bei der Erarbeitung und Anwendung von Informationsrecherchesprachen. *Informatik*, vol. 23, no. 4, pp. 34-36
38. **MILDNER, H.** 1976. Zur weiteren Entwicklung von Informationsrecherchesprachen. *Informatik*, vol. 23, no. 1, pp. 31-32
39. **NEUFELD, M.L.** 1972. Linguistic approaches to the construction and use of thesauri: a review. *Drexel Library Quarterly*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 135-146
40. **OVERES, Y., PAES, R. en VAN DER STARRE, J.** 1986. Thesaurusproject van de SBDA. *Open*, vol. 18, no. 10, pp. 440-448
41. **ROGERS, V.G.** 1972. Thesaurus construction: an introduction. *Drexel Library Quarterly*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 117-124
42. **ROLLING, L.N.** 1970. Compilation of thesauri for use in computer systems. *Information Science and Retrieval*, vol. 6, pp. 341-350
43. **SHAW, H.** 1972. *Dictionary of literary terms*. New York: McGraw-Hill

44. SOERGEL, D. 1974. *Indexing languages and thesauri: construction and maintenance*. Los Angeles: Melville Publishing Company. (Information sciences series)
45. SOMERS, H.L. 1981. Observations on standards and guidelines concerning thesaurus construction. *International Classification*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 69-74
46. SVENONIUS, E. 1986. Unanswered questions in the design of controlled vocabularies. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 37, no. 5, pp. 331-340
47. TOWNLEY, H.M. and GEE, R.D. 1980. *Thesaurus-making: grow your own wordstock*. London: Deutsch
48. VICKERY, B.C. 1986. Knowledge representation: a brief review. *Journal of Documentation*, vol. 42, no. 3, pp. 145-159
49. WALL, E. 1969. Vocabulary building and control techniques. *American Documentation*, vol. 20, no. 2, pp. 161-164
50. WALL, E. 1975. Symbiotic development of thesauri and information systems: a case history. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, vol. 26, no. 2, pp. 71-79
51. WALLS, N. 1972. Thesauri and classification in non-scientific areas. *Drexel Library Quarterly*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 129-134

52. WARD, E. 1983. Starting from scratch: the design of a periodical indexing service. *In: Indexing specialized formats and subjects*. Edited by Hilda Feinberg. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, pp. 238-249

53. WESSEL, A.E. 1975. *Computer-aided information retrieval*. Los Angeles: Melville. (Information sciences series)

54. WOLFF-TERROINE, M. and RIMBERT, D. 1971. Computer aided automatic generation of a structured documentary language: preliminary study. *Journal of Documentation*, vol. 27, no. 2, pp. 111-125



APPENDIX 1

LIST OF PERIODICALS SUBSCRIBED TO BY THE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE  
DEPARTMENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE,  
1985\*

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
ACTA CLASSICA	Y	Y
ACTA GERMANICA		
AFRIKA UND UBERSEE	Y	
AMERICAN DIALECT SOCIETY. PUBLICATIONS		Y
AMERICAN JOURNAL OF PHILOLOGY	Y	Y
ANTHROPOLOGICAL LINGUISTICS	Y	Y
ANTICHTHON		
APPLIED PSYCHOLINGUISTICS	Y	Y
ARCADIA	Y	Y
ARCHIV FUR DAS STUDIUM DER NEUEREN SPRACHEN UND LITERATUREN	Y	Y
ARCHIV FUR ORIENTFORSCHUNG	Y	
ARCHIV FUR PAPYRUSFORSCHUNG	Y	
ARCHIVES ROYALES DE MARI	Y	
AUSTRALIAN JOURNAL OF FRENCH STUDIES	Y	Y
AUSTRALIAN LITERARY STUDIES	Y	Y
AVANT-SCENE THEATRE	Y	Y
BEITRAGE ZUR ROMANISCHEN PHILOLOGIE	Y	Y
BERKELEY LINGUISTICS SOCIETY. PROCEEDINGS		
BIBLIOGRAPHIE MODERNER FREMDSPRACHENUNTERRICHT		
BIBLIOTHECA ORIENTALIS	Y	Y
CANADIAN MODERN LANGUAGE REVIEW	Y	Y
CARRIER PIDGIN		
CHICAGO LINGUISTIC SOCIETY. PAPERS		
CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY	Y	Y
CLASSICAL QUARTERLY		Y
CLASSICAL REVIEW	Y	Y
CLASSICAL WORLD	Y	Y
COLLEGE ENGLISH	Y	Y
COLLOQUIA GERMANICA	Y	Y
COMMONWEALTH NOVEL IN ENGLISH	Y	Y
COMMUNICATION AND COGNITION	Y	Y
COMMUNIQUE	Y	
COMPARATIVE CRITICISM	Y	
COMPARATIVE LITERATURE	Y	Y
COMPARATIVE LITERATURE STUDIES	Y	Y
CONTRAST	Y	
CRITICAL INQUIRY	Y	Y
CRITICAL QUARTERLY	Y	Y

\*At the time of writing (1987), this list has changed somewhat; some periodicals have been cancelled, some have ceased publication and new ones have been subscribed to.

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
CRNLE	Y	
DEUTSCH ALS FREMDSPRACHE	Y	
DEUTSCHE SCHILLERGESELLSCHAFT. JAHRBUCH		Y
DEUTSCHE SPRACHE		Y
DEUTSCHE VIERTELJAHRSSCHRIFT		Y
DEUTSCHUNTERRICHT		
DEUTSCHUNTERRICHT IN SUDAFRIKA	Y	
DISKUSSION DEUTSCH XVIIe SIECLE	Y	Y
DOKUMENTAAL		
DOLOS		
DRAMA REVIEW	Y	Y
ELH		Y
ENCOUNTER	Y	Y
ENGLISH	Y	Y
ENGLISH IN AFRICA	Y	Y
ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING DOCUMENTS		
ENGLISH STUDIES	Y	Y
ENGLISH STUDIES IN AFRICA		Y
ENSOVOORT		
ESSAY AND GENERAL LITERATURE INDEX		
ESSAYS AND STUDIES		Y
ESSAYS IN CRITICISM	Y	Y
EUPHORION		Y
FORUM DER LETTEREN		
GENERAL LINGUISTICS	Y	Y
GENRE	Y	Y
GEORG BUCHNER JAHRBUCH	Y	
GERMAN QUARTERLY	Y	Y
GERMAN-TEXAN HERITAGE SOCIETY. NEWSLETTER		
GERMANISCH-ROMANISCHE MONATSSCHRIFT	Y	Y
GERMANISTIK	Y	
GERMANISTISCHE LINGUISTIK		
GIDS		
GLOSSA		Y
GLOT		
GLOTTA		Y
GLOW NEWSLETTER		
GNOMON	Y	Y
GREECE AND ROME	Y	Y
GYMNASIUM		Y
HEBREW UNIVERSITY STUDIES IN LITERATURE AND THE ARTS		Y
HISTORIOGRAPHIA LINGUISTICA		Y
HUNTINGTON LIBRARY QUARTERLY		Y
INCORPORATED LINGUIST	Y	Y
L'INFINI		Y
INTERDISCIPLINAIR TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR TAAL EN TEKSTWETENSKAP		
INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF AMERICAN LINGUISTICS	Y	Y

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF THE SOCIOLOGY OF LANGUAGE	Y	Y
INTERNATIONAL PHONETIC ASSOCIATION. JOURNAL	Y	Y
INTERNATIONALE GERMANISTISCHE BIBLIOGRAPHIE		
JAHRBUCH DEUTSCH ALS FREMDSPRACHE	Y	
JAHRBUCH FUR INTERNATIONALE GERMANISTIK		Y
JOURNAL OF CHILD LANGUAGE	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF CUNEIFORM STUDIES		Y
JOURNAL OF ENGLISH AND GERMAN PHILOLOGY	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF JEWISH STUDIES	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF LANGUAGE AND SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY	Y	
JOURNAL OF LINGUISTICS	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF LITERARY SEMANTICS	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF NEAR EASTERN STUDIES	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF NEW ZEALAND LITERATURE		
JOURNAL OF NORTH WEST SEMITIC LANGUAGES	Y	
JOURNAL OF PHONETICS		Y
JOURNAL OF PRAGMATICS	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF PSYCHOLINGUISTIC RESEARCH	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF ROMAN STUDIES	Y	Y
JOURNAL OF SEMITIC STUDIES	Y	Y
KLASGIDS	Y	Y
KUNAPIPI	Y	
LACUS FORUM		
LAMPAS		
LANGUAGE	Y	Y
LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION		Y
LANGUAGE AND LANGUAGE BEHAVIOR ABSTRACTS		
LANGUAGE AND STYLE		Y
LANGUAGE IN SOCIETY	Y	Y
LANGUAGE PLANNING NEWSLETTER	Y	
LANGUAGE PROBLEMS & LANGUAGE PLANNING	Y	Y
LANGUAGE PRODUCTION		
LANGUAGE TEACHING	Y	
LATIN TEACHING	Y	Y
LEUVENSE BIJDRAGEN	Y	
LEVENDE TALEN	Y	
LILI	Y	Y
LINGUA	Y	Y
LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS	Y	Y
LINGUISTIC INQUIRY	Y	Y
LINGUISTIC REVIEW		Y
LINGUISTICA BIBLICA		Y
LINGUISTICS	Y	Y
LINGUISTICS AND PHILOSOPHY		Y
LINGUISTIK UND DIDAKTIK		
LINGUISTISCHE BERICHTE		
LINQ	Y	

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
LITERATUR UND KRITIK	Y	Y
LITERATUUR	Y	
LVSA BYBLAD		Y
LVSA KONGRESREFERATE		
MAATSTAF		Y
MAGAZINE LITTERAIRE	Y	
MLA INTERNATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY		
MNEMOSYNE	Y	Y
MODERN LANGUAGE JOURNAL	Y	Y
MODERN LANGUAGE QUARTERLY	Y	Y
MODERN LANGUAGE REVIEW	Y	Y
MODERN PHILOLOGY	Y	Y
MODERNE SPRACHEN		
MONATSHEFTE		
MOSAIC		Y
MULTILINGUA	Y	Y
MUTTERSPRACHE	Y	Y
NAAMKUNDE	Y	
NADS		Y
NATURAL LANGUAGE & LINGUISTIC THEORY		Y
NEOPHILOLOGUS		Y
NEUE RUNDSCHAU		Y
DIE NEUEREN SPRACHEN	Y	
NEW COIN POETRY		Y
NEW LITERARY HISTORY		Y
NIEUWE TAALGIDS	Y	
NOUVELLE REVUE FRANCAISE	Y	Y
NOVEL	Y	Y
ONS ERFDEEL	Y	
ORIENS ANTIQUUS		
ORIENTALIA		Y
PALESTINE EXPLORATION QUARTERLY		Y
PHONETICA		Y
PLAYS & PLAYERS	Y	
PLAYS IN PROGRESS		
PMLA		Y
POETICA	Y	Y
POETICS		Y
POETICS TODAY	Y	Y
POETIQUE		Y
PRAGMATICS & BEYOND		
PROCEEDINGS AFRICAN CLASSICAL ASSOCIATIONS	Y	Y
QUARRY		
QUARTERLY JOURNAL OF SPEECH	Y	Y
RASTER		
RESEARCH IN AFRICAN LITERATURES	Y	Y
REVIEW OF ENGLISH STUDIES	Y	Y
REVUE DE LINGUISTIQUE ROMANE	Y	Y
REVUE DE LITTERATURE COMPAREE		Y
REVUE DES ETUDES GRECQUES	Y	

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
REVUE DES ETUDES LATINES	Y	Y
REVUE D'HISTOIRE LITTERAIRE DE LA FRANCE	Y	Y
ROMANISCHE FORSCHUNGEN	Y	Y
SA JOURNAL OF LINGUISTICS		
SA LITERATURE/LITERATUUR	Y	
SEMINAR	Y	Y
SEMIOTICA	Y	Y
SHAKESPEARE SURVEY		Y
SINN UND FORM		Y
SOCIOLINGUISTICS NEWSLETTER	Y	Y
SOUTHERN REVIEW	Y	Y
SPEKTATOR	Y	
SPIEGEL DER LETTEREN	Y	Y
SPIL		
SPIL PLUS		
SPRACHE	Y	
SPRACHE IM TECHNISCHEN ZEITALTER		
SPRACHE UND LITERATUR	Y	
SPRACHKUNST	Y	Y
SPRACHPRAXIS		
STANDPUNTE		Y
STELLENBOSCH STUDIES IN AFRIKATALE		
STUDIES IN AFRICAN LINGUISTICS		Y
STUDIES IN ENGLISH LINGUISTICS		
STUDIES IN LANGUAGE		Y
STUDIES IN PHILOLOGY		Y
SUID-AFRIKAANSE TYDSKRIF VIR AFRIKATALE		
SYNTAX AND SEMANTICS		Y
TAAL EN TONGVAL	Y	
TEXT		
TEXT UND KRITIK		Y
THEORETICAL LINGUISTICS		Y
TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR NEDERLANDSE TAAL EN LETTERKUNDE	Y	Y
TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR TAALBEHEERSING	Y	
TIMES LITERARY SUPPLEMENT	Y	Y
TNA		
TSWELOPELE		
TYDSKRIF VIR LETTERKUNDE	Y	Y
TYDSKRIF VIR TAALONDERRIG	Y	Y
TYDSKRIF VIR VOLKEKUNDE EN VOLKSTAAL	Y	Y
UCT STUDIES IN ENGLISH	Y	Y
UGARIT-FORSCHUNGEN	Y	
UNISA ENGLISH STUDIES	Y	Y
UPSTREAM		
VLAAMSE GIDS		
VOX LATINA	Y	
WEIMARER BEITRAGE	Y	Y
WELT DES ORIENTS	Y	
WIRKENDES WORT		

TITLE	REVIEWS	INDEXED
WORD	Y	
YEARBOOK OF COMPARATIVE AND GENERAL LITERATURE	Y	
ZEITSCHRIFT DER DEUTSCHEN MORGENLANDISCHEN GESELLSCHAFT	Y	Y
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR AGYPTISCHE SPRACHE UND ALTERTUMSKUNDE		
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR ASSYROLOGIE UND VORDERASIATI- SCHE ARCHAEOLOGIE	Y	
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DEUTSCHE PHILOGIE	Y	Y
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DEUTSCHES ALTERTUM UND DEUTSCHE LITERATUR	Y	Y
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DIALEKTOLOGIE UND LINGUISTIK	Y	Y
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DIALEKTOLOGIE UND LINGUISTIK. BEIHEFTE		
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR FRANZOSISCHE SPRACHE UND LITERATUR	Y	Y
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR ROMANISCHE PHILOGIE	Y	Y
ZIELSPRACHE DEUTSCH	Y	

APPENDIX 2

INDEXES IN WHICH PERIODICALS IN APPENDIX 1 ARE INDEXED

PERIODICAL	INDEXED IN
ACTA CLASSICA	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
AMERICAN DIALECT SOCIETY. PUBLICATIONS	RESEARCH IN EDUCATION
AMERICAN JOURNAL OF PHILOLOGY	SOCIAL SCIENCES INDEX* CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* AHCI BOOK REVIEW INDEX*
ANTHROPOLOGICAL LINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX* ABSTRACTS IN ANTHROPOLOGY*
APPLIED PSYCHOLINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS#
ARCADIA	AHCI
ARCHIV FUR DAS STUDIUM DER NEUEREN SPRACHEN UND LITERATUREN	MLA*
AUSTRALIAN JOURNAL OF FRENCH STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS* AHCI AUSTRALIAN PAIS
AUSTRALIAN LITERARY STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# AUSTRALIAN PAIS AHCI ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES
AVANT-SCENE THEATRE	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
BEITRAGE ZUR ROMANISCHEN PHILOLOGIE	AHCI
BIBLIOTHECA ORIENTALIS	OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

PERIODICAL

INDEXED IN

CANADIAN MODERN LANGUAGE  
REVIEW

CURRENT CONTENTS#  
MLA\*  
CANADIAN EDUCATION INDEX

CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY

CURRENT CONTENTS#  
HUMANITIES INDEX\*  
AHCI

CLASSICAL QUARTERLY

BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX  
CURRENT CONTENTS#  
HUMANITIES INDEX\*  
INTERNATIONAL GUIDE TO  
CLASSICAL STUDIES

CLASSICAL REVIEW

BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX  
CURRENT CONTENTS#  
HUMANITIES INDEX\*  
INTERNATIONAL GUIDE TO  
CLASSICAL STUDIES

CLASSICAL WORLD

BOOK REVIEW INDEX\*  
CURRENT CONTENTS#

COLLEGE ENGLISH

EDUCATION INDEX\*  
CURRENT CONTENTS#  
CIJE\*

COLLOQUIA GERMANICA

CURRENT CONTENTS#  
AHCI

COMMONWEALTH NOVEL IN ENGLISH

ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES  
MLA\*

COMMUNICATION AND COGNITION

PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS\*  
SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS\*  
SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION  
INDEX\*

COMPARATIVE LITERATURE

CURRENT CONTENTS#  
HUMANITIES INDEX\*  
MLA\*

COMPARATIVE LITERATURE  
STUDIES

ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES  
CURRENT CONTENTS#  
HUMANITIES INDEX\*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only



## PERIODICAL

## INDEXED IN

CRITICAL INQUIRY	ABSTRACTS OF POPULAR CULTURE CURRENT CONTENTS# LLBA*
CRITICAL QUARTERLY	BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
DEUTSCHE SCHILLERGESELL- SCHAFT. JAHRBUCH	AHCI
DEUTSCHE SPRACHE	AHCI
DEUTSCHE VIERTELJAHRSSCHRIFT	CURRENT CONTENTS#
XVIIe SIECLE	BULLETIN SIGNALETIQUE CURRENT CONTENTS#
DRAMA REVIEW	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* MLA*
ELH	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
ENCOUNTER	BOOK REVIEW DIGEST* BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX PAIS*
ENGLISH	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES
ENGLISH IN AFRICA	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
ENGLISH STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# LLBA* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

## PERIODICAL

## INDEXED IN

---

ENGLISH STUDIES IN AFRICA	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* LLBA*
ESSAYS AND STUDIES ESSAYS IN CRITICISM	AHCI ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
EUPHORION	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
GENERAL LINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# SOCIAL SCIENCE CITATION INDEX*
GENRE	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA*
GERMAN QUARTERLY	CURRENT CONTENTS# EDUCATION INDEX* AHCI
GERMANISCH-ROMANISCHE MONATSSCHRIFT	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
GLOSSA	CURRENT CONTENTS# LLBA*
GLOTTA	AHCI
GNOMON	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
GREECE AND ROME	BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* INTERNATIONAL GUIDE TO CLASSICAL STUDIES
GYMNASIUM	AHCI
HISTORIOGRAPHICA LINGUISTICA	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

## PERIODICAL

## INDEXED IN

HSLA	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA*
HUNTINGTON LIBRARY QUARTERLY	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS* MLA*
INCORPORATED LINGUIST	SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
L'INFINI	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF AMERICAN LINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX* ABSTRACTS IN ANTHROPOLOGY* CIJE* LLBA*
INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF THE SOCIOLOGY OF LANGUAGE	CURRENT CONTENTS# PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*
INTERNATIONAL PHONETIC ASSO- CIATION. JOURNAL	LLBA* LANGUAGE TEACHING & LINGUISTICS ABSTRACTS*
JAHRBUCH FUR INTERNATIONALE GERMANISTIK	AHCI
JOURNAL OF CHILD LANGUAGE	CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA* SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* CHILD DEVELOPMENT ABSTRACTS* LLBA*
JOURNAL OF CUNEIFORM STUDIES	OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS* RELIGION INDEX 1 *
JOURNAL OF ENGLISH AND GERMAN PHILOLOGY	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

PERIODICAL

INDEXED IN

JOURNAL OF JEWISH STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS* BRITISH HUMANITIES ABSTRACTS RELIGION INDEX 1 *
JOURNAL OF LINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* LLBA*
JOURNAL OF LITERARY SEMANTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
JOURNAL OF NEAR EASTERN STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* LLBA* SOCIAL SCIENCE CITATION INDEX* MLA* ABSTRACTS OF FOLKLORE STUDIES INTERNATIONALE ZEITSCHRIFT FUR BIBELWISSENSCHAFT* RELIGIOUS & THEOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
JOURNAL OF PHONETICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
JOURNAL OF PRAGMATICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* PHILOSOPHER'S INDEX
JOURNAL OF PSYCHOLINGUISTIC RESEARCH	BIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* CURRENT CONTENTS# INDEX MEDICUS PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX* LLBA* MENTAL HEALTH BOOK REVIEW INDEX
JOURNAL OF ROMAN STUDIES	HUMANITIES INDEX*
JOURNAL OF SEMITIC STUDIES	CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA* OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS* RELIGION INDEX 1 *

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

PERIODICAL

INDEXED IN

---

KLASGIDS	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
LANGUAGE	HUMANITIES INDEX* PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*
LANGUAGE AND COMMUNICATION LANGUAGE AND STYLE	SCIENCE ABSTRACTS CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
LANGUAGE IN SOCIETY	CURRENT CONTENTS# PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* LLBA*
LANGUAGE PROBLEMS AND LANGUAGE PLANNING	R I E * INTERNATIONAL POLITICAL SCIENCE ABSTRACTS
LATIN TEACHING	BRITISH EDUCATION INDEX
LILI	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
LINGUA	CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA* SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* DSH ABSTRACTS LLBA*
LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS	CURRENT CONTENTS# SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX* COMPUTING REVIEWS*
LINGUISTIC INQUIRY	CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA* AHCI LLBA*
LINGUISTIC REVIEW	A H C I
LINGUISTICA BIBLICA	MLA* LLBA* NEW TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

PERIODICAL

INDEXED IN

---

LINGUISTICS	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*
LINGUISTICS AND PHILOSOPHY	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
LITERATUR UND KRITIK	AHCI
LVSA BYBLAD MAATSTAF	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS* CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
MNEMOSYNE	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
MODERN LANGUAGE JOURNAL	BOOK REVIEW INDEX* CIJE* CURRENT CONTENTS# EDUCATION INDEX* LLBA* PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
MODERN LANGUAGE QUARTERLY	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
MODERN LANGUAGE REVIEW	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* SOCIAL SCIENCES INDEX*
MODERN PHILOLOGY	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* BOOK REVIEW DIGEST* AHCI
MOSAIC	MLA* CANADIAN PERIODICALS INDEX
MULTILINGUA	SCIENCE ABSTRACTS
MUTTERSPRACHE	AHCI
NADS	LLBA*
NATURAL LANGUAGE & LIN- GUISTICS THEORY	AHCI

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

## PERIODICAL

## INDEXED IN

---

NEOPHILOLOGUS	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS#
NEUE RUNDSCHAU	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHC1
NEW COIN POETRY	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
NEW LITERARY HISTORY	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
NOUVELLE REVUE FRANCAISE	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHC1
NOVEL	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
ORIENTALIA	OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS*
PALESTINE EXPLORATION QUARTERLY	BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX OLD TESTAMENT ABSTRACTS* RELIGION INDEX 1 *
PHONETICA	BIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* CURRENT CONTENTS# EXCERPTA MEDICA SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*
PMLA	HUMANITIES INDEX*
POETICA	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHC1
POETICS	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS#
POETICS TODAY	CURRENT CONTENTS# LLBA*
POETIQUE	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHC1
PROCEEDINGS AFRICAN CLASSICAL ASSOCIATIONS	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

## PERIODICAL

## INDEXED IN

QUARTERLY JOURNAL OF SPEECH	CURRENT CONTENTS# EDUCATION INDEX* PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS* SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX*
RESEARCH IN AFRICAN LITERATURES	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX* MLA* SOCIOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
REVIEW OF ENGLISH STUDIES	BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
REVUE DE LINGUISTIQUE ROMANE	AHCI
REVUE DE LITTERATURE COMPAREE	CURRENT CONTENTS#
REVUE DES ETUDES LATINES	AHCI
REVUE D'HISTOIRE LITTERAIRE DE LA FRANCE	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
ROMANISCHE FORSCHUNGEN	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
SEMINAR	CURRENT CONTENTS# MLA*
SEMIOTICA	CURRENT CONTENTS# PSYCHOLOGICAL ABSTRACTS*
SHAKESPEARE SURVEY	HUMANITIES INDEX*
SINN UND FORM	AHCI
SOCIOLINGUISTICS NEWSLETTER	LLBA*

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only



PERIODICAL

INDEXED IN

---

SOUTHERN REVIEW	ABSTRACTS OF ENGLISH STUDIES CURRENT CONTENTS# HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS* HUMANITIES INDEX* MLA* AMERICA: HISTORY & LIFE INDEX OF AMERICAN PERIODICAL VERSE
SPIEGEL DER LETTEREN	AHCI
SPRACHKUNST	AHCI
STANDPUNTE	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
STUDIES IN AFRICAN LINGUISTICS	LLBA*
STUDIES IN LANGUAGE	AHCI
STUDIES IN PHILOLOGY	CURRENT CONTENTS# HUMANITIES INDEX*
SYNTAX AND SEMANTICS TEXT UND KRITIK	AHCI CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
THEORETICAL LINGUISTICS	AHCI
TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR NEDERLANDSE TAAL EN LETTERKUNDE	CURRENT CONTENTS# AHCI
TIMES LITERARY SUPPLEMENT	BRITISH HUMANITIES INDEX HUMANITIES INDEX* BOOK REVIEW INDEX*
TYDSKRIF VIR LETTERKUNDE	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
TYDSKRIF VIR TAALONDERRIG	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
TYDSKRIF VIR VOLKEKUNDE EN VOLKSTAAL	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
UCT STUDIES IN ENGLISH	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
UNISA ENGLISH STUDIES	INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS*
WEIMARER BEITRAGE	AHCI

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service

# Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

PERIODICAL	INDEXED	IN
ZEITSCHRIFT DER DEUTSCHEN MORGENLANDISCHEN GESELLSCHAFT	A H C I	
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DEUTSCHE PHILOLOGIE	CURRENT A H C I	CONTENTS#
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DEUTSCHES ALTERTUM UND DEUTSCHE LITERATUR	CURRENT A H C I	CONTENTS#
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DIALEKTOLOGIE UND LINGUISTIK	A H C I	
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR FRANZOSISCHE SPRACHE UND LITERATUR	CURRENT A H C I	CONTENTS#
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR ROMANISCHE PHILOLOGIE	CURRENT A H C I	CONTENTS#

\* Available at the UOFS Library Service  
 # Not a true index : a collection of contents pages only

APPENDIX 3

FINAL LIST OF PERIODICALS CONSIDERED SUITABLE FOR INDEXING

A. UNINDEXED PERIODICALS

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
ACTA GERMANICA	ANNUAL		12	GERMAN
AFRIKA UND UBERSEE	BIENNIAL		18	GERMAN ENGLISH
ANTICHTHON	ANNUAL		6	ENGLISH
ARCHIV FUR ORIENTFORSCHUNG	ANNUAL OR LESS FREQUENTLY		52	ENGLISH GERMAN FRENCH
ARCHIV FUR PAPYRUSFORSCHUNG	ANNUAL		7	GERMAN ENGLISH
BERKELEY LIN- GUISTICS SOCIETY. PROCEEDINGS	ANNUAL		50	ENGLISH
CHICAGO LINGUISTIC SOCIETY. PAPERS	ANNUAL		31	ENGLISH
COMMUNIQUE	IRREGULAR		9	ENGLISH
COMPARATIVE CRITICISM	ANNUAL		23	ENGLISH
CONTRAST	BIENNIAL		10	ENGLISH
DEUTSCH ALS FREMDSPRACHE	BIMONTHLY		9	GERMAN
DEUTSCHUNTERRICHT	BIMONTHLY		9	GERMAN
DEUTSCHUNTERRICHT IN SUDAFRIKA	BIENNIAL		2	GERMAN
DISKUSSION DEUTSCH	BIMONTHLY		7	GERMAN
DOLOS	QUARTERLY		10	AFRIKAANS
ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING DOCUMENTS	IRREGULAR		10	ENGLISH

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
ENSOVOORT	BIENNIAL		10	AFRIKAANS
FORUM DER LETTEREN	QUARTERLY		4	DUTCH
GEORG BUCHNER JAHRBUCH	ANNUAL		8	GERMAN
GERMANISTISCHE LINGUISTIK	4-6 P.A.		23	GERMAN
DE GIDS	10 P.A.		17	DUTCH
GLOT	3 P.A.		3	DUTCH
INTERDISCIPLINAIR TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR TAAL & TEKSTWETEN- SCHAP	QUARTERLY		7	DUTCH
JAHRBUCH DEUTSCH ALS FREMDSPRACHE	ANNUAL		16	GERMAN
JOURNAL OF LANGUAGE & SOCIAL PSYCHOLOGY	QUARTERLY		3	ENGLISH
JOURNAL OF NEW ZEALAND LITERATURE	ANNUAL		8	ENGLISH
JOURNAL OF NORTH- WEST SEMITIC LANGUAGES	ANNUAL		15	ENGLISH
KUNAPIPI	BIENNIAL		13	ENGLISH
LACUS FORUM	ANNUAL		47	ENGLISH
LAMPAS	5 P.A.		4	DUTCH
LANGUAGE PLANNING NEWSLETTER	QUARTERLY		2	ENGLISH
LANGUAGE PRODUCTION	ANNUAL		7	ENGLISH
LANGUAGE TEACHING	QUARTERLY		1	ENGLISH
LEUVENSE BIJDRAGEN	QUARTERLY		2	ENGLISH GERMAN
LEVENDE TALEN	MONTHLY		8	DUTCH

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
LINGUISTIK UND DIDAKTIK	QUARTERLY		5	GERMAN ENGLISH
LINGUISTISCHE BERICHTE	BIMONTHLY		4	GERMAN
LINQ	QUARTERLY		17	ENGLISH
LITERATUUR	BIMONTHLY		6	DUTCH
LVSA KONGRES- REFERATE	ANNUAL		27	ENGLISH AFRIKAANS
MAGAZINE LITTERAIRE	MONTHLY		11	FRENCH
MODERNE SPRACHEN	QUARTERLY		3	GERMAN
MONATSHEFTE	QUARTERLY		5	ENGLISH
NAAMKUNDE	QUARTERLY		25	DUTCH GERMAN
DIE NEUEREN SPRACHEN	BIMONTHLY		6	GERMAN FRENCH
NIEUWE TAALGIDS	BIMONTHLY		7	DUTCH
ONS ERFDEEL	BIMONTHLY		10	DUTCH
ORIENS ANTIQUUS	QUARTERLY		13	GERMAN ENGLISH FRENCH ITALIAN
PLAYS & PLAYERS	MONTHLY		6	ENGLISH
PLAYS IN PROCESS	MONTHLY		1	ENGLISH
PRAGMATICS & BEYOND	8 P.A.		1	ENGLISH
RASTER	QUARTERLY		13	DUTCH
REVUE DES ETUDES GRECQUES	BIENNIAL		10	FRENCH
SA JOURNAL OF LINGUISTICS	QUARTERLY		4	ENGLISH AFRIKAANS

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
SA TYDSKRIF VIR AFRIKATALE	1-2 P.A.		4	ENGLISH AFRIKAANS
SPEKTATOR	BIMONTHLY		5	DUTCH
SPIL	IRREGULAR		4	ENGLISH
SPIL PLUS	IRREGULAR		1	AFRIKAANS
SPRACHE	1-2 P.A.		6	GERMAN FRENCH ENGLISH
SPRACHE IM TECH- NISCHEN ZEITALTER	QUARTERLY		5	GERMAN
SPRACHE UND LITERA- TUR	BIENNIAL		9	GERMAN
STELLENBOSCH STU- DIES IN AFRIKATALE	1-2 P.A.		2	ENGLISH AFRIKAANS
STUDIES IN ENGLISH LINGUISTICS	1-2 P.A.		6	ENGLISH
TAAL EN TONGVAL	QUARTERLY		6	DUTCH
TEXT	QUARTERLY		5	ENGLISH
TIJDSCHRIFT VOOR TAALBEHEERSING	QUARTERLY		6	DUTCH
TNA	3 P.A.		5	AFRIKAANS DUTCH
UGARIT- FORSCHUNGEN	ANNUAL		24	GERMAN ENGLISH FRENCH ITALIAN
UPSTREAM	QUARTERLY		4	ENGLISH
VLAAMSE GIDS	BIMONTHLY		4	FLEMISH
VOX LATINA	QUARTERLY		13	LATIN
WELT DES ORIENTS	ANNUAL		18	GERMAN ENGLISH
WIRKENDES WORT	BIMONTHLY		7	GERMAN

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
WORD	3 P.A.		3	ENGLISH
YEARBOOK OF COMPARATIVE AND GENERAL LITERATURE	ANNUAL		9	ENGLISH
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR AGYPTISCHE SPRACHE UND ALTERTUMSKUNDE	BIENNIAL		6	GERMAN ENGLISH
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR ASSYROLOGIE UND VORDERASIATISCHE ARCHAOLOGIE	BIENNIAL		9	GERMAN ENGLISH FRENCH
ZEITSCHRIFT FUR DIALEKTOLOGIE UND LINGUISTIK. BEIHEFTE	IRREGULAR		1	GERMAN
ZIELSPRACHE DEUTSCH	QUARTERLY		5	GERMAN

**B. PERIODICALS INDEXED IN *CURRENT CONTENTS* ONLY**

APPLIED PSYCHO-LINGUISTICS	QUARTERLY		6	ENGLISH
REVUE DE LITTERATURE COMPAREE	QUARTERLY		4	FRENCH ENGLISH

**C. PERIODICALS INDEXED IN *INDEX TO SA PERIODICALS* ONLY**

ACTA CLASSICA	ANNUAL		10	ENGLISH AFRIKAANS
ENGLISH IN AFRICA	BIENNIAL		5	ENGLISH
NEW COIN POETRY	BIENNIAL		12	ENGLISH
PROCEEDINGS AFRICAN CLASSICAL ASSOCIATIONS	ANNUAL		8	ENGLISH
STANDPUNTE	BIMONTHLY		12	AFRIKAANS ENGLISH

TITLE	PERIODICITY	AVERAGE OF	NO. ARTICLES	USUAL LANGUAGES
TYDSKRIF VIR LETTERKUNDE	QUARTERLY		12	AFRIKAANS
TYDSKRIF VIR TAALONDERRIG	QUARTERLY		6	AFRIKAANS ENGLISH
TYDSKRIF VIR VOLKEKUNDE EN VOLKSTAAL	QUARTERLY		4	AFRIKAANS
UCT STUDIES IN ENGLISH	ANNUAL		4	ENGLISH
UNISA ENGLISH STUDIES	BIENNIAL		4	ENGLISH



APPENDIX 4

PERIODICALS EXCLUDED FROM THE FINAL LIST OF PERIODICALS TO BE INDEXED

TITLE	REASON FOR EXCLUSION
ARCHIVES ROYALES DE MARI	ONLY TRANSCRIPTS OF PALACE DOCUMENTS
BIBLIOGRAPHIE MODERNE FREMDSPRACHENUNTERRICHT	BIBLIOGRAPHY
CARRIER PIDGIN	SHORT NEWS ITEMS ONLY
CRNLE REVIEWS	REVIEWS OF COMMONWEALTH LITERATURE ONLY
DOKUMENTAAL	SHORT NEWS ITEMS ONLY
ESSAY AND GENERAL LITERATURE INDEX	INDEX
GERMAN-TEXAN HERITAGE SOCIETY. NEWSLETTER	SHORT NEWS ITEMS ONLY
GERMANISTIK	REVIEWS ONLY
GLOW NEWSLETTER	SHORT NEWS ITEMS ONLY
INTERNATIONALE GERMANISTISCHE BIBLIOGRAPHIE	BIBLIOGRAPHY
LANGUAGE AND LANGUAGE BEHAVIOR ABSTRACTS	INDEX
MLA INTERNATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY	INDEX
SA LITERATURE/LITERATURE	REVIEWS ONLY
SPRACHPRAXIS	SHORT SIMPLE PIECES TO TEACH FOREIGNERS GERMAN
TSWELOPELE	NEWSY ARTICLES IN SOUTH SOTHO

APPENDIX 5

RESULTS OF THE INDEXING TEST

1. ANDERSEN, T. 1986. The phonemic system of Madi. *Afrika und Übersee*, vol. 69, no. 2, pp. 193-207.

\*MADI LANGUAGE / PHONEMIC STRUCTURE / DIALECTS / SYLLABLES / SEGMENTAL ANALYSIS / CONSONANTS / LABIOVELARS / VOWELS / TONE / \*FUNCTIONAL LOAD

2. ASSINK, E.M.H. 1987. De rol van grammaticale operaties bij het nemen van orthografische beslissing. *Spektator: Tijdschrift voor Neerlandistiek*, vol. 16, no. 3, pp. 180-193.

SPELLING / \*DUTCH LANGUAGE / WRITING / HOMONYMS / SYNTAX / GRAMMAR / SENTENCES / \*EXPERIMENTS

3. AVISHUR, Y. 1986. The "duties of the son" in the "Story of Aqhat" and Ezekiel's prophecy on idolatry (Ch. 8). *Ugarit-Forschungen*, vol. 17, pp. 49-60.

\*UGARITIC LANGUAGE / STORIES / \*STORY OF AQHAT / TRANSLATION / TEXTS / \*OLD TESTAMENT / \*EZEKIEL / BIBLE / \*ANCIENT HEBREW LANGUAGE / \*PROPHECIES

4. BADENHORST, P.J. 1985. Voorbepalers in Afrikaans: volgorde en funksie. *Linguistic Society of Southern Africa. Conference Papers 10 - 11 July*, vol. 21, pp. 17-30.

\*PREMODIFYERS / ADJECTIVES / NOUN PHRASES / WORD ORDER / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE

5. **BALDACCI, M.** 1985. A possible meaning of Eblaite *mi-nu*. *Welt des Orients*, vol. 16, pp. 16-18.

\*EBLAITE LANGUAGE / PREPOSITIONS / TEXTS / MEANING

6. **BASHIR, E.** 1986. Beyond split-ergativity: subject marking in Wakhi. *Chicago Linguistic Society. Papers from the General Session at the Regional Meeting*, vol. 22, part 1, pp. 14-35.

\*WAKHI LANGUAGE / SUBJECTS / \*SPLIT ERGATIVITY / MARKERS / VERBS / CASE / PAST TENSE / \*HUNZA DIALECT

7. **BICKER, N. et al.** 1987. Eerst circus in de klas...en daarna...de klas in het circus. *Levende Talen*, no. 418, pp. 82-89.

\*DUTCH LANGUAGE / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / \*PUPILS / \*INTERVIEWS / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / \*POSTERS / LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / \*MULTIMEDIA INSTRUCTION / \*CIRCUS

8. **BINDER, H.** 1984. Jugendliche Verkennung: Kafka und die Philosophie. *Wirkendes Wort*, vol. 34, no. 6, pp. 411-421.

\*KAFKA, FRANZ / BIOGRAPHIES / PHILOSOPHY

9. **BRAET, A.** 1987. De retoriek van een p.r.-tekst. *Tijdschrift voor Taalbeheersing*, vol. 9, no. 1, pp. 5-19.

RHETORIC / STYLISTICS / COMMUNICATION / TEXTS / ANALYSIS / ARGUMENTATION / APOLOGIES

10. **CALLENDER, J.B.** 1986. Problems of tense and aspect in Egyptian. *Zeitschrift für ägyptische Sprache und Altertumskun-*

*de*, vol. 113, no. 1, pp. 8-18.

\*MIDDLE EGYPTIAN LANGUAGE / VERBS / TENSE / ASPECT / MOOD

11. **CARPENTER, K.** 1986. Productivity and pragmatics of Thai classifiers. *Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society*, vol. 12, pp. 14-25.

\*DETERMINANTS / \*THAI LANGUAGE / CLASSIFICATORY LANGUAGES / DIS-COURSE / PRAGMATICS / WORD ORDER / GENERIC TERMS / SEMANTICS / \*MINIMAL DISTINCTIONS / NOUNS

12. **CATHCART, K.J.** 1984. boset in Zephaniah 3:5. *Journal of Northwest Semitic Languages*, vol. 12, pp. 35-39.

BIBLE / \*OLD TESTAMENT / \*ZEPHANIAH / \*MINOR PROPHETS / \*ANCIENT HEBREW LANGUAGE / TRANSLATION / WORDS / PUNCTUATION

13. **CONRADIE, P.J.** 1986. Enkele moderne benaderings van die Griekse tragedie. *Acta Classica*, vol. 29, pp. 3-17.

\*ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE / TRAGEDY / LITERARY THEORIES / CRITICISM / DRAMA / REVIEWS / DECONSTRUCTION / \*EURIPIDES. MEDEA

14. **COULTON, J.** 1985. Aschenbach, Apollo and Dionysus: the tragic sense in *Death in Venice*. *University of Cape Town. Studies in English*, no. 14, pp. 22-28.

\*MANN, THOMAS. Tod in Venedig / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / NOVELS / CRITICISM

15. **COUPEZ, A.** 1987. Traces d'harmonie vocalique à croisement

de hauteur en nande (bantou D42). *South African Journal of African Languages*, vol. 7, no. 2, pp. 47-49.

\*NANDE LANGUAGE / VOWEL HARMONY / PHONETICS / PHONOLOGY / MORPHOPHONOLOGY / DIACHRONIC LINGUISTICS / VOWELS / PHONEMES / \*PROTO TANO CONGO LANGUAGE / \*ADVANCED TONGUE ROOT FEATURES

16. CUPACH, W.R., METTS, S. and HAZLETON, V. Jnr. 1986. Coping with embarrassing predicaments: remedial strategies and their perceived utility. *Journal of Language and Social Psychology*, vol. 5, no. 3, pp. 181-200.

SPEECH ACTS / \*SOCIAL INTERACTION / \*EMBARRASSMENT / \*REMEDIES / \*EFFECTIVENESS / APOLOGIES / \*EXPLANATIONS / \*AVOIDANCE / \*SEX DIFFERENCES / QUESTIONNAIRES / COMMUNICATION / \*BEHAVIOUR / \*FACE SAVING

17. DAVIDS, A. 1987. Arabic-Afrikaans: a view of written Afrikaans of the Cape Muslims during the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. *SA Journal of Linguistics*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 24-40.

\*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / DIALECTS / \*ARABIC LANGUAGE / ARABIC SCRIPT / \*CAPE PROVINCE / \*MUSLIMS / WRITING

18. DELIUS, A. 1986. Was schreiben Schüler, wie schreiben sie? *Deutschunterricht*, vol. 38, no. 6, pp. 12-21.

WRITING / \*PUPILS / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / QUESTIONNAIRES / LETTERS (Epistles) / DIARIES / ESSAYS

19. DELLER, K. 1986. Ein Assyrer tilgt Schulden. *Oriens*

*Antiquus*, vol 25, nos. 1-2, pp. 21-27.

\*DEBT / \*LAW / \*ASSYRIAN LANGUAGE / LETTERS (Epistles) / \*ASSYRIA

20. DE ROOIJ, J. 1986. De toekomst in het Nederlands II. Over het uitdrukken van de toekomstige tijd in standaardtaal en dialect. *Taal en Tongval*, vol. 38, nos. 1-2, pp. 5-32.

DIALECTS / \*DUTCH LANGUAGE / STANDARD LANGUAGES / \*FLEMISH LANGUAGE / \*BELGIUM / AREAL LINGUISTICS / LINGUISTIC ATLASES / QUESTIONNAIRES / MEANING / CHANGE / \*FRENCH LANGUAGE / FUTURE TENSE

21. DEVELIN, R. 1985. Bouleutic ostracism again. *Antichthon*, vol. 19, pp. 7-15.

\*VATICANUS GRAECUS / \*ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE / \*BOULE / \*OSTRACISM / \*LAW / \*DEMOS / \*ANCIENT GREECE / HISTORY / \*POLITICAL SYSTEMS

22. DE VRIENDT, S. en VAN DE CRAEN, P. 1986. Over plaatsingsmogelijkheden van schakeringspartikels. *Interdisciplinair Tijdschrift voor Taal- & Tekstwetenschap*, vol. 6, no. 2, pp. 101-116.

\*DUTCH LANGUAGE / PARTICLES / SENTENCES / NOUNS / ADVERBS / PREPOSITIONS / \*POSITION / WORD ORDER / MEANING / MOOD / SYNTAX

23. DIK, S.C. 1986. Lexicon en syntaxis in functionele grammatica. *Glott: Tijdschrift voor Taalwetenschap*, vol. 9, nos. 1-2, pp. 15-27.

\*FUNCTIONAL GRAMMAR / LEXICONS / PREDICATES / \*DUTCH LANGUAGE /  
LEXICAL ITEMS / IDIOMS / DEFINITIONS / LEXEMES

24. **DOGIL, G.** 1986. Der Pivot Parser: eine Hypothese zur Sprachwahrnehmung. *Linguistische Berichte*, no. 106, pp. 456-469.

PARSING / LANGUAGE ACQUISITION / \*SPEECH RECOGNITION / SYLLABLES  
/ PHONOLOGY / SYLLABIC PEAK / HYPOTHESES / \*CHILDREN

25. **DONBAZ, V.** 1984. A Kültepe text from the museum at Adana (237 B). *Archiv für Orientforschung: internationale Zeitschrift für die Wissenschaft vom Vorderen Orient*, vol. 31, pp. 15-24.

\*ASSYRIAN LANGUAGE / TEXTS / \*KULTEPE / CUNEIFORM SCRIPT / \*CREDITORS / \*TRADE

26. **EVENSEN, L.S.** 1985. A note on the relationship between theory and application. *Text*, vol. 5, no. 4, pp. 269-279.

DISCOURSE ANALYSIS / LINGUISTICS / TEXTS / \*THEORIES / \*PROBLEMS  
/ APPLIED LINGUISTICS / \*INTERDISCIPLINARITY / LANGUAGE / MODELS

27. **FAGIN, A.** 1986. Hello, Da Gama. *Contrast*, vol. 16, no. 2 (62), pp. 9-21.

SHORT STORIES / \*SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE / TEXTS / ENGLISH LANGUAGE

28. **GEERAERTS, D.** 1987. Lexicografie. *SA Tydskrif vir Taalkunde*, Geleentheidsuitgawe no. 4, pp. 16-21.

LEXICOGRAPHY / DICTIONARIES / \*DUTCH LANGUAGE / HISTORY / SPELL-

ING / PRONUNCIATION / \*TECHNICAL DICTIONARIES / LANGUAGE VARIATION / \*RHYMING DICTIONARIES / \*CROSSWORD DICTIONARIES / \*PICTURE DICTIONARIES / ETYMOLOGY / \*MONOLINGUAL DICTIONARIES

29. GILFILLAN, F.R. 1985. 'n Afrika-kode by Wilma Stockenström. *Ensovoort: 'n Tydskrif vir Poësie*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 4-6.

\*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / POETRY / \*STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. Die eland / CRITICISM / \*AFRICA / \*BUSHMEN / \*ROCK PAINTINGS / \*STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. Van vergetelheid en van glans / CRITICISM

30. GINGISS, P. 1986. Indirect threats. *Word: Journal of the International Linguistic Association*, vol. 37, no. 3, pp. 153-158.

DISCOURSE ANALYSIS / SPEECH ACTS / \*THREATS / \*THEORIES / \*INDIRECT THREATS / CAUSE AND EFFECT / \*LAW

31. GÖTZE, L. 1985. Grammatik? - Ja! Aber welche? *Zielsprache Deutsch*, vol. 16, no. 4, pp. 11-15.

FOREIGN LANGUAGES / LANGUAGE TEACHING / GRAMMAR / RULES / MORPHOLOGY / SYNTAX / PEDAGOGICAL GRAMMAR / LANGUAGE ACQUISITION / ARTICLES / GENDER

32. GOTZMANN, W. 1985. Detektiv, Inquisitor und Don Quichotte: Bemerkungen zu Uwe Johnsons 'Jahrestagen'. *Sprache im technischen Zeitalter*, no. 95, pp. 184-195.

\*JOHNSON, UWE. Jahrestage / CRITICISM / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / NOVELS



33. **GREENE, G.** 1987. Le signe des quatre. *Magazine Littéraire*, no. 241, pp. 24-25.

\*DOYLE, ARTHUR CONAN. The sign of four / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / DETECTIVE STORIES / CRITICISM

34. **GROBBELAAR, P.W.** 1986. Die Noordweste rym en sing. *Tydskrif vir Volkskunde en Volkstaal*, vol. 42, no. 3, pp. 11-18.

\*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / \*NORTHWESTERN CAPE PROVINCE / SONGS / FOLKLORE / TEXTS

35. **GYSELING, M.** 1986. Oude namen te Antwerpen. *Naamkunde*, vol. 18, nos. 1-4, pp. 11-18.

\*PLACE NAMES / \*FLEMISH LANGUAGE / \*ANTWERP / MEANING

36. **HALL, R.A. Jnr.** 1984. Twentieth-century linguistics - whence and whither? *Lacus Forum*, vol. 11, pp. 23-32.

LINGUISTICS / REVIEWS / \*CHOMSKY, NOAM / \*DE SAUSSURE, FERDINAND / \*BOAS, FRANZ / \*BLOOMFIELD, LEONARD / SPELLING / GRAMMAR / STRUCTURAL LINGUISTICS

37. **HARENAPE, G.** 1987. To 'C' or not to 'C'. *Upstream*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 26-27.

POETRY / \*SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE / \*CAPITAL LETTERS

38. **IWEMA, K.** 1987. De wereld van een abel spel: *Vanden winter ende vanden somer* herbeschouwd. *Nieuwe Taalgids: Tijdschrift voor Neerlandici*, vol. 80, no. 1, pp. 21-27.

MORALITY PLAYS / \*VANDEN WINTER ENDE VANDEN SOMER / \*DUTCH  
LANGUAGE / CRITICISM

39. JONES, L. 1985. Reflections on a bumper year in fiction.  
*Journal of New Zealand Literature*, no. 3, pp. 17-33.

\*NEW ZEALAND LITERATURE / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / SHORT STORIES /  
NOVELS / REVIEWS

40. JONES, S. 1985. William Hogarth and Kitao Masonabu:  
reading eighteenth-century pictorial narratives. *Yearbook of  
Comparative and General Literature*, no. 34, pp. 37-73.

\*HOGARTH, WILLIAM. Marriage a-la-mode / \*MASANOBU, KITAO. Edo-  
umare uwaki no kabayaki / \*ILLUSTRATIONS / \*SERIAL PUBLICATION /  
\*JAPAN / \*ENGLAND / COMPARATIVE LITERATURE STUDIES / \*ART /  
SATIRE / CRITICISM

41. KERCHEVAL, J.L. 1986. New Caledonia. *Linq: Literature  
in North Queensland*, vol 14, no. 1, pp. 8-9.

POEMS / TEXTS / \*AUSTRALIAN LITERATURE / ENGLISH LANGUAGE

42. KOKOTT, H. 1983. Zu den Wächter-Tageliedern Wolframs von  
Eschenbach: Ein Schimpf bi Klage (VII, 3, 4). *Acta Germanica:  
Jahrbuch des südafrikanischen Germanistenverbandes*, vol. 16,  
pp. 25-41.

ALBAS / \*ULRICH VON LICHTENSTEIN. Frauendienst / \*WATCHMEN /  
\*WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH. Sine klawen / \*LADIES / \*KNIGHTS /  
\*GERMAN LANGUAGE / MINNESINGERS / CRITICISM

43. **KONERSMANN, R.** 1987. Lernziel Identität? Zur Arbeit mit Peter Weiss' autobiographischer Erzählung "Abschied von den Eltern" im Unterricht. *Diskussion Deutsch*, no. 93, pp. 23-40.  
 \*WEISS, PETER. ABSCHIED VON DEN ELTERN / AUTOBIOGRAPHIES / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / LANGUAGE TEACHING / WRITING / FICTION / \*PUPILS / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / IDENTIFICATION / EMOTIONS
44. **KONO, T.** 1983. Remarks on pseudo-cleft sentences in English. *Studies in English Linguistics*, vol. 11, pp. 11-27.  
 ENGLISH LANGUAGE / \*PSEUDOCLEFT SENTENCES / DELETION / ANALYSIS / \*EXTRACTION / \*NULL HYPOTHESIS / TRANSFORMATION
45. **KOPECZI, B.** 1986. Les lumières françaises et les lumières hongroises. *Revue de Littérature Comparée*, vol. 60, no. 4 (240), pp. 395-414.  
 \*FRENCH LANGUAGE / \*HUNGARIAN LANGUAGE / TRANSLATION / LITERATURE / \*CULTURE / ENLIGHTENMENT
46. **KOSSMANN, E.** 1987. Anderhalven eeuw nederlandse cultuur. *Gids*, vol. 150, nos. 2-3, pp. 104-111.  
 \*CULTURE / \*HOLLAND / \*AVERAGE / \*DE GIDS (Periodical)
47. **KRAAIJEVELD, R.A.J.** 1986. Afdalen in het innerlijk: over de romans van Oek de Jong. *Ons Erfdeel*, vol. 29, no. 4, pp. 489-498.  
 \*DUTCH LANGUAGE / NOVELS / \*DE JONG, OEK / CRITICISM / \*MESCH, EDO

48. **KRAUSE, H.** 1985. Sprachgefühl und Sprachbegabung. I. Der ratiomorphe Apparat und die Sprache. *Moderne Sprachen*, vol. 29, nos. 1-2, pp. 20-30.

\*FOREIGN LANGUAGES / \*THEORIES / GRAMMAR / WORD ORDER / VOCABULARY / MORPHOLOGY / SPELLING / PRONUNCIATION / LANGUAGE TEACHING

49. **KRAUSE, H.** 1986. Sprachgefühl und Sprachbegabung. III. Folgerungen für die Sprachlehrmethodik aus der Theorie vom Erkenntnisgewinn, wie sie Prof. R. Riedl vertritt. *Moderne Sprachen*, vol. 30, nos. 1-2, pp. 16-25.

LANGUAGE TEACHING / REDUNDANCY / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / IRREGULARITY / HYPOTHESES / DEDUCTION / INDUCTION / TESTING / LANGUAGE LEARNING / CAUSE AND EFFECT / \*RIEDL, R.

50. **KREBERNIK, M.** 1984. Ein Lautwert *s a r x* des Zeichens NE in Ebla? *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie und vorderasiatische Archäologie*, vol. 74, no. 2, pp. 168-169.

\*EBLAITE LANGUAGE / SPEECH SOUNDS / SYLLABLES

51. **KREMER, D.** 1987. Zur Situation des Portugiesischen an den deutschen Universitäten. *Neuere Sprachen*, vol. 86, no. 1, pp. 14-36.

\*PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE / \*GERMANY / \*UNIVERSITIES / LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / QUESTIONNAIRES / \*HIGH SCHOOLS

52. **KUZIKOV, V.** 1987. Die Namen der Hauptstadt und der Bezirksstädte der DDR aus soziolinguistischer Sicht. *Deutsch*

*als Fremdsprache: Zeitschrift für Theorie und Praxis des Deutsch-  
unterrichts für Ausländer*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 7-8.

FOREIGN LANGUAGES / LANGUAGE TEACHING / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / \*EAST  
GERMANY / \*PLACE NAMES / SOCIOLINGUISTICS / \*TOWNS / GENDER /  
INFORMATION CONTENT / ETYMOLOGY

53. LEVI, J.N. 1985. Rights of language minorities in the  
United States: an introductory bibliography. *Language Planning  
Newsletter*, vol. 11, no. 3, pp. 2-5.

MINORITY LANGUAGES / \*UNITED STATES / BIBLIOGRAPHIES / \*LEGAL  
RIGHTS / \*DEAFNESS / \*PUBLIC EDUCATION / LANGUAGE PLANNING /  
BILINGUALISM / INTERPRETING

54. LEYS, O. Indefiniete eïennamen. *Naamkunde*, vol. 17,  
nos. 1-4, pp. 208-213.

NAMES / INDEFINITE DETERMINERS / \*DUTCH LANGUAGE

55. LOUW, J.A. 1987. Auxiliary verb in Xhosa. *South African  
Journal of African Languages*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 7-15.

\*XHOSA LANGUAGE / AUXILIARY VERBS / VERBS / MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS  
/ MORPHOLOGY / RANK SHIFT / ASPECT

56. LOUW, S. 1985. Intertekstualiteit by Bartho Smit. *Com-  
munique*, vol. 10, no. 1, pp. 13-22.

\*SMIT, BARTHO / PLAYS / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / \*INTERTEXTUALITY /  
\*SMIT, BARTHO. Die verminktes / \*SMIT, BARTHO. Don Juan onder die  
boere / \*SMIT, BARTHO. Putsonderwater / \*SMIT, BARTHO. Christine

/ \*SMIT, BARTHO. Bacchus in die Boland / \*SMIT, BARTHO. Die Keiser / CRITICISM

57. LOVE, N. 1986. The linguistic thought of J.R. Firth. *Spil*, no. 15, pp. 31-56.

LINGUISTICS / \*FIRTH, J.R. / SPEECH ACTS / DESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS / MEANING / PHONOLOGY / \*THEORIES

58. MALAN, C. 1983. Goeie gewilde prosa - 'n terreinbeskrywing. *Tydskrif vir Letterkunde*, nuwe reeks, vol. 21, no. 3, pp. 14-25.

\*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / CRITICISM / PROSE / NOVELS / DISCOURSE / STORIES / LITERATURE / \*ESCAPIST LITERATURE / \*TRIVIAL LITERATURE / \*MIDDLEBROW NOVELS

59. MANZALAOU, M. 1986. Swooning lovers: a theme in Arab and European romance. *Comparative Criticism: an Annual Journal*, vol. 8, pp. 71-90.

\*LOVERS / HEROES / \*FAINTING / COURTLY LOVE / \*ARABIC LANGUAGE / \*ARABIAN NIGHTS. Tale of Ali Ibn Bakkar / \*CHAUCER, GEOFFREY. Troilus and Crisyde / \*ROMANCES / \*ENGLISH LANGUAGE

60. MATHIOT, M. 1983. Language in context. *Lacus Forum*, vol. 10, pp. 21-29.

LANGUAGE / CONTEXT / NATURAL LANGUAGES / \*THEORIES / PROSODY / MEANING / \*SOCIAL INTERACTION / SOCIOLINGUISTICS / \*BEHAVIOUR / SYSTEMS / LINGUISTICS

61. **MCSHANE, J. and DOCKRELL, J.** 1983. Lexical and grammatical development. *Language Production*, vol. 2, pp. 51-99.

LANGUAGE ACQUISITION / GRAMMAR / LANGUAGE LEARNING / NAMES / VOCABULARY / SYNTAX / \*CHILDREN / MEANING

62. **MICHEL, W.** 1981. De amore divino in arte emblematica saeculi septimi decimi demonstrato. *Vox Latina*, vol. 17, no. 66, pp. 350-361.

\*DIVINE LOVE / \*ART / \*EMBLEMS / SYMBOLISM / \*CHRISTIANITY / \*SECULAR ART

63. **MICHEL, W.** 1983. Goethes Erfahrung frühindustrieller Fremde: Initiation und Fiktion im Kontext der zeitgenössischen Reiseliteratur. *Jahrbuch Deutsch als Fremdsprache*, vol. 9, pp. 17-43.

\*GOETHE, JOHANN WOLFGANG VON / \*TRAVEL / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / FICTION / \*ECONOMICS / \*INDUSTRY / DESCRIPTION

64. **MILTON, M.P.** 1983. The second message to Xerxes and Themistocles' views on strategy. *Proceedings of the African Classical Associations*, vol. 17, pp. 22-52.

\*THEMISTOCLES / \*ANCIENT GREECE / HISTORY / \*XERXES I / MESSAGES / \*STRATEGY

65. **MITCHELL, R.** 1985. Process research in second-language classrooms. *Language Teaching*, vol. 18, no. 4, pp. 330-352.

LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / REVIEWS / \*RESEARCH /

TESTING / ANALYSIS / \*CLASSROOM PROCESSES / \*TEACHER TALK/  
COMMUNICATION

66. **MOSOMOTHANE, T.D.M.** 1985. Comparative constructions with [ho e na le] in Sesotho. *Stellenbosch Studies in Afrikatale*, no. 1, pp. 39-67.

\*SESOTHO LANGUAGE / SENTENCES / COPULAS / PREPOSITIONS / PRONOUNS / DEGREE / ADJECTIVES / MODIFIERS / NOUNS / RELATIVE ADVERBS / NOUN PHRASES

67. **MPHAHLELE, E.** 1986. Remarks on *Chirundu. English in Africa*, vol. 13, no. 2, pp. 21-37.

\*MPHAHLELE, ES'KIA. Chirundu / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / \*SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE / \*BLACK LITERATURE / \*INTERVIEWS / NOVELS

68. **NAGUIB, N.** 1985. Zur Geschichte der Übersetzung aus den europäischen Sprachen ins Arabische. *Sprache im technischen Zeitalter*, no. 96, pp. 261-266.

TRANSLATION / \*ARABIC LANGUAGE / \*FRENCH LANGUAGE / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / LITERATURE / HISTORICAL NOVELS / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE

69. **NARTEN, J.** 1984. Optativ und Tempusstamm im Altavestischen. *Sprache: Zeitschrift für Sprachwissenschaft*, vol. 30, no. 2, pp. 96-108.

MOOD / \*ANCIENT AVESTAN LANGUAGE / VERBS / TEMPORAL CLAUSES / \*AORIST

70. **NICOL, M.** 1983. The national gardens, Athens. *New Coin*



*Poetry*, vol. 19, no. 2, p. 6.

\*SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE / POEMS / TEXTS

71. **NOLLENDORFS, V.** 1986. Towards guidelines for German studies: a progress report. *Monatshefte*, vol. 78, no. 3, pp. 285-296.

\*GERMAN LANGUAGE / LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / \*UNIVERSITIES / \*UNITED STATES / LANGUAGE ACQUISITION / \*INTERDISCIPLINARITY / \*CURRICULA / STANDARDISATION

72. **OEHLER-KLEIN, S.** 1985. "Der Sinn des Tiegens": zur Rezeption der Hirn- und Schädellehre Franz Josef Galls im Werk Georg Büchners. *Georg Büchner Jahrbuch*, vol. 5, pp. 18-51.

\*BUCHNER, GEORG. Dantons Tod / \*GALL, FRANZ JOSEF / \*PHRENOLOGY / \*KILLER INSTINCT / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / PLAYS / \*BRAIN / \*NERVOUS SYSTEM / \*ANATOMY / \*BUCHNER, GEORG. Woyzeck / \*MENTAL DISORDERS

73. **OFFERMANS, C.** 1986. Amor fati: fragmenten over Paul Klee. *Raster*, no. 39, pp. 27-53.

\*KLEE, PAUL / \*DRAWINGS / \*GERMANY / \*MUSIC / CRITICISM

74. **PITSCH, H.** 1984. Pyramiden und Sonnenbahn. *Welt des Orients*, vol. 15, pp. 19-50.

\*PYRAMIDS / \*ANCIENT EGYPT / HISTORY / \*MEASUREMENT / \*SUN / \*MOTION

75. **PLUDDemann, U.** 1986. Zur Diskussion gestellt: die neuen

DaF-Lehrpläne im Matrikexamen. Teil II: Vorschläge für den zweiten Prüfungsbogen - Literatur (Abteilung A, B und C). *Deutschunterricht in Südafrika*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 25-32.

\*CURRICULA / LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE / LITERATURE / TEXTS / MEANING / POETRY / PROSE

76. **POETHKE, G.** 1985. Pagarchen im Papyrus Berolinensis 2966. *Archiv für Papyrusforschung und verwandte Gebiete*, vol. 31, pp. 13-15.

\*PAPYRUS BEROLINENSIS 2966 / PALAEOGRAPHY / \*ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE / \*PAGARCHS / \*YAHYA IBN HILAL / \*NAGID IBN MUSLIM / \*ABD ALLAH IBN ABD AR-RAHMAN

77. **REICH, B.** 1986. Fortune's fools. *Plays in Process*, vol. 7, no. 8, pp. 1-82.

ENGLISH LANGUAGE / PLAYS / TEXTS / \*AMERICAN LITERATURE

78. **ROGGEMAN, W.M.** 1986. Gesprek met Luuk Gruwez. *Vlaamse Gids*, vol. 70, no. 6, pp. 8-17.

CRITICISM / \*FLEMISH LANGUAGE / POETRY / \*INTERVIEWS / \*GRUWEZ, LUUK

79. **ROUX, J.C.** 1984. 'n Akoestiese en perseptiewe analiese van die vokale van Sotho. *Stellenbosch Studies in Afrikatale*, no. 2, pp. 53-130.

\*SESOTHO LANGUAGE / VOWELS / ACOUSTIC PHONETICS / ANALYSIS / \*QUALITY / \*PERCEPTION

80. RUTHERFORD, A. 1986. Olive Senior: interview. *Kunapi-pi*, vol. 8, no. 2, pp. 11-20.

\*SENIOR, OLIVE / \*INTERVIEWS / \*JAMAICAN LITERATURE / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / AUTOBIOGRAPHIES / SHORT STORIES / \*FEMINISM / POEMS

81. SCHILDBERG, B. 1985. Fernsehrichten in Ost und West als Unterrichtsgegenstand auf der gymnasialen Oberstufe. *Germanistische Linguistik*, nos. 82-83, pp. 15-34.

\*GERMAN LANGUAGE / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / \*TELEVISION NEWS / LANGUAGE TEACHING / \*EAST GERMANY / \*WEST GERMANY / QUESTIONNAIRES / \*POLITICS

82. SMITH, M.E. 1986. Reisiger en vader. *Standpunte*, vol. 39, no. 4 (184), pp. 14-27.

\*BRINK, ANDRE P. Die muur van die pes / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / NOVELS / CRITICISM / \*TRAVEL

84. STEYN, J.C. 1985. Algemene aspekte van taalnormering. *Spil Plus*, no. 10, pp. 13-69.

NORMS / LANGUAGE / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / PRONUNCIATION / PRESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS / CHANGE / RULES / \*VALUES / GRAMMAR / SENTENCES / STANDARDISATION / \*PURISM / AESTHETICS / \*LANGUAGE VARIATION / \*SOCIAL INTERACTION / LANGUAGE PLANNING / SOCIOLINGUISTICS

83. STREECK, J. 1983. Social order in child communication: a study in microethnography. *Pragmatics & Beyond*, vol. 4, no.

8, pp. 1-130.

COMMUNICATION / \*CHILDREN / \*SOCIAL INTERACTION / SOCIOLINGUISTICS / \*PEER GROUPS / \*NEGOTIATION / \*FRAMES / SPEECH ACTS / \*SOCIAL GROUPS / \*BEHAVIOUR

85. TAYLOR, J.R. 1987. Scarborough's prodigy. *Plays and Players*, no. 403, pp. 8-10.

\*INTERVIEWS / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / \*AYCKBOURN, ALAN / \*PLAYWRIGHTS / \*DIRECTING / THEATRE / PLAYS

86. TEMPLETON, S. and SCARBOROUGH-FRANKS, L. 1985. The spelling's the thing: knowledge of derivational morphology in orthography and phonology among older students. *Applied Psycholinguistics*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 371-390.

SPELLING / MORPHOLOGY / VOWELS / PHONOLOGY / RULES / VARIANTS / \*CHILDREN / \*HIGH SCHOOLS / TESTING / LAX VOWELS / TENSE VOWELS / PRONUNCIATION / SOUND CHANGE / ENGLISH LANGUAGE

87. THIEME, J. 1986. Christopher J. Koch: interview. *Kunapipi*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 19-27.

\*KOCH, CHRISTOPHER J. / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / NOVELS / \*INTERVIEWS / \*AUSTRALIAN LITERATURE

88. VAN BAAREN, T.P. 1985. Jeroen Bosch: de interpretatie van zijn werk. *TNA: Tijdschrift voor Nederlands en Afrikaans*, vol. 3, no. 3, pp. 21-31.

\*BOSCH, HIERONYMUS / SYMBOLISM / MIDDLE AGES / ALLEGORY / \*PAINTINGS / CRITICISM / \*FLANDERS

89. **VAN COLLER, H.P.** 1985. Etienne Leroux. *Dolos: Studenteblad van die Departement Afr.-Ned. UOVS*, vol. 8, no. 3, pp. 4-6.

\*LEROUX, ETIENNE / BIOGRAPHIES / NOVELS / \*MYTHOLOGY / SATIRE / CYCLE / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / CRITICISM

90. **VANDELOISE, C.** 1985. Les prépositions SUR/SOUS et la relation PORTEUR/PORTE. *Leuvense Bijdragen*, vol. 74, no. 4, pp. 457-481.

\*FRENCH LANGUAGE / PREPOSITIONS / \*SPACE

91. **VAN DEN BERGH, H.** 1987. Tergende tegenstrijdigheden? De harde kern van Multaltuli's 'Ideeën'. *Literatuur: Tijdschrift over Nederlandse Letterkunde*, vol. 4, no. 3, pp. 124-132.

\*DUTCH LANGUAGE / \*MULTALTULI. Ideeën / CRITICISM / PROBLEM NOVELS / \*COLONIAL RULE / \*JAVA / \*CHRISTIANITY / \*POLITICS / PROSE / APHORISMS / \*CONTRADICTION / \*HOLLAND

92. **VAN DER ELST, G.** 1982. Verbsemantik: zur Theorie und Praxis einer Analyse auf Grund von semantischen und syntaktischen Gebrauchsregeln, dargestellt am Beispiel der Aufforderungsverben des Deutschen. *Zeitschrift für Dialektologie und Linguistik. Beihefte*, no. 41, pp. 1-222.

VERBS / SEMANTICS / SYNTAX / SEMANTIC ANALYSIS / \*THEORIES / \*VALENCY / PREDICATES / RULES / \*GERMAN LANGUAGE

93. **VICKERS, M.** 1986. Persèpolis, Athènes et Sybaris: ques-

tions de monnayage et de chronologie. *Revue des Etudes Grecques*, vol. 94, nos. 472-474, pp. 239-270.

\*COINS / \*ANCIENT GREECE / \*NUMISMATICS / \*PERSEPOLIS / \*ATHENS / \*SYBARIS / \*GOLD / \*SILVER / \*ART

94. VOSS, A.E. 1986. The 'right poet' in *Astrophil and Stella*. *Unisa English Studies*, vol 24, no. 2, pp. 7-10.

\*SIDNEY, PHILIP. *Astrophil and Stella* / ENGLISH LANGUAGE / POEMS / CRITICISM / \*SIDNEY, PHILIP. The apologie

95. WEIDEMAN, G. 1983. Leroux se boereverneukery - enkele gedagtes oor *Onse Hymie* as parodie. *Tydskrif vir Letterkunde*, nuwe reeks, vol. 21, no. 2, pp. 55-66.

\*LEROUX, ETIENNE. *Onse Hymie* / CRITICISM / \*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE / NOVELS / PARODY

96. WEILER, A.J.M. 1987. Herders en kudden in griekse inscripties. *Lampas: Tijdschrift voor Nederlandse Classici*, vol. 20, no. 1, pp. 16-22.

\*ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE / \*HERDSMEN / \*FLOCKS / \*INSCRIPTIONS / EPIGRAPHY / TEXTS / \*GRAZING / \*LAW

97. WEIMAR, K. 1986. Gibt es eine literaturwissenschaftliche Hermeneutik? *Sprache und Literatur in Wissenschaft und Unterricht*, vol 17, no. 1 (57), pp. 11-19.

\*HERMENEUTICS / \*LITERARY STUDIES / TEXTS / DESCRIPTION / POETRY / \*COMPREHENSION

98. **WESSELING, L.** 1987. Louis Ferron en de historische roman. *Forum der Letteren*, vol. 28, no. 1, pp. 24-34.

\*FERRON, LOUIS. Turkenvespers / HISTORICAL NOVELS / CRITICISM /  
\*DUTCH LANGUAGE

99. **YALDEN, J.** 1986. An interactive approach to syllabus design: the Frameworks project. *ELT Documents*, vol. 124, pp. 25-38.

\*CURRICULUM DESIGN / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / LANGUAGE TEACHING /  
COMMUNICATION / PEDAGOGICAL GRAMMAR / TARGET LANGUAGES

100. **ZÖFGEN, E.** 1982. Verbwörterbücher und Verbvalenz im Französischunterricht. *Linguistik und Didaktik*, vol. 13, nos. 49-50, pp. 18-61.

LANGUAGE TEACHING / FOREIGN LANGUAGES / \*FRENCH LANGUAGE /  
DICTIONARIES / VERBS / \*VALENCY / LANGUAGE LEARNING /  
BILINGUALISM / DEFINITIONS

APPENDIX 6 OLD AND NEW DESCRIPTORS USED IN THE INDEXING TEST

NO	THESAURUS TERMS	NO OF TIMES USED	NEW TERMS ADDED TO THESAURUS	NO OF TIMES USED
1	ACOUSTIC PHONETICS	1	1ABD ALLAH IBN AR-RAHMAN	1
2	ADJECTIVES	2	1ADVANCED TONGUE ROOT FEATURES	1
3	ADVERBS	1	1AFRICA	1
4	AESTHETICS	1	1AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE	10
5	ALBAS	1	1AMERICAN LITERATURE	1
6	ALLEGORY	1	1ANATOMY	1
7	ANALYSIS	4	1ANCIENT AVESTAN LANGUAGE	1
8	APHORISMS	1	1ANCIENT EGYPT	1
9	APOLOGES	2	1ANCIENT GREECE	3
10	APPLIED LINGUISTICS	1	1ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE	4
11	ARABIC SCRIPT	1	1ANCIENT HEBREW LANGUAGE	2
12	AREAL LINGUISTICS	1	1ANTWERP	1
13	ARGUMENTATION	1	1AORIST	1
14	ARTICLES	1	1ARABIAN NIGHTS. TALE OF ALI IBN BAKKAR	1
15	ASPECT	2	1ARABIC LANGUAGE	3
16	AUTHORS	1	1ART	3
17	AUTOBIOGRAPHIES	2	1ASSYRIA	1
18	AUXILIARY VERBS	1	1ASSYRIAN LANGUAGE	2
19	BIBLE	2	1ATHENS	1
20	BIBLIOGRAPHIES	1	1AUSTRALIAN LITERATURE	2
21	BILINGUALISM	2	1AVERAGE	1
22	BIOGRAPHIES	2	1AVODANCE	1
23	CASE	1	1AYCKBOURN, ALAN	1
24	CAUSE AND EFFECT	2	1BEHAVIOUR	3
25	CHANGE	2	1BELGIUM	1
26	CLASSIFICATORY LANGUAGES	1	1BLACK LITERATURE	1
27	COMMUNICATION	5	1BLOOMFIELD, LEONARD	1
28	COMPARATIVE LITERATURE STUDIES	1	1BOAS, FRANZ	1
29	CONSONANTS	1	1BOSCH, HERONYMUS	1
30	CONTEXT	1	1BOULE	1
31	COPULAS	1	1BRAIN	1
32	COURTLY LOVE	1	1BRINK, ANDRE P. DIE MUUR VAN DIE PES	1
33	CRITICISM	21	1BUCHNER, GEORG. DANTONS TOD	1
34	CUNEIFORM SCRIPT	1	1BUCHNER, GEORG. WOYZECK	1
35	CYCLE	1	1BUSHMEN	1
36	DECONSTRUCTION	1	1CAPE PROVINCE	1
37	DEDUCTION	1	1CAPITAL LETTERS	1
38	DEFINITIONS	2	1CHAUCER, GEOFFREY. TROILUS AND CRISEYDE	1
39	DEGREE	1	1CHILDREN	4
40	DELETION	1	1CHOMSKY, NOAM	1
41	DESCRIPTION	1	1CHRISTIANITY	2
42	DESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS	1	1CIRCUSES	1
43	DETECTIVE STORIES	1	1CLASSROOM PROCESSES	1
44	DETERMINANTS	1	1COINS	1
45	DIACHRONIC LINGUISTICS	1	1COLONIAL RULE	1
46	DIALECTS	3	1COMPREHENSION	1
47	DIARIES	1	1CONTRADICTION	1
48	DICTIONARIES	2	1CREDITORS	1
49	DISCOURSE	2	1CROSSWORD DICTIONARIES	1
50	DISCOURSE ANALYSIS	2	1CULTURE	2
51	DRAMA	1	1CURRICULA	2



NO	THESAURUS TERMS	NO OF TIMES USED	NEW TERMS ADDED TO THESAURUS	NO OF TIMES USED
52	EMOTIONS	1	xCURRICULUM DESIGN	1
53	ENGLISH LANGUAGE	14	xDE GDS (Periodical)	1
54	ENLIGHTENMENT	1	xDE JONG, OEK	1
55	EPIGRAPHY	1	xDE SAUSSURE, FERDINAND	1
56	ESSAYS	1	xDEAFNESS	1
57	ETYMOLOGY	2	xDEBT	1
58	FICTION	2	xDEMOS	1
59	FOLKLORE	1	xDIRECTING	1
60	FOREIGN LANGUAGES	11	xDIVINE LOVE	1
61	FUTURE TENSE	1	xDOYLE, ARTHUR CONAN. THE SIGN OF FOUR	1
62	GENDER	2	xDRAWINGS	1
63	GENERIC TERMS	1	xDUTCH LANGUAGE	1 1
64	GRAMMAR	6	xEAST GERMANY	2
65	HEROES	1	xEBLAITE LANGUAGE	2
66	HISTORICAL NOVELS	2	xECONOMICS	1
67	HISTORY	4	xEFFECTIVENESS	1
68	HOMONYMS	2	xEMBARRASSMENT	1
69	HYPOTHESES	2	xEMBLEMS	1
70	IDENTIFICATION	1	xENGLAND	1
71	IDIOMS	1	xESCAPIST LITERATURE	1
72	INDEFINITE DETERMINERS	1	xEURYPIDES. MEDEA	1
73	INDUCTION	1	xEXPERIMENTS	1
74	INFORMATION CONTENT	1	xEXPLANATIONS	1
75	INTERPRETING	1	xEXTRACTION	1
76	IRREGULARITY	1	xEZEKIEL	1
77	LABIOVELARS	1	xFACE SAYING	1
78	LANGUAGE	3	xFAINTING	1
79	LANGUAGE ACQUISITION	4	xFEMINISM	1
80	LANGUAGE LEARNING	3	xFERRON, LOUIS. TURKENVESPERS	1
81	LANGUAGE PLANNING	2	xFIRTH, J.R.	1
82	LANGUAGE TEACHING	13	xFLANDERS	1
83	LAX VOWELS	1	xFLEMISH LANGUAGE	3
84	LETTERS (Epistles)	2	xFLOCKS	1
85	LEXEMES	1	xFRAMES	1
86	LEXICAL ITEMS	1	xFRENCH LANGUAGE	5
87	LEXICOGRAPHY	1	xFUNCTIONAL GRAMMAR	1
88	LEXICONS	1	xFUNCTIONAL LOAD	1
89	LINGUISTIC ATLASES	1	xGALL, FRANZ JOSEF	1
90	LINGUISTICS	4	xGERMAN LANGUAGE	1 4
91	LITERARY THEORIES	1	xGERMANY	2
92	LITERATURE	4	xGOETHE, JOHANN WOLFGANG VON	1
93	MARKERS	1	xGOLD	1
94	MEANING	8	xGRAZING	1
95	MESSAGES	1	xGRUNWZ, LUUK	1
96	MIDDLE AGES	1	xHEROSMEN	1
97	MINNESINGERS	1	xHERMENEUTICS	1
98	MINORITY LANGUAGES	1	xHIGH SCHOOLS	7
99	MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS	1	xHOGARTH, WILLIAM MARRIAGE A-LA-MODE	1
100	MODELS	1	xHOLLAND	2
101	MODIFIERS	1	xHUNGARIAN LANGUAGE	1
102	MOOD	3	xHUNZA DIALECT	1

NO	THESAURUS TERMS	NO OF TIMES USED	NEW TERMS ADDED TO THESAURUS	NO OF TIMES USED
103	MORALITY PLAYS	1	#ILLUSTRATIONS	1
104	MORPHOLOGY	4	#INDIRECT THREATS	1
105	MORPHOPHONOLOGY	1	#INDUSTRY	1
106	NAMES	2	#INSCRIPTIONS	1
107	NATURAL LANGUAGES	1	#INTERDISCIPLINARITY	2
108	NORMS	1	#INTERTEXTUALITY	1
109	NOUN PHRASES	2	#INTERVIEWS	6
110	NOUNS	3	#JAMAICAN LITERATURE	1
111	NOVELS	9	#JAPAN	1
112	PALAEOGRAPHY	1	#JAVA	1
113	PARODY	1	#JOHNSON, UWE. JAHRESTAGE	1
114	PARSING	1	#KAFKA, FRANZ	1
115	PARTICLES	1	#KILLER INSTINCT	1
116	PAST TENSE	1	#KLEE, PAUL	1
117	PEDAGOGICAL GRAMMAR	2	#KNIGHTS	1
118	PHILOSOPHY	1	#KOCH, CHRISTOPHER J.	1
119	PHONEMES	1	#KULTEPE	1
120	PHONEMIC STRUCTURE	1	#LADIES	1
121	PHONETICS	1	#LANGUAGE VARIATION	1
122	PHONOLOGY	4	#LAW	4
123	PLAYS	4	#LEGAL RIGHTS	1
124	POEMS	4	#LEROUX, ETIENNE	1
125	POETRY	5	#LEROUX, ETIENNE. ONSÉ HYME	1
126	PRAGMATICS	1	#LITERARY STUDIES	1
127	PREDICATES	2	#LOVERS	1
128	PREPOSITIONS	4	#MADI LANGUAGE	1
129	PRESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS	1	#MANN, THOMAS. TOD IN VENEDIG	1
130	PROBLEM NOVELS	1	#MASANOBU, KITAO. EDO-UMARE UWAKI NO KABAYAKI	1
131	PRONOUNS	1	#MEASUREMENTS	1
132	PRONUNCIATION	4	#MENTAL DISORDERS	1
133	PROSE	3	#MESCH, EDO	1
134	PROSODY	1	#MIDDLE EGYPTIAN LANGUAGE	1
135	PUNCTUATION	1	#MIDDLEBROW NOVELS	1
136	QUESTIONNAIRES	5	#MINIMAL DISTINCTIONS	1
137	RANK SHIFT	1	#MINOR PROPHETS	1
138	REDUNDANCY	1	#MONOLINGUAL DICTIONARIES	1
139	RELATIVE ADVERBS	1	#MOTION	1
140	REVIEWS	4	#MPHAMLELE, ES'KIA. CHRUNDU	1
141	RHETORIC	1	#MULTALTULL IDEEN	1
142	RULES	4	#MULTIMEDIA INSTRUCTION	1
143	SATIRE	2	#MUSIC	1
144	SEGMENTAL ANALYSIS	1	#MUSLIMS	1
145	SEMANTIC ANALYSIS	1	#MYTHOLOGY	1
146	SEMANTICS	2	#NAGID IBN MUSLIM	1
147	SENTENCES	4	#NANDE LANGUAGE	1
148	SHORT STORIES	3	#NEGOTIATION	1
149	SOCIOLINGUISTICS	4	#NERVOUS SYSTEM	1
150	SONGS	1	#NEW ZEALAND LITERATURE	1
151	SOUND CHANGE	1	#NORTHWESTERN CAPE PROVINCE	1
152	SPEECH ACTS	4	#NULL HYPOTHESIS	1
153	SPEECH SOUNDS	1	#NUMSMATICS	1

NO	THESAURUS TERMS	NO OF TIMES USED	NEW TERMS ADDED TO THESAURUS	NO OF TIMES USED
154	SPELLING	5	‡OLD TESTAMENT	2
155	STANDARD LANGUAGES	1	‡OSTRACISM	1
156	STANDARDISATION	2	‡PAGARCHS	1
157	STORIES	2	‡PAINTINGS	1
158	STRUCTURAL LINGUISTICS	1	‡PAPYRUS BEROLINENSIS 2966	1
159	STYLISTICS	1	‡PEER GROUPS	1
160	SUBJECTS	1	‡PERCEPTION	1
161	SYLLABIC PEAK	1	‡PERSEPOLIS	1
162	SYLLABLES	3	‡PHRENOLOGY	1
163	SYMBOLISM	2	‡PICTURE DICTIONARIES	1
164	SYNTAX	5	‡PLACE NAMES	2
165	SYSTEMS	1	‡PLAYWRIGHTS	1
166	TARGET LANGUAGES	1	‡POLITICAL SYSTEMS	1
167	TEMPORAL CLAUSES	1	‡POLITICS	2
168	TENSE	1	‡PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE	1
169	TENSE VOWELS	1	‡POSITION	1
170	TESTING	3	‡POSTERS	1
171	TEXTS	14	‡PREMODIFIERS	1
172	THEATRE	1	‡PROBLEMS	1
173	TONE	1	‡PROPHECIES	1
174	TRAGEDY	1	‡PROTO TANO CONGO LANGUAGE	1
175	TRANSFORMATION	1	‡PSEUDOCLEFT SENTENCES	1
176	TRANSLATION	4	‡PUBLIC EDUCATION	1
177	VARIANTS	1	‡PUPILS	3
178	VERBS	6	‡PURISH	1
179	VOCABULARY	2	‡PYRAMIDS	1
180	VOWEL HARMONY	1	‡QUALITY	1
181	VOWELS	4	‡REMEDIES	1
182	WORD ORDER	4	‡RESEARCH	1
183	WRITING	4	‡RHYMING DICTIONARIES	1
184			‡RIEDL, R.	1
185			‡ROCK PAINTINGS	1
186			‡ROMANCES	1
187			‡SECULAR ART	1
188			‡SENIOR, OLIVE	1
189			‡SERIAL PUBLICATION	1
190			‡SESOTHO LANGUAGE	2
191			‡SEX DIFFERENCES	1
192			‡SIDNEY, PHILIP. ASTROPHIL AND STELLA	1
193			‡SIDNEY, PHILIP. THE APOLOGIE	1
194			‡SILVER	1
195			‡SHIT, BARTHO	1
196			‡SHIT, BARTHO. BACCHUS IN DIE BOLAND	1
197			‡SHIT, BARTHO. CHRISTINE	1
198			‡SHIT, BARTHO. DIE KEISER	1
199			‡SHIT, BARTHO. DIE VERMINKTES	1
200			‡SHIT, BARTHO. DON JUAN ONDER DIE BOERE	1
201			‡SHIT, BARTHO. PUTSONDERWATER	1
202			‡SOCIAL GROUPS	1
203			‡SOCIAL INTERACTION	4
204			‡SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE	4

NO	THESAURUS TERMS	NO OF TIMES USED	NEW TERMS ADDED TO THESAURUS	NO OF TIMES USED
205			‡SPACE	1
206			‡SPEECH RECOGNITION	1
207			‡SPLIT ERGATIVITY	1
208			‡STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. DIE ELAND	1
209			‡STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. VAN VERGETELHEID EN VAN GLANS	1
210			‡STORY OF AQHAT	1
211			‡STRATEGY	1
212			‡SUN	1
213			‡SYBARIS	1
214			‡TEACHER TALK	1
215			‡TECHNICAL DICTIONARIES	1
216			‡TELEVISION NEWS	1
217			‡THAI LANGUAGE	1
218			‡THEMISTOCLES	1
219			‡THEORIES	6
220			‡THREATS	1
221			‡TOWNS	1
222			‡TRADE	1
223			‡TRAVEL	1
224			‡TRIVIAL LITERATURE	1
225			‡UGARITIC LANGUAGE	1
226			‡ULRICH VON LICHTENSTEIN. FRAUENDIENST	1
227			‡UNITED STATES	2
228			‡UNIVERSITIES	2
229			‡VALENCY	2
230			‡VALUES	1
231			‡VANDEN WINTER ENDE VANDEN SOMER	1
232			‡VATICANUS GRAECUS	1
233			‡WAKHI LANGUAGE	1
234			‡WATCHMEN	1
235			‡WEISS, PETER. ABSCHIED VON DEN ELTERN	1
236			‡WEST GERMANY	1
237			‡WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH. SINE KLAWEN	1
238			‡XERXES I	1
239			‡XHOSA LANGUAGE	1
240			‡YAHYA IBN HILAL	1
241			‡ZEPHANAH	1
	TOTALS	405	TOTALS	338

APPENDIX 7

THESAURUS OF LINGUISTICS AND LITERATURE TERMS

## ABBREVIATIONS

- UF Clipped words  
Contractions  
Sandhi
- BT Word formation
- RT Acronyms
- \*ABD ALLAH IBN AR-RAHMAN

## ABERRANTS

- SN Linguistic elements deviating from the grammatical pattern typical of their class
- BT Grammar

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

- BT Ablative case  
Absolute constructions

## ABLATIVE CASE

- BT Case
- NT Ablative absolute
- RT Ablative case  
Instrumental case

## Ablaut

- USE Vowel gradations

## Abnormal vowels

- USE Neutral vowels

## ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS

- UF Absolute phrases  
Dangling participles  
Gerundial clauses  
Nominative absolutes
- BT Sentence modifiers
- NT Ablative absolute

## ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS (Cont.)

- RT Included positions
- Absolute phrases
- USE Absolute constructions

## ABSTRACT NOUNS

- BT Nouns
- RT Concrete nouns

## ABSTRACTION

- SN Considering or evaluating something in terms of general characteristics or qualities apart from specific objects and concrete realities

- BT Aesthetics

- RT Categorisation

## Absurd, Theatre of the

- USE Theatre of the absurd

## ACATALECTIC LINES

- SN Lines of poetry carrying out the full basic pattern of the poem

- BT Verse

- RT Catalectic lines

## ACCENT (Stress)

- UF Ictus

- SN Phonological feature of relatively high stress, pitch or duration

- BT Metre

- NT Weak ending

- RT Arsis

ACCENT (Stress) (Cont.)

RT Feet  
Stress

ACCENTS

SN Varieties of language  
differing from the stan-  
dard, especially in pro-  
nunciation

BT Languages

RT Elocution  
Pronunciation  
Standard languages

Accessory verbs

USE Auxiliary verbs

ACCIDENCE

SN System and study of al-  
terations in word form  
to differentiate case,  
tense, gender, number

BT Nouns

RT Case  
Gender  
Inflection  
Number  
Tense

ACCULTURATION

BT Change

RT Bilingualism  
Borrowing  
Contact  
Loan words

ACCUSATIVE CASE

BT Case

ACCUSATIVE CASE (Cont.)

RT Ablative case

ACOUSTIC PHONETICS

UF Physical phonetics

SN Study of the physical  
properties of speech  
sounds

BT Acoustics  
Phonetics

RT Auditory phonetics  
Speech sounds

ACOUSTICS

NT Acoustic phonetics  
Pitch  
Resonance  
Sounds

RT Hearing  
Listening

ACRONYMS

SN Neologisms formed with  
initial letters or syl-  
lables of successive  
words in a phrase

BT Word formation

RT Abbreviations  
Anagrams  
Coinage  
Neologisms  
Palindromes

ACROSTICS

SN Compositions in which  
first, last or other  
particular letters form  
a word or phrase

BT Word games

ACROSTICS (Cont.)

RT Mesostich  
Telestich

ACTING

BT Theatre

NT Improvisation  
Method acting  
Mimicry  
Portrayal

RT \*Directing  
Dramatic conventions

ACTION NOUNS

BT Nouns

ACTIONS

SN Planned series of relat-  
ed actions make up plots

BT Plots

RT Pace

ACTIVE VOICE

UF Common voice

BT Voice

RT Passive voice

ACTS

BT Plays

NT Scenes

RT Chorus  
Entractes

Actualisation

USE Realisation

ACUTE ACCENTS

BT Diacritic marks

RT Grave accents

Acyrologia

USE Euphemisms

ADAGES

BT Folklore

RT Aphorisms  
Axioms  
Maxims  
Mottoes  
Proverbs

ADAPTATIONS

SN Recasting of works to fit  
another medium

BT Drama  
Fiction

ADDITIVE CLAUSES

BT Clauses

RT Adjectival clauses

ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES

UF Adjective clauses

BT Clauses

RT Additive clauses



## Adjective clauses

USE Adjectival clauses

## ADJECTIVES

BT Parts of speech

NT Declensions  
Degree  
Double comparison  
Gerundives  
Inferior comparison  
Inordinated adjectives  
Proper adjectives  
Superior comparison

RT \*Premodifiers  
Qualifiers

## ADJUNCTS

SN Words or phrases extending meaning of other words or phrases but not main structural elements of sentences

BT Modifiers

RT Complements

## ADNOMIALS

BT Modifiers

## ADSTRATUM

BT Change

RT Substratum

## \*ADVANCED TONGUE ROOT FEATURES

SN Position of the root of the tongue affecting voice quality

BT Pronunciation

## \*ADVANCED TONGUE ROOT FEATURES (Cont.)

RT Vowels

## ADVENTURE STORIES

SN "What happens next?" to the exclusion of such questions as "Why?" or "How?"

BT Novels

RT Detective stories  
Mystery stories

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

SN Clauses functioning as adverbs

BT Clauses

RT Adverbs  
Causal clauses  
Temporal clauses

Adverbial conjunctions

USE Conjunctive adverbs

## ADVERBIALS

SN Structures which function as adverbs

BT Adverbs

NT Intensifiers

## ADVERBS

BT Parts of speech

NT Adverbials  
Conjunctive adverbs  
Degree  
Double comparison  
Inferior comparison

ADVERBS (Cont.)

NT Relative adverbs  
Superior comparison

ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

BT Conjunctions

AESTHETIC DISTANCE

SN Rules out personal involvement with subject matter on the part of both writer and reader

BT New criticism

RT Intentional fallacy  
Objective correlative  
Objectivity

AESTHETICS

SN Study of the emotions and the mind in relation to their sense of beauty in literature and all fine arts

BT Literature

RT \*Culture

NT Abstraction  
Emotions  
Empathy  
Fallacy  
Gestalt  
Harmony  
Identification  
Images  
Objectivity  
Philistines  
Proportion  
Subjectivity  
Sympathy  
Taste

AFFECTIVE FALLACY

SN "Error" of judging a literary work by its emotional effects upon readers

BT Fallacy

RT Catharsis  
Intentional fallacy

Affix index

USE Index

AFFIXES

BT Word formation

NT Derivational affixes  
Infixes  
Inseparables  
Pluratives  
Prefixes  
Singulatives  
Suffixes

RT Combining forms  
Inflection  
Recompositions  
Stems

AFFIXING LANGUAGES

SN Grammatical relationships expressed by adding modifying elements onto a base or root word

BT Languages

RT Agglutinative languages

AFFRICATES

SN Combinations of stops and fricatives

BT Manner of articulation  
Obstruents  
Speech sounds

AFFRICATES (Cont.)

NT Assibilants

RT Fricatives  
Stops

\*AFRICA

AFRICAN LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT American linguistics  
Amerindian linguistics

\*AFRIKAANS LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Dutch language  
\*Flemish language

Afroasiatic linguistics

USE Hamitosemitic linguistics

Age of reason

USE Enlightenment

Agglomerating languages

USE Agglutinative languages

Agglutinative index

USE Index

AGGLUTINATIVE LANGUAGES

UF Agglomerating languages

SN Grammatical relationships  
and word structure indi-  
cated by free combination  
of elements

AGGLUTINATIVE LANGUAGES  
(Cont.)

BT Languages

RT Affixing languages  
Analytic languages  
Classificatory languages  
Incorporating languages

#AGITPROP

BT Literary movements

AGRAMMATISM

SN Inability to comprehend  
or produce grammatical  
utterances

BT Speaking

RT Aphasia

AGRAPHIA

SN Inability to write due to  
a malfunction of the cen-  
tral nervous system

BT Writing

AGREEMENT

UF Concord  
Congruence  
Correspondence

SN Correspondence in form  
or grammatical category  
of two or more items  
which indicates specific  
syntactic relationship

BT Syntax

RT Government

## AIR STREAM MECHANISM

- UF Egressive air stream mechanism  
Glottalic air stream mechanism  
Ingressive air stream mechanism  
Oral air stream mechanism  
Pharyngeal air stream mechanism  
Pulmonic air stream mechanism  
Velaric air stream mechanism
- BT Organs of speech
- NT Closures  
Implosion  
Initiation  
Plosion  
Release
- RT Speech production

## ALALIA

- SN Speech defect due to abnormality or malfunction of external speech organs
- BT Speech defects
- RT Anarthria  
Aphasia

## ALBAS

- UF \*Tagelieder
- SN 1. French lyrics  
2. Farewell of lovers
- BT Poems
- RT Aubades

## ALCAICS

- SN Poems of four stanzas of four lines each, each line having four stresses
- BT Poems

## ALEXANDRINES

- SN Verse line with six iambic feet (iambic hexameters)
- BT Verse
- RT Hexameters  
Iambics

## ALEXIA

- BT Reading
- RT Dyslexia

## Algebraic linguistics

- USE Mathematical linguistics

## ALGORITHMS

- SN Strategies for finding solutions to problems, often stated in flow-chart form
- RT \*Problems

## Aliases

- USE Pseudonyms

## Alien words

- USE Loan words

## ALIENATION

SN Withdrawal or detachment  
from one's fellows or  
from society

BT Theatre of the absurd

## Alienisms

USE Loan words

## ALLEGORY

BT Figures of speech

RT Fables  
Morality plays  
Parables  
Satire  
Symbols

## ALLITERATION

UF Head rhyme

SN Repetition of an initial  
sound in two or more  
words of a phrase, line  
of poetry, or sentence

BT #Word games

RT Assonance  
Consonance  
Internal rhyme  
Onomatopoeia  
Rhyme  
Tongue twisters

## ALLOGRAPHS

SN Variants of graphemes or  
written signs

BT Graphemes

RT Allomorphs  
Allophones

## ALLOMORPHS

UF Morpheme alternants

SN Non-distinctive variants  
of morphemes

BT Morphophonology

RT Allographs  
Morphemes  
Morphs

## Allonyms

USE Pseudonyms

## ALLOPHONES

UF Allophonic variants  
Phonetic variants  
Subphonemic variants

SN Variants of phonemes

BT Speech sounds

RT Allographs  
Phonemes  
Phones

## Allophonic change

USE Phonetic sound change

## Allophonic variants

USE Allophones

## ALLOTAGMAS

SN Non-distinctive variants  
of tagmemes

BT Tagmemics

RT Tagmemes

ALLUSION

SN Casual reference to a person, event or condition presumably familiar to the reader

BT Figures of speech

RT Echo allusion

#ALPHA NOTATION

BT Notation

ALPHABETIC WRITING

BT Notation

NT Diacritic marks  
Letter

RT Alphabets  
Analphabetic notation

ALPHABETS

UF Signaries

BT Linear scripts

NT Cyrillic alphabet  
Glagolitic alphabet  
Gothic alphabet  
Greek alphabet  
Initial teaching alphabet (ITA)  
Roman alphabet  
Runes

RT Alphabetic writing  
International phonetic alphabet  
Logograms  
Notation

Alternants

USE Variants

Alternative forms

USE Variants

ALVEOLAR RIDGE

UF Alveolum  
Teeth ridge

BT Organs of speech

ALVEOLARS

UF Gingivals  
Postalveolars  
Supradentals

SN Consonants pronounced with tongue touching or in close proximity to alveolar ridge

BT Consonants

NT Apicoalveolars  
Dorsoalveolars  
Palatoalveolars

RT Nasals

Alveolum

USE Alveolar ridge

Amalgamating languages

USE Inflected languages

Amalgams

USE 1. Blends  
2. Cumuls

AMBIGUITY

UF Ambiguous

SN More than one interpretation can be assigned to it

AMBIGUITY (Cont.)

BT Style

Ambiguous

USE Ambiguity

AMBILINGUALISM

SN Equal competence in both of two languages

BT Languages

RT Bilingualism

AMBIVALENT WORDS

UF Bisemy

SN Words with two or more meanings

BT Words

AMELIORATION

UF Elevation  
Melioration

SN Semantic changes in which meaning of a word assumes favourable connotations

BT Semantic changes

RT Bias words  
Deterioration  
Pejoratives

AMELIORATIVE SUFFIXES

UF Meliorative suffixes

BT Suffixes

AMERICAN LINGUISTICS

UF Bloomfieldianism

BT Linguistics

RT African linguistics  
Amerindian linguistics

\*AMERICAN LITERATURE

RT \*United States

#American sign language

USE #Ameslan

AMERINDIAN LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT African linguistics  
American linguistics

#AMESLAN

UF #American sign language  
#ASL

BT #Sign languages

AMPHIBRACHS

SN Metrical feet consisting of three syllables, the second accented, the first and third unaccented

BT Feet

Amphigory

USE Nonsense verse

## AMPHIMACERS

SN Metrical feet of three syllables, the first and the last accented, the second unaccented

BT Feet

## Amplificatives

USE Augmentatives

## AMPLITUDE

BT Sound waves

RT Frequency  
Threshold of hearing  
Threshold of pain  
Volume

## ANACHRONISMS

UF Prochronisms

SN Errors in chronology

BT History

## ANACOLUTHON

UF Anantopodoton  
Anapodoton

SN Beginning a sentence in one way and continuing or ending it in another

BT Figures of speech

RT Aposiopesis

## ANAGRAMS

BT Word formation  
Word games

RT Acronyms  
Palindromes

## Analogues

USE Equivalentents

## ANALOGY

SN Partial similarity of features on which a comparison may be based

BT Logic  
Style

RT Folk etymology  
Metaphors  
Similes

## ANALPHABETIC NOTATION

BT Notation

RT Alphabetic writing  
Diacritic marks  
Phonetic transcriptions

## ANALYSIS

SN #Total procedures used to describe a semiotic subject

BT Criticism

NT Linguistic analysis

RT Explication  
Scansion

## ANALYTIC LANGUAGES

SN Show syntactic relationships by function words and word order

BT Languages

RT Agglutinative languages  
Isolating languages  
Synthetic languages



Anantopodoton

USE Anacoluthon

Anapaests

USE Anapests

ANAPESTS

UF Anapaests

SN Trisyllabic metrical feet of two unstressed syllables followed by a stressed syllable

BT Feet

ANAPHORA

UF Anaphoric references  
Back references

SN 1. Repetition of initial sounds, words, syntactic structures in successive verses or sentences for stylistic effect  
2. Reference back to antecedent by repetition or grammatical substitution

BT Pronouns

RT Deictic words  
Deixis  
Epiphora

Anaphoric references

USE Anaphora

Anapodoton

USE Anacoluthon

ANAPTYXIS

SN Insertion of a short vowel into a word between two or more consonants to simplify syllabic structure

BT Syllabification

RT Epenthesis  
Epenthetics

ANARTHRIA

SN Inability to articulate speech sounds due to brain lesions or damage to nervous system

BT Speech defects

RT Alalia  
Aphasia

Anastrophe

USE Metathesis

\*ANATOMY

ANCESTOR LANGUAGES

UF Parent languages

BT Languages

RT Family of languages  
Glottochronology

\*ANCIENT AVESTAN LANGUAGE

BT Languages

\*ANCIENT EGYPT

RT \*Middle Egyptian language  
\*Pyramids

\*ANCIENT GREECE

- NT \*Athens  
\*Persepolis  
\*Sybaris
- RT \*Ancient Greek language  
\*Ostracism

\*ANCIENT GREEK LANGUAGE

- BT Languages
- RT \*Ancient Greece

\*ANCIENT HEBREW LANGUAGE

- BT Languages

ANECDOTES

- BT Genre
- RT Humour

ANGLICISMS

- UF Briticisms
- SN The English language occurring in or borrowed by another language
- BT English language

ANGLO SAXON

- BT English language
- RT Old English

ANGST

- BT Existentialism  
Expressionism  
Theatre of the absurd

ANIMATES

- BT Nouns
- RT Gender

Annominations

- USE Puns

ANOMIA

- SN Inability to remember or recognise names
- BT Onomastics

ANONYMITY

- BT Authorship

Anthropolinguistics

- USE Anthropological linguistics

ANTHROPOLOGICAL LINGUISTICS

- UF Anthropolinguistics  
Linguistic anthropology
- BT Linguistics
- NT Ethnolinguistics
- RT Culture and language  
Sociolinguistics

ANTHROPOMORPHISM

- SN Ascribing human form or characteristics to animals or inanimate objects
- BT Fables
- RT Pathetic fallacy  
Personification

## ANTHROPONYMY

SN Study of personal names

BT Onomastics

## ANTIBACCHIUS

SN Trisyllabic feet in which the accent falls on the first two syllables

BT Feet

RT Bacchic feet

## ANTICIPATION

SN Sound change by speech organs anticipating and preparing position necessary for production of following sound

BT Organs of speech

RT Glides

Anticipatory assimilation

USE Assimilation

Anticipatory dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

## ANTICLIMAX

SN Sudden and unexpected drop from a dignified or important idea or situation to a trivial one

BT Plots

RT Bathos  
Climax

## ANTIGRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

BT Grammar

## ANTIHEROES

BT Characterisation

RT Foils  
Heroes  
Villains

Antimentalism

USE Mechanistic linguistics

## ANTITHESIS

SN Contrary ideas expressed in a balanced sentence

BT Figures of speech

RT Chiasmus  
Oxymorons

## ANTONOMASIA

SN Use of an adjective for a proper noun

BT Proper nouns

RT Appellative names

## ANTONYMS

UF Converse terms

BT Semantic pairs

RT Complementarity  
Synonyms

## \*ANTWERP

BT \*Belgium  
\*Flanders

\*AORIST

SN In some inflected languages, form of verb denoting tense or aspect referring to the past but without limitations as to whether action is completed or continued

BT Tense

RT Aspect  
Past tense

APEX

BT Diacritic marks

Aphaeresis

USE Aphesis

APHASIA

UF Dysphasia

BT Speech defects

RT Agrammatism  
Alalia  
Anarthria

Apheresis

USE Aphesis

APHESIS

UF Aphaeresis  
Apheresis  
Ellipsis  
Prosiopesis

SN Omission of one or more sounds or words from beginning of an utterance

BT Pronunciation

APHESIS (Cont.)

RT Apocope

APHORISMS

UF Apothegms  
Epigrams

BT Folklore

RT Adages  
Axioms  
Maxims  
Mottoes  
Proverbs

APHRASIA

SN Inability to produce or understand grammatical utterances

BT Speech defects

APICAL ARTICULATION

BT Articulation

APICOALVEOLARS

SN Consonants pronounced by the tip of the tongue touching or approaching the alveolar ridge

BT Alveolars  
Liquids

APICODENTALS

SN Consonants articulated with tip of tongue touching or approaching upper teeth

BT Dentals

Apocopation

USE Apocope

#### APOCOPE

UF Apocopation  
Ellipsis

SN Omission of one or more  
sounds or letters from  
the end of a word

BT Pronunciation

RT Aphesis

#### APOCRYPHA

SN Any writing of unknown  
or uncertain authorship;  
of doubtful authenticity  
or spurious

BT Genre

Apodosis

USE Consequence clauses

#### APOLOGIES

BT Genre

Apologues

USE Parables

Apophony

USE Vowel gradations

#### APOSIOPESIS

SN Breaking off in the  
middle of a statement

BT Sentences

#### APOSIOPESIS (Cont.)

RT Anacoluthon

#### APOSTROPHES

BT Diacritic marks

Apothegms

USE Aphorisms

#### APPELLATIVE NAMES

BT Nouns

RT Antonomasia  
Common nouns

#### APPLIED LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

NT Pedagogical linguistics

RT General linguistics

#### APPROXIMATE RHYME

UF Half rhyme  
Imperfect rhyme  
Near rhyme  
Off rhyme  
Slant rhyme  
Vowel rhyme

BT Rhyme

RT Eye rhyme

\*ARABIAN NIGHTS. Tale of Ali  
Ibn Bakkar

#### \*ARABIC LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT Arabic script

ARABIC SCRIPT

BT Writing systems

RT \*Arabic language

#ARBITRARINESS

SN The fact that the connection between the meaning an utterance conveys and the phonic/graphic substance through which it is realised, is not fixed

BT Form

ARCHAEOGRAPHY

UF Archeography

BT Writing

RT Palaeography  
Palimpsests

ARCHAISMS

UF Atavisms  
Obsolete diction  
Revival forms

BT Style

RT Fixations

Archeography

USE Archaeography

ARCHETYPES

BT Myths

RT Imagery

#ARCHIPHONEMES

BT Phonemes

Areal classification

USE Geographical classification

AREAL GROUP

UF Areal types

SN Number of languages with features in common due to geographical proximity

BT Languages

AREAL LINGUISTICS

UF Linguistic geography

BT Linguistics

RT Geographical classification

Areal types

USE Areal group

AREAS

UF Focal areas  
Graded areas  
Isolated areas  
Lateral areas  
Linguistic areas  
Marginal areas  
Peripheral areas  
Relic areas  
Remote areas  
Transition areas

SN In dialectology, geographical regions defined by similar typological features such as pronunciation, grammar, vocabulary

BT Dialectology

NT Convergence areas

Argot

USE Cant

ARGUMENTATION

UF Polemics

BT Manner of discourse

ARSIS

SN Part of the metrical foot that bears the stress

BT Metre

RT Accent (Stress)

\*ART

SN Processes and results of aesthetic expression

NT \*Drawings  
\*Illustrations  
\*Paintings  
\*Rock paintings  
\*Secular art

RT \*Coins  
\*Culture  
Literature  
\*Music  
Theatre

Art ballads

USE Ballads

ARTICLES

UF Definite articles  
Indefinite articles  
Nondefinite articles

BT Determiners  
Parts of speech

ARTICULACY

UF Oracy

SN Active control of the spoken language

BT Speaking

RT Fluency  
Pronunciation  
Literacy

ARTICULATION

UF Primary articulation  
Secondary articulation

BT Speaking

NT Apical articulation  
Coarticulation  
Double articulation  
Duration  
Dysarthria  
Geminates  
Manner of articulation  
Stress  
Tempo

RT Organs of speech  
Pronunciation  
Speech production  
Speech sounds

ARTICULATORY PHONETICS

UF Motor phonetics  
Physiological phonetics

BT Phonetics

ARTIFICIAL LANGUAGES

UF Constructed languages  
Universal languages

BT Languages

NT Esperanto  
Interlingua  
Novial

ARTIFICIAL LANGUAGES (Cont.)

NT Volapuk  
 RT Interlinguistics  
 Living languages  
 Natural languages

Artificial speech

USE Speech synthesis

Ascending diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

ASIDES

BT Dramatic conventions

RT Soliloquies  
 Stage whisper

#ASL

USE #Ameslan

ASPECT

UF Habitual aspect  
 Imperfective aspect  
 Inceptive aspect  
 Inchoative aspect  
 Iterative aspect  
 Momentary aspect  
 Perfect aspect  
 Perfective aspect  
 Permansive aspect  
 Progressive aspect  
 Punctual aspect  
 Verbal aspect

SN Grammatical category of  
 the verb

BT Verbs

RT \*Aorist  
 Mood  
 Tense

ASPIRATED STOPS

BT Stops

RT Aspirates

ASPIRATES

BT Speech sounds

RT Aspirated stops

ASSIBILANTS

UF Assibilates

SN Affricates articulated  
 on the teeth

BT Affricates

Assibilates

USE Assibilants

ASSIBILATION

SN Stop consonant becoming  
 a sibilant due to assimilation

BT Sound change

RT #Assimilation

ASSIMILATION

UF Anticipatory assimilation  
 Coalescent assimilation  
 Contiguous assimilation  
 Dilation  
 Distant assimilation  
 Incontiguous assimilation  
 Noncontiguous assimilation  
 Partial assimilation  
 Reciprocal assimilation  
 Regressive assimilation  
 Retrogressive assimilation  
 Total assimilation



ASSIMILATION (Cont.)

SN Process or result of two sounds becoming identical or similar, due to influence of one upon the other

BT Sound change

RT #Assibilation  
Devoicing  
Dissimilation  
Environmental conditioning

Associative etymology

USE Folk etymology

ASSONANCE

SN Repetition of the same vowel sound

BT Word games

RT Alliteration  
Consonance  
Onomatopoeia

\*ASSYRIA

RT \*Assyrian language

\*ASSYRIAN LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Assyria

ASTERISK FORMS

UF Starred forms

ASTERISK FORMS (Cont.)

SN<sup>+</sup> Words or sentences marked with an asterisk to show that they are ungrammatical or nonsense forms or theoretically reconstructed

RT Linguistics

Asymmetric consonants

USE Laterals

Atavisms

USE Archaisms

\*ATHENS

BT \*Ancient Greece

AUBADES

SN Poems about dawn

BT Poems

RT Albas

AUDIOLOGY

SN Study of functions and disturbances of hearing

BT Hearing

AUDITORY PHONETICS

UF Psychological phonetics

BT Phonetics

RT Acoustics phonetics

Aufklärung

USE Enlightenment

AUGMENTATIVES

- UF Amplificatives
- SN Forms of words made by addition of a suffix with the meaning "great" or "large"
- BT Word formation
- RT Diminutives

\*AUSTRALIAN LITERATURE

- RT \*New Zealand literature

Austronesian linguistics

- USE Malayopolynesian linguistics

AUTHORSHIP

- BT Book
- NT Anonymity  
Plagiarism

AUTOBIOGRAPHIES

- BT Biographies
- RT Diaries  
Subjectivity

Autoinstruction

- USE Programmed instruction

Automatic translation

- USE Machine translation

Autonomous sound change

- USE Sound change

Autonomous words

- USE Content words

AUXILIARIES

- SN Words with no independent function or meaning, which can only be used in combination with other words
- BT Words
- RT Auxiliary verbs  
Independent elements

Auxiliary marks

- USE Diacritic marks

Auxiliary signs

- USE Diacritic marks

AUXILIARY VERBS

- UF Accessory verbs  
Helper verbs
- SN Used in verb phrases as adjuncts to other verbs
- BT Verbs
- NT Modal auxiliary verbs
- RT Auxiliaries  
Expanded verb forms  
Full verbs

AVANT GARDE

- BT Theatre of the absurd

\*AVERAGE

- SN The middle path, the mean

\*AVOIDANCE

SN Escape

AXIOMS

BT Folklore

RT Adages  
Aphorisms  
Fables  
Maxims  
Mottoes  
Parables  
Proverbs

\*AYCKBOURN, ALAN

Babbling

USE Language acquisition

BABY TALK

UF #Caretaker language  
Hypocorisma  
Infantile speech  
#Motherese  
Nursery language

BT Language acquisition

BACCHIC FEET

UF Bacchius

SN Metric feet of one short  
syllable followed by two  
long ones

BT Feet

RT Antibacchius

Bacchius

USE Bacchic feet

BACK FORMATION

UF Inverse derivation

SN Type of word formation by  
derivation

BT Word formation

RT Derivations

Back references

USE Anaphora

BACK VOWELS

UF Broad vowels  
Dark vowels  
Deep vowels

BT Vowels

RT Front vowels

BALANCE

SN Symmetry in the phonemic,  
grammatical or semantic  
system of a language

BT Languages

Ballad stanzas

USE Ballads

BALLADES

SN French verse form of  
three stanzas having  
the same rhyme scheme,  
followed by an envoi

BT Poems

BALLADS

UF Art ballads

BALLADS (Cont.)

- UF Ballad stanzas  
Literary ballads  
Popular ballads
- SN Designed for singing or oral recitation
- BT Poems
- RT Oral transmission

BAROQUE

- BT Literary periods

Base compounds

- USE Primary compounds

Bases

- USE Stems

BASIC ENGLISH

- SN Simplified form of English with a vocabulary of only 850 words
- BT English language
- RT Esperanto

BASIC SENTENCES

- BT Sentences
- RT Clause patterns

BATHOS

- SN Descent from the lofty to the ridiculous
- BT Figures of speech
- RT Anticlimax

\*BEHAVIOUR

- SN The aggregate of observable responses of an organism to internal and external stimuli

\*BELGIUM

- NT \*Antwerp  
\*Flanders

BEST SELLERS

- BT Novels

BIAS WORDS

- SN Expressions deviating in meaning from a neutral term to imply a subjective evaluation or prejudice
- BT Meaning
- RT Amelioration  
Deterioration

BIBLE

- BT Narration
- NT \*Old Testament
- RT \*Christianity  
\*Prophecies

BIBLIOCLASM

- SN Mutilating or destroying books
- BT Book

BIBLIOGRAPHIES

- BT Book

## BIEDERMEIER

- SN Literary period marked for acceptance of status quo, restraint, narrow range of artistic endeavours
- BT Literary periods

## BILABIALS

- UF Labiolabials
- SN Both lips used in articulation of sound
- BT Labials
- RT Nasals

## BILABIODENTALS

- SN Upper lip and upper teeth touch lower lip in producing speech sound
- BT Speech sounds

## Bilateral consonants

- USE Laterals

## BILDUNGSROMANE

- UF #Entwicklungsromane  
Erziehungsromane  
Künstlerromane
- SN Life and development of a major character, sometimes autobiographical
- BT Novels
- RT Subjectivity

## BILINGUALISM

- BT Languages

## BILINGUALISM (Cont.)

- RT Acculturation  
Ambilingualism  
Change  
Contact  
Diglossia  
\*Monolingual dictionaries  
Multilingualism  
Sociolinguistics

## BIOGRAPHIES

- UF Memoirs
- BT Nonfiction
- NT Autobiographies  
Diaries  
Letters (Epistles)
- RT History

## BIOLINGUISTICS

- BT Linguistics

## Bisemy

- USE Ambivalent words

## BLACK COMEDY

- SN Humour of the absurd, perverted, morbid
- BT Comedy  
Existentialism  
Theatre of the absurd

## \*BLACK LITERATURE

- SN English language works, written by authors of African extraction
- BT Literature
- RT \*South African English literature

BLANK VERSE

- SN Unrhymed iambic pentameters
- BT Poems
- RT Free verse  
Iambics  
Pentameters

#BLEEDING RULE ORDERING

- RT #Rule ordering

BLENDS

- UF Amalgams  
Portmanteau words  
Telescoped words
- BT Word formation

BLOCKED SYLLABLES

- UF Checked syllables  
Closed syllables
- SN Syllables ending in a consonant
- BT Syllables
- RT Blocked vowels  
Free syllables

BLOCKED VOWELS

- UF Checked vowels  
Closed vowels
- SN Vowels in a blocked syllable
- BT Vowels
- RT Blocked syllables  
Free vowels

#BLOCKING

- SN Non-application of a transformational rule
- BT Transformation rules

\*BLOOMFIELD, LEONARD

Bloomfieldianism

- USE American linguistics

Bluebeard compounds

- USE Compound nouns

\*BOAS, FRANZ

Body language

- USE Kinesics

Body semantics

- USE Kinesics

BOMBAST

- SN Pretentious, ranting, insincere, extravagant language

- BT Style

BOOK

- BT Literature
- NT Authorship  
Biblioclasm  
Bibliography  
Sources

- RT \*Serial publication

Book reviews

USE Reviews

Borrowed elements

USE Loan words

#### BORROWING

UF Linguistic borrowing  
Loans

SN Introduction into a lan-  
guage of elements from  
another language by con-  
tact and/or imitation

BT Change  
\*Language variation

NT Loan shifts  
Loan words

RT Acculturation  
Contact  
\*Purism

\*BOSCH, HIERONYMUS

\*BOULE

SN Legislative body in An-  
cient Greece

BT \*Political systems

RT \*Demos  
\*Law

Bound accent

USE Stress

Bound forms

USE Bound morphemes

#### BOUND MORPHEMES

UF Bound forms

BT Morphemes

RT Free morphemes

#### BOUND SENTENCES

BT Sentences

RT Free sentences

#### BOUNDARY MARKERS

SN Symbols used in a string  
to indicate boundaries  
between elements of  
string

BT Transformational genera-  
tive grammar

RT Delimitation

#### BOWDLERISATION

SN To amend, by removing or  
modifying objectionable  
passages of a novel, play  
or any piece of writing

BT Censorship  
Style

RT Euphemisms  
Obscenity

#### #BRACE NOTATION

BT Notation

Brachycatalectic lines

USE Catalectic lines

## #BRACKET NOTATION

BT Notation

Brackets

USE Punctuation

## BRAILLE

SN Writing or printing for the blind

BT Writing systems

## \*BRAIN

RT \*Nervous system

## #BRAIN LATERALISATION

SN The speech centres of 90% of all people are located in the left side of the brain; this occurs between age two and adolescence

BT Speaking

Breathy phonation

USE Register

Breathy voice

USE Register

## BREVES

BT Diacritic marks

Bright vowels

USE Front vowels

\*BRINK, ANDRE P. Die muur van die pes

Briticisms

USE Anglicisms

## BRITISH LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

## BROAD TRANSCRIPTIONS

SN Using a restricted number of symbols to reproduce a readable transcript

BT Phonetic transcriptions

RT Narrow transcriptions

Broad vowels

USE Back vowels

Bromides

USE Cliches

\*BUCHNER, GEORG. Dantons Tod

\*BUCHNER, GEORG. Woyzeck

## #BUCHNER PRIZE

BT Literary prizes

Bucolics

USE Pastorals

## BURLESQUES

UF Travesties



BURLESQUES (Cont.)

- SN Form of comic art, an imitation intended to ridicule by exaggeration
- BT Comedies
- RT Caricatures  
Farces  
Lampoons  
Parodies

\*BUSHMEN

- RT \*Rock paintings

Bywords

- USE Mottoes

CACOPHONY

- SN Combination of sounds considered to be unpleasant
- BT Sounds
- RT Discords  
Dissonance  
Euphony

Cacuminals

Use Retroflexes

CADENCE

- SN Rhythmic flow or sequence of sounds in writing and speaking
- BT Prosody
- RT Metre  
Rhythm

CAESURAS

- SN Pauses or breaks in lines of verse
- BT Metre  
Verse
- RT Hemistich

CANONIC FORMS

- SN 1. In phonology, the most usual syllable structures in a given language  
2. In morphology, the forms chosen to represent the basic forms of morphemes
- BT Morphemes  
Syllables

CANT

- UF Argot
- SN Special language spoken by criminals and gypsies, or by a particular profession or class
- BT Manner of discourse
- RT Jargon  
Slang

CANZONES

- SN Lyrical poems resembling madrigals consisting of stanzas of equal length and an envoi
- BT Poems
- RT Madrigals

\*CAPE PROVINCE

NT \*Northwestern Cape Province

\*CAPITAL LETTERS

BT Letter

CARDINAL NUMBERS

SN Simple numerals answering the question "How many?"

BT Numerals

RT Ordinal numbers

CARDINAL VOWELS

UF Primary vowels

SN Vowel sounds with defined features of articulation

BT Vowels

RT Peripheral vowels

#Caretaker language

USE Baby talk

CARETS

BT Diacritic marks

CARICATURES

SN Ludicrous distortion of a feature or features of the characteristics of a person or idea

BT Satire

RT Burlesques  
Irony

CARICATURES (Cont.)

RT Parody

CAROLINE

SN Literature and writers of the period of Charles I of England

BT Literary periods

RT Cavalier

CARTESIAN LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

CASE

SN Grammatical category of noun indicating its relationship to other words in a sentence

BT Nouns

NT Ablative case  
Accusative case  
Common case  
Dative case  
Direct case  
Genitive case  
Instrumental case  
Locative case  
Nominative case  
Objective case  
Oblique case  
Prepositional case  
\*Split ergativity  
Subjective case  
Vocative case

RT Accidence  
Declension  
Gender  
Inflection  
Number  
Tense

## CASUAL SPEECH

BT Manner of discourse

## Catachresis

USE Malapropisms

## CATALECTIC LINES

UF Brachycatalectic lines  
Catalexis

SN Incompleteness in the  
last foot at the end of  
a verse

BT Verse

RT Acatalectic lines

## Catalexis

USE Catalectic lines

## Catastasis

USE Climax

## CATASTROPHE

SN Disaster, usually of a  
final nature

BT Plots

RT Denouements  
Hubris

## Catchwords

USE Slogans

## CATEGORISATION

UF Classification

## CATEGORISATION (Cont.)

SN Grouping linguistic sym-  
bols and the section of  
human experience they re-  
present into classes

BT Language

NT Genealogical classifica-  
tion  
Geographical classifica-  
tion  
Typology  
Universals

RT Abstraction

## Catenative verbs

USE Copulas

## CATHARSIS

SN The effect of tragedy -  
the purgation or purifi-  
cation of emotions

BT Drama  
Fiction

RT Affective fallacy

## Caudas

USE Codas

## CAUSAL CLAUSES

BT Clauses

RT Adverbial clauses

## CAUSE AND EFFECT

BT Logic

RT Coincidences  
Extrapolation

## CAVALIER

SN Follower of Charles I  
in his struggles with  
parliament

BT Literary periods

RT Caroline

## CAVITY

UF Nasal cavity  
Passive cavity  
Pulmonic cavity  
Supraglottal cavity

BT Organs of speech

## CEDILLAS

BT Diacritic marks

## CELTIC LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT Gaelic languages

## CELTIC LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

## CENSORSHIP

SN Repression of material on  
moral, ethical, religi-  
ous or political grounds

BT Literature

NT Bowdlerisation  
Obscenity  
Pornography

## Central vowels

USE Neutral vowels

## Centre

USE Heads

## Centring diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

## Cerebrals

USE Retroflexes

## CHANGE

UF Language change  
Linguistic change

SN Modification and/or re-  
placement of features of  
a language within histo-  
rical period

BT Languages

NT Acculturation  
Adstratum  
Borrowing  
Contact  
Cultural overlap  
Metathesis  
Substratum

RT Bilingualism  
Drift  
Innovation

## CHARACTERISATION

BT Drama  
Fiction

NT Antiheroes  
Flat characters  
Foils  
Fools  
Heroes  
Heroines  
\*Knights  
\*Ladies  
\*Lovers  
Portrayal

CHARACTERISATION (Cont.)

NT Round characters  
 Static characters  
 Stereotypes  
 Stock characters  
 Villains  
 \*Watchmen

RT Description  
 Motivation  
 Plots

CHARACTERS

SN Graphic signs to represent words or morphemes

BT Writing systems

RT Signs

\*CHAUCER, GEOFFREY. Troilus and Criseyde

CHAUCERIAN STANZAS

UF Rhyme royal

BT Stanzas

RT Heptastich  
 Pentameters

Checked syllables

USE Blocked syllables

Checked vowels

USE Blocked vowels

CHIASMUS

SN Form of antithesis: second half of a statement balances the first half in inverted word order

BT Figures of speech

CHIASMUS (Cont.)

RT Antithesis

\*CHILDREN

RT \*Peer groups  
 \*Pupils

CHIVALRY

SN Customs and rules of medieval knighthood

BT Middle ages

RT Courtly love

\*CHOMSKY, NOAM

CHORIAMBICS

UF Choriambus

SN Metrical feet of four syllables, two short between two long

BT Feet

Choriambus

USE Choriambics

CHORUS

SN Comments on deeds of characters and interprets significance of events

BT Dramatic conventions

RT Acts  
 Epilogues

\*CHRISTIANITY

RT Bible

\*CHRISTIANITY (Cont.)

RT \*Divine love  
\*Muslims

CHRONEMES

SN Distinctive features of length in speech sounds, usually vowels

BT Duration

CHRONICLE PLAYS

SN Drama based on historical events, flourishing in Elizabethan times

BT Plays

RT Historical plays

Cinquains

USE Quintains

CIRCUMFLEXES

BT Diacritic marks

\*CIRCUSES

RT Spectacles

Class nouns

USE Unit nouns

CLASSICAL LANGUAGES

BT Languages

RT Dead languages  
Modern languages

CLASSICISM

SN Qualities of early Greek and Roman culture reflected in art and literature

BT Literary movements

RT Realism  
Romanticism

CLASSICS

SN Outstanding and enduring modern (1450 AD +) literary works

BT Genre

Classification

USE Categorisation

CLASSIFICATORY LANGUAGES

SN Types of language indicating grammatical categories and semantic classes by affixing particles onto a root

BT Languages

RT Agglutinative languages

\*Classifiers

USE 1. Determiners  
2. Determinants

\*CLASSROOM PROCESSES

SN Processes used in the classroom by those in authority

NT \*Teacher talk

CLAUSE EQUIVALENTS

- UF Isolates  
Sentence words
- SN Words or phrases functioning as clauses
- BT Clauses

CLAUSE PATTERNS

- SN Basic "blueprints" for simple clauses
- BT Clauses
- RT Basic sentences  
Sentence patterns

Clause terminals

- USE Junctures

CLAUSES

- SN Groups of words containing a subject and a verb
- BT Grammatical units
- NT Additive clauses  
Adjectival clauses  
Adverbial clauses  
Causal clauses  
Clause equivalents  
Clause patterns  
Conditional clauses  
Consequence clauses  
Coordinate clauses  
Embedded clauses  
Hypotaxis  
Interjected clauses  
Main clauses  
Nominal clauses  
Parataxis  
Prolepsis  
Relative clauses  
Relator axis clauses  
Subordinate clauses  
Temporal clauses

CLAUSES (Cont.)

- RT Groups  
Phrases  
\*Pseudocleft sentences

CLERIHEDS

- SN Light verse form
- BT Poems
- RT Limericks

CLICHES

- UF Bromides  
Hackneyed expressions  
Triteness
- SN Words, phrases, expressions or ideas which have lost their originality through overuse
- BT Style
- RT Fixations  
Platitudes  
Redundancy  
Stereotypes

CLICKS

- SN Double contacts of the tongue simultaneously released, creating suction
- BT Stops
- RT Ingressives

CLIFF HANGERS

- SN Melodramatic adventure serials
- BT Novels
- RT Melodramas

## CLIFF HANGERS (Cont.)

RT Suspense

## CLIMAX

UF Catastasis

SN Moment at which a crisis comes to a point of greatest intensity

BT Plots

RT Anticlimax  
Conflict  
Crisis

## CLINICAL LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT Psychological linguistics  
Speech pathology  
Speech therapy

## Clipped words

USE Abbreviations

## CLITICS

SN Bound forms, but not bound morphemes since they cannot occur as free forms

BT #Grammar

RT Enclitics  
Proclitics

## CLOAK AND DAGGERS

UF Cloak and swords

SN Dramatic, romantic plays or novels dealing with espionage or intrigue

## CLOAK AND DAGGERS (Cont.)

BT Novels  
Plays

Cloak and swords

USE Cloak and daggers

Close approximants

USE Fricatives

Close junctures

USE Transitions

Close transitions

USE Transitions

## CLOSE VOWELS

UF Narrow vowels

SN Pronounced with a narrow opening of the mouth and the tongue raised either to the front or back of the mouth

BT Open vowels  
Vowels

Closed class words

USE Function words

## CLOSED COUPLETS

SN Couplets, rhyming aa, that express complete, independent statements

BT Couplets

Closed syllables

USE Blocked syllables



Closed vowels

USE Blocked vowels

CLOSET DRAMAS

SN Plays, usually in verse, more appropriate for reading than for acting

BT Plays

RT Dramatic poetry

Closing diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

CLOSURES

UF Glottalic closures  
Inner closures  
Outer closures  
Pulmonic closures  
Velaric closures  
Velic closures

SN Blocking off the air stream momentarily at some point in the vocal tract

BT Air stream mechanism

RT Stops

Coalescence

USE Fusion

Coalescent assimilation

USE Assimilation

COARTICULATION

SN Simultaneous or nearly simultaneous occurrence of more than one feature of articulation

BT Articulation

Cock and bull stories

USE Tall tales

COCKNEYS

SN Natives of the East End district of London

RT Dialects  
English language

CODAS

UF Caudas

SN Final parts of syllables occurring between their peaks and the onset of the next syllable

BT Syllables

CODES

SN Prearranged sets of rules for converting messages from one sign system to another

BT Writing systems

NT Cryptograms  
Decoding  
Encoding

RT Langue and parole  
Transliteration

#### COFFEE TABLE BOOKS

- SN Large and expensive art books or similar volumes displayed as status symbols on social occasions
- BT Genre

#### COGNATE LANGUAGES

- UF Related languages
- SN Languages related genealogically to other languages
- BT Languages

#### COGNATE OBJECTS

- SN Objects etymologically or semantically related to verbs by which they are governed
- BT Objects

#### COGNATE WORDS

- UF Etymological cognates
- SN Words related in form or meaning to similar words in another language
- BT Comparative method Words
- RT Paronyms

#### COGNITIVE MEANING

- SN Comments about reality as experienced by most people
- BT Meaning
- RT Emotive meaning  
\*Perception

#### COGNITIVE REALITY

- SN Validity of semantic components
- BT Semantics
- RT Componential analysis

#### COHERENCE

- SN Holding together
- BT Logic  
Style
- RT Incoherence

#### COINAGE

- SN Process or result of deliberately creating a new word out of existing morphological elements
- BT Word formation
- RT Acronyms  
Derivation  
Mimetic words  
Neologisms  
Nonce formations  
Root creations

#### COINCIDENCES

- BT Logic
- RT Cause and effect

#### \*COINS

- BT \*Numismatics
- RT \*Art

## COLLECTIVE NOUNS

SN Nouns referring to groups of persons, things or ideas

BT Nouns

## COLLIGATIONS

SN Groups of words in sequence, considered as members of particular word classes

BT Words

RT Cooccurrence

## COLLOCATIONS

SN Two or more words, considered as individual lexical items, used in habitual association with one another

BT Words

RT Cooccurrence

## Colloquial speech

USE Manner of discourse

## COLLOQUIALISM

SN Easy, informal style of writing and speaking

BT Manner of discourse

RT Slang

## Colloquy

USE Dialogue

## \*COLONIAL RULE

BT History

## Colons

USE Punctuation

## Colouring

USE Timbre

## Combinative sound change

USE Sound change

## Combinatorial semantics

USE Semantics

## Combinatory sound change

USE Sound change

## COMBINING FORMS

SN Word elements that may appear independently but nearly always form part of compound words

BT Compound words

RT Affixes  
Stems

## COMEDIES

SN Plays of light and amusing character with a happy ending

BT Plays

RT Burlesques  
Farces

COMEDY

- SN Ludicrous, farcical or amusing event designed to produce smiles or laughter
- BT Genre
- NT Black comedy  
Humour  
Satire  
Wit
- RT Tragedy

COMMANDS

- SN Utterances which demand or forbid an action to be carried out
- BT Sentence patterns
- RT Imperative mood  
Questions  
Statements

Commas

- USE Punctuation

COMMEDIA DELL ARTE

- SN Popular Italian comedy
- BT Plays
- NT Harlequins
- RT Pantomime

COMMON CASE

- SN Uninflected form of the noun
- BT Case
- RT Genitive case

COMMON CORE

- SN Part of the language used and understood by the majority of its speakers
- BT Vocabulary
- Common gender
- USE Gender

COMMON LANGUAGE

- UF Common speech  
Ordinary language  
Popular language  
Vernacular
- SN Type of speech used by the majority of the population in everyday situations
- BT Manner of discourse

Common mood

- USE Mood

COMMON NOUNS

- SN Designating a general class of objects or concepts
- BT Nouns
- RT Appellative names  
Proper nouns

Common speech

- USE Common language

Common voice

- USE Active voice

COMMUNICATION

SN Passing of information  
from one point to another

BT Information theory

NT Communication engineering  
Density of communication  
Mass media  
Messages  
Noise

RT Language  
Macrolinguistics

COMMUNICATION ENGINEERING

UF Communication technology

SN Application of informa-  
tion theory to communica-  
tion

BT Communication

Communication technology

USE Communication engineering

Comparative degree

USE Degree

Comparative grammar

USE Comparative linguistics

COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS

UF Comparative grammar  
Comparative philology  
Comparativism  
Philology

BT Linguistics

NT Comparison of languages

RT Descriptive linguistics

COMPARATIVE LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

RT Diachronic linguistics  
Mathematical linguistics  
Typology

#COMPARATIVE LITERATURE STUDIES

BT Literature

COMPARATIVE METHOD

SN Method of establishing re-  
lationships between relat-  
ed languages by comparing  
forms of cognate words

BT Comparison of languages

NT Cognate words  
Formulae

RT Internal reconstruction  
Reconstruction

Comparative philology

USE Comparative linguistics

Comparative transcriptions

USE Phonetic transcriptions

Comparativism

USE Comparative linguistics

COMPARISON OF LANGUAGES

BT Comparative linguistics

NT Comparative method  
Contrast  
Glottochronology  
Interlinguistics

RT Diachronic linguistics  
Typology

COMPETENCE and PERFORMANCE

- UF Performance
- SN Competence is ability of all native speakers to understand and produce sentences they have never heard before; performance relates to the utterances themselves
- BT Language Speaking

COMPLAINTS

- SN , Lyric poems commenting on the misery of the speaker/poet
- BT Poems

COMPLEMENTARITY

- SN Relationship between words with mutually exclusive meanings. Not usually "gradable"
- BT Semantics
- RT Antonyms

COMPLEMENTARY DISTRIBUTION

- UF Mutual exclusiveness
- SN Two varieties of speech sounds which are mutually exclusive in a particular environment
- BT #Phonology Variants
- RT Free variants

COMPLEMENTS

- SN Parts of a verbal phrase required to make it a complete predicate in a sentence
- BT Sentence parts
- RT Adjuncts

COMPLETE VERBS

- SN 1. Intransitive verbs  
2. Verbs with forms corresponding to the forms of the majority of verbs in the same language
- BT Verbs
- RT Defective verbs

COMPLEX SENTENCES

- BT Sentences .
  - RT Compound sentences
- Complex stops
- USE Stops

Complex wave forms

- USE Sound waves

COMPLICATIONS

- SN Difficult issues or situations, appearing sometimes suddenly, changing existing plans, methods or attitudes
- BT Plots
- RT Conflicts Denouements

COMPONENTIAL ANALYSIS

- BT Linguistic analysis
- NT Semantic components
- RT Cognitive reality  
Semantics

COMPOSITE VERBS

- SN Stems and complements not adjacent but usually separated by objects of verb in sentences
- BT Verbs

Compositions

- USE Compound words

Compound nominals

- USE Compound nouns

COMPOUND NOUNS

- UF Bluebeard compounds  
Compound nominals
- SN Noun phrases made up of two or more words
- BT Nouns
- RT Compound words

COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS

- BT Pronouns

COMPOUND SENTENCES

- UF Multiple sentences  
Sentence compounds
- BT Sentences

COMPOUND SENTENCES (Cont.)

- RT Complex sentences

COMPOUND WORDS

- UF Compounds
- SN Combinations of two or more words to form new words
- BT Word formation  
Words
- NT Combining forms  
Determinants  
Determinatums  
Hybrid words  
Improper compounds  
Iterative compounds  
Juxtaposed compounds  
Linking morphemes  
Loan blends  
Phrasal compounds  
Primary compounds  
Proper compounds  
Recompositions  
Syntactic compounds  
Synthetic compounds

- RT Combining forms  
Compound nouns

Compounds

- USE Compound words

\*COMPREHENSION

- SN Ability to listen to and understand speech or to read and understand written language
- BT Linguistic skills
- RT \*Perception

Compromise languages

USE Koine

COMPUTATIONAL LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT Dependency grammar  
Information theory  
Mathematical linguistics

Conceptual theory of meaning

USE Semantics

Conceptualism

USE Semantics

Conciseness

USE Economy

Concord

USE Agreement

CONCRETE NOUNS

SN Nouns referring to a material object

BT Nouns

RT Abstract nouns

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

UF Hypothetical clauses  
Protasis

BT Clauses

RT Consequence clauses

Conditional sound change

USE Sound change

Conditioned sound change

USE Sound change

CONFLICTS

BT Plots

RT Climax  
Complications  
Crisis  
Dilemma  
Discord  
Theatre of the absurd

Congruence

USE Agreement

CONJUGATIONS

BT Verbs

RT Declensions  
Principal parts

Conjunct forms

USE Conjunctive pronouns

CONJUNCTIONS

UF Connectives  
Coupling conjunctions

BT Parts of speech

NT Adversative conjunctions  
Coordinating conjunctions  
Correlatives  
Incorporating conjunctions  
Negative conjunctions  
Relative adverbs  
Subordinating conjunctions



CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

- UF Adverbial conjunctions  
Introductory adverbs
- SN Adverbs which connect  
clauses
- BT Adverbs

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

- UF Conjunct forms
- SN Pronouns used only in  
conjunction with a verb  
in Romance languages
- BT Pronouns
- RT Disjunctive pronouns

#CONJUNCTIVE RULE ORDERING

- BT Rule ordering

Connecting consonants

- USE Linking morphemes

Connecting vowels

- USE Linking morphemes

Connectives

- USE Conjunctions

Connectors

- USE Copulas

CONNOTATION

- UF Implication  
Overtones

CONNOTATION (Cont.)

- SN Aspect of meaning of a  
word or group of words  
which is based on feel-  
ings or ideas it arouses  
in the minds of the users  
or hearers
- BT Meaning
- RT Denotation  
Emotive meaning  
Evocation  
Imagery  
Images

Connotative meaning

- USE Meaning

Consecutive interpreting

- USE Interpreting

CONSECUTIVE TRANSCRIPTIONS

- SN Rendering of a consecu-  
tive text rather than in-  
dividual words
- BT Phonetic transcriptions

CONSEQUENCE CLAUSES

- UF Apodosis
- BT Clauses
- RT Conditional clauses

CONSONANCE

- SN Identical final consonant  
sounds of two or more  
words
- BT Figures of speech
- RT Alliteration

CONSONANCE (Cont.)

RT Assonance

CONSONANT CLUSTERS

SN Combinations of two or more adjacent consonants occurring within the same syllable

BT Consonants

CONSONANT SHIFTS

SN Series of regular changes in the articulation of consonant sounds at a particular stage in the history of a language

BT Sound shifts

RT Consonants  
Vowel shifts

CONSONANTS

UF Contoids

BT Speech sounds

NT Alveolars  
Consonant clusters  
Dentals  
Devoicing  
Fortis  
Interconsonantals  
Intervocalics  
Kinetic consonants  
Laterals  
Lenis  
Obstruents  
Palatals

RT Consonant shifts  
Vowels

Constituent classes

USE Form classes

CONSTITUENT SENTENCES

UF Inserted clauses  
Parenthetical clauses

SN Sentences embedded into other sentences, the matrix sentences

BT Sentences  
Transformational generative grammar

RT Matrix sentences

Constriction

USE Glottalisation

Constructed languages

USE Artificial languages

CONSULTATIVE SPEECH

SN Intermediate between formal and casual speech

BT Manner of discourse

CONTACT

UF Language contact

SN Influence of different languages upon each other due to frequent meetings between their speakers

BT Change

RT Acculturation  
Bilingualism  
Borrowing  
Convergence areas  
Density of communication  
Lingua franca  
Pidgin

Contact vernaculars

USE Pidgin

CONTENT

SN Level of lexical or semantic meaning of expressions

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Inner form

CONTENT WORDS

UF Autonomous words  
Full words  
Lexical words  
Notional words  
Open class words

SN Words which have a full lexical meaning of their own

BT Words

RT Function words

CONTEXT

UF Context of situation  
Cotext  
Environment  
Linguistic context

BT Systemic grammar

NT Free variations

RT Contextual analysis

Context of situation

USE Context

CONTEXTUAL ANALYSIS

BT Linguistic analysis

CONTEXTUAL ANALYSIS (Cont.)

RT Context

Contextual meaning

USE Meaning

Contextual theory of meaning

USE Semantics

Contiguous assimilation

USE Assimilation

Contiguous dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

CONTINUANTS

SN Any speech sounds which are not stops

BT Speech sounds

NT Frictionless continuants

RT Stops

CONTINUITY

SN State or quality of being continuous

BT Style

Continuous spectra

USE Spectra

Contoids

USE Consonants

## CONTOUR

SN Sequence of pitch,  
stress, intonation over  
part or the whole of an  
utterance

BT Prosodic features

RT Intonation  
Pitch  
Stress

## Contractions

USE Abbreviations

## \*CONTRADICTION

SN Inconsistency

RT Logic

## CONTRAST

SN 1. Opposition between  
distinctive units  
2. Language comparison

BT Comparison of languages

NT Distinctive features  
\*Functional load  
\*Minimal distinctions  
Nondistinctive features  
Opposition

## CONTRASTIVE ANALYSIS

UF Differential analysis  
Differential linguistics

SN Shows similarities and  
differences between lan-  
guages with the aim of  
finding principles

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Error analysis

Contrastive pairs

USE Minimal pairs

## Contrastive substitution

USE Substitution

## CONTROLLING IMAGES

SN Metaphors or images per-  
sisting throughout litera-  
ry works, determining  
their forms and natures

BT Images

## CONVENTIONS

SN Literary practices which  
have become an established  
means of expression

BT Style

NT Frame stories  
In medias res  
Mrs Grundy

RT Dramatic conventions  
Stereotypes

## Convergence

USE 1. Dedialectalisation  
2. Merger

## CONVERGENCE AREAS

SN Regions of a speech com-  
munity which touch on a  
neighbouring language

BT Areas

RT Contact  
Speech communities

## CONVERSATION

- SN Spoken language used between at least two speakers
- BT Speaking
- NT #Conversation analysis
- RT Dialogue  
Spoken language

## #CONVERSATION ANALYSIS

- BT Conversation  
Discourse
- RT Discourse analysis

## #Conversational implicature

- USE #Implicature

## Converse terms

- USE Antonyms

## Conversion

- USE Transmutation

## COOCCURRENCE

- SN Relationship between two or more words of different types to form a sentence
- BT Words
- RT Colligations  
Collocations

## COORDINATE CLAUSES

- BT Clauses

## COORDINATE CONSTRUCTIONS

- UF Coordinative constructions
- SN Syntactic units of equal rank or status
- BT Syntax
- RT Coordinating conjunctions

## COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

- UF Coordinators
- SN Conjunctions connecting words and clauses of equal status
- BT Conjunctions
- RT Coordinate constructions  
Correlatives

## Coordinative constructions

- USE Coordinate constructions

## Coordinators

- USE Coordinating conjunctions

## COPULAS

- UF Catenative verbs  
Connectors  
Copulative verbs  
Equational verbs  
Linking verbs
- SN Verbs which relate the subject to the complement
- BT Verbs

## Copulative verbs

- USE Copulas

## CORONALS

SN Sounds produced by bringing the blade of the tongue into contact with the hard palate

BT Speech sounds

RT Palatals

## CORRECTNESS

SN Traditionally, "right" and "wrong" in speech and writing

BT Standard languages

RT Deviance  
Grammaticality  
Prescriptive linguistics

## CORRELATION

BT Statistics

## CORRELATIVES

SN Conjunctions consisting of pairs of words, connecting words or clauses of equal status

BT Conjunctions

RT Coordinating conjunctions

## Correspondence

USE Agreement

## Correspondence theory of meaning

USE Semantics

## Costume pieces

USE 1. Historical novels  
2. Historical plays

## Cotext

USE Context

## Count nouns

USE Unit nouns

## Countable nouns

USE Unit nouns

## COUNTERPLOTS

UF Subplots

SN Secondary themes within plays or novels

BT Plots

## COUPLETS

UF Distich

SN Pairs of successive lines of verse, especially pairs that rhyme and are of the same length

BT Stanzas

NT Closed couplets  
Heroic couplets

## Coupling conjunctions

USE Conjunctions

## COURTLY LOVE

- SN Chivalric, romantic code and philosophy of love and lovemaking
- BT Middle ages
- RT Chivalry
  - \*Knights
  - \*Ladies
  - \*Lovers
  - \*Romances

## CRASIS

- SN Fusion of two vowels or diphthongs into one long vowel or diphthong
- BT Fusion

## Creak

- USE Register

## Creaky voice

- USE Register

## CREATIVITY

- SN Quality of natural languages enabling speakers to understand and produce sentences never heard or produced before
- BT Languages

## \*CREDITORS

- BT \*Trade
- RT \*Debt

## CREOLE

- UF Creolised languages

## CREOLE (Cont.)

- UF Mixed languages
- BT \*Language variation Languages
- RT Lingua franca Pidgin
- Creolised languages
- USE Creole

## #Crest of sonority

- USE #Syllabic peak

## CRISIS

- SN Turning point, for better or worse, in any activity
- BT Plots
- RT Climax Conflicts

## #CRITICAL AGE

- SN Period between age three and early puberty during which language is acquired easily
- BT Language acquisition

## CRITICISM

- SN Thoughtful, many-sided evaluation and analysis
- BT Literature
- NT Analysis
  - Critiques
  - Deconstruction
  - Explication
  - New criticism
  - Reviews

CRITICISM (Cont.)

RT Essays  
Literary theories  
Method  
Taste

CRITIQUES

SN Evaluation of literary or  
other works of art

BT Criticism

RT Reviews

\*CROSSWORD DICTIONARIES

BT Dictionaries

RT Word games

CRYPTOGRAMS

SN Texts written in a secret  
code

BT Codes

Cultivated speech

USE Manner of discourse

CULTURAL OVERLAP

BT Change

\*CULTURE

SN Sum total of ways of liv-  
ing built up by a group  
of people and handed down  
from one generation to  
the next

RT Aesthetics  
\*Art

CULTURE AND LANGUAGE

BT Language

RT Anthropological lin-  
guistics

CUMULS

UF Amalgams

SN Forms which signal more  
than one grammatical ca-  
tegory

BT Grammatical units

CUNEIFORM SCRIPT

BT Writing systems

\*CURRICULA

UF \*Syllabuses

SN 1. Plans incorporating  
structured series of in-  
tended learning outcomes  
and associated learning  
experiences  
2. Courses of study

NT Curriculum design

\*CURRICULUM DESIGN

BT \*Curricula

RT \*Interdisciplinarity

CYBERNETICS

SN Study of communication  
and automatic control me-  
chanisms in and between  
living organisms and ma-  
chines

BT Information theory



## CYCLE

SN Group of poems, plays or narratives about a central figure, theme, or major event

BT Genre

RT Sequels

## CYCLES

SN Complete repetitions of a sound wave

BT Sound waves

## #CYCLIC PRINCIPLE

UF #Cyclic rules  
#Transformation cycle

SN Rules are applied in a repeated ordered way to sections of a phrase-marker until the matrix sentence is arrived at

BT Generative grammar

RT Transformation rules

#Cyclic rules

USE #Cyclic principle

## CYRILLIC ALPHABET

BT Alphabets

RT Glagolitic alphabet

## DACTYLS

SN Metrical feet of three syllables, one stressed followed by two unstressed ones

## DACTYLS (Cont.)

BT Feet

## #DADAISM

SN Disruptive, nihilistic movement in art and literature started about 1916 in Zurich

BT Literary movements

RT Surrealism

## DANGLING MODIFIERS

SN Participial phrases used as modifiers when there are no appropriate words to which they can refer

BT Modifiers

RT Participial phrases

Dangling participles

USE Absolute constructions

Dark vowels

USE Back vowels

Dashes

USE Punctuation

## DATIVE CASE

SN Word in question is indirect object

BT Case

Daughter languages

USE Family of languages

\*DE GIDS (Periodical)

\*DE JONG, OEK

\*DE SAUSSURE, FERDINAND

#### DEAD LANGUAGES

UF Extinct languages

BT Languages

RT Classical languages  
Living languages

#### \*DEAFNESS

SN Deprivation of the functional use of the sense of hearing

RT Hearing  
#Sign languages

#### \*DEBT

BT \*Trade

RT \*Creditors

#### Decision procedures

USE Procedures

#### Declarative mood

USE Mood

#### DECLENSIONS

UF Declining

SN Lists of all possible inflected forms of a noun, pronoun or adjective

BT Adjectives

#### DECLENSIONS (Cont.)

BT Nouns  
Pronouns

NT Strong declensions  
Weak declensions

RT Case  
Conjugations  
Gender  
Number

Declining

USE Declensions

#### DECODING

SN Deciphering a message from a code

RT Encoding

#### DECONSTRUCTION

SN #Form of criticism which sets out to analyse either a particular work or the concept of literature so as to reveal its ideological basis

BT Criticism

#### DEDIALECTALISATION

UF Convergence

BT Languages

RT Dialectalisation

#### DEDUCTION

SN Movement of thought, expressed or implied, is always from the general to the particular

BT Logic

DEDUCTION

RT \*Experiments  
Induction

Deep grammar

USE Deep structure

DEEP STRUCTURE

UF Deep grammar  
Underlying structure

SN Grammatical relationships  
inherent in the elements  
of a phrase or sentence  
but not immediately appa-  
rent from their linear  
sequence

BT Structure  
Transformational genera-  
tive grammar

RT Grammar  
Surface structure

Deep vowels

USE Back vowels

DEFECTIVE VERBS

UF Incomplete verbs

SN Verbs which don't possess  
all the conjugations ty-  
pical of their class

BT Verbs

RT Complete verbs

DEFECTIVE WRITING

UF Plene writing

DEFECTIVE WRITING (Cont.)

SN Method of writing repre-  
senting only the conso-  
nants

BT Writing systems

Deferred prepositions

USE Prepositions

Definite articles

USE Articles

Definite declensions

USE Weak declensions

DEFINITE DETERMINERS

SN Determiners in noun phra-  
ses specifying a noun as  
a particular item

BT Determiners

RT Indefinite determiners

DEFINITIONS

UF Nominal definitions  
Ostensive definitions  
Real definitions

SN Process or result of sta-  
ting the meanings of a  
word by characterising  
the component features of  
the "concept"

BT Dictionaries

DEFLECTION

UF Deflexion  
Syncretism

## DEFLECTION (Cont.)

- SN Loss of inflection
- BT Diachronic linguistics
- RT Inflection

Deflexion

- USE Deflection

Degeneration

- USE Deterioration

## DEGREE

- UF Comparative degree  
Positive degree  
Superlative degree
- SN Statement of a quality or attribute in an adjective or adverb; expressing a higher or lower degree, or the highest or lowest degree of the quality or attribute
- BT Adjectives  
Adverbs
- RT Double comparison  
Intensifiers

Deictic functions

- USE Deixis

## DEICTIC WORDS

- SN Words the functions of which are to point out or specify an individual person, thing, idea, time, place or tense
- BT #Speech acts

## DEICTIC WORDS (Cont.)

- RT Anaphora  
Deixis

## DEIXIS

- UF Deictic functions
- SN Role played by a deictic word
- BT #Speech acts
- RT Anaphora  
Deictic words

## DELABIALISATION

- UF Lip spreading
- SN Absence or removal of labialisation
- BT Speech sounds
- RT Labialisation

## DELETION

- SN Process or result of leaving out part of a construction or a sound
- BT Grammar  
#Phonology
- RT #Insertion  
#Sound change

Deliberate speech

- USE Formal speech

## DELICACY

- SN Depth of detail in the analysis of linguistic phenomena

DELICACY (Cont.)

BT Linguistic analysis

DELIMITATION

UF Demarcation  
Demarcative functions

SN Signals the boundary between words and clauses

BT Transformational generative grammar

RT Boundary markers

Demarcation

USE Delimitation

Demarcative functions

USE Delimitation

Demonstrative adjectives

USE Demonstratives

Demonstrative pronouns

USE Demonstratives

DEMONSTRATIVES

UF Demonstrative adjectives  
Demonstrative pronouns

SN Words used to point out or indicate persons and things specifically

BT Determiners

\*DEMOS

SN Personification of the populace, especially in a democracy

BT \*Political systems

RT \*Boule

Demotic script

USE Hieroglyphics

DENASALISATION

SN Process or result of removing or losing nasalisation

BT Speech sounds

RT Nasalisation

DENOTATION

UF Designation

SN Dictionary definition of a word

BT Meaning

RT Connotation  
Emotive meaning

Denotative meaning

USE Meaning

DENOUEMENTS

SN Outcomes or results of any complex situation or sequence of events

BT Plots

RT Catastrophe  
Complications

DENSITY OF COMMUNICATION

- SN Relative frequency of linguistic contact between individual speakers or speech communities
- BT Communication
- RT Contact

DENTALS

- UF Postdentals
- SN Consonants which involve the upper teeth as passive articulators in their articulation
- BT Consonants
- NT Apicodentals
- RT Interdentals

DEPALATISATION

- SN Process or result of eliminating palatisation
- BT Speech sounds
- RT Palatisation

Dependence

- USE Dependency

DEPENDENCY

- UF Dependence
- SN Link between grammatical items of different rank
- BT Dependency grammar

DEPENDENCY GRAMMAR

- BT Syntax
- NT Dependency
- RT Computational linguistics
- Dependent clauses
- USE Subordinate clauses

Dependent sound change

- USE Sound change

DERIVATIONAL AFFIXES

- SN Affixes used to form derivations
- BT Affixes
- RT Derivations  
Inflectional suffixes

DERIVATIONS

- SN
  1. Process or result of forming a word by adding affixes to roots
  2. Origins or etymologies of words
  3. Lists of all strings showing the application of successive phrase structures or transformation rules
- BT Transformational generative grammar  
Word formation
- RT Back formation  
Coinage  
Derivational affixes  
Derivatives  
Inflection

## DERIVATIVES

- UF Derived words
- SN Words consisting of one stem plus an affix
- BT Word formation
- RT Derivations
- Derived forms
- USE Derivatives

### Derived primary words

- USE Word formation

### Derived secondary words

- USE Word formation

### Derived sentences

- USE Transformed sentences

### Descendant languages

- USE Family of languages

### Descending diphthongs

- USE Diphthongs

## DESCRIPTION

- SN Tells how something looks, tastes, smells, sounds, feels or acts
- BT Manner of discourse  
Plots
- RT Characterisation  
Images  
Mood

## DESCRIPTIVE GRAMMAR

- SN Grammar based on observed usage rather than on pre-scriptive or normative rules

## DESCRIPTIVE GRAMMAR (Cont.)

- BT Grammar
- RT Formal grammar  
Prescriptive linguistics

## DESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS

- BT Linguistics
- RT Comparative linguistics  
Diachronic linguistics  
Prescriptive linguistics

### Designation

- USE Denotation

## DETECTIVE STORIES

- UF Whodunits
- BT Novels
- RT Adventure stories  
Mystery stories

## DETERIORATION

- UF Degeneration  
Pejoration
- SN Semantic change where the meaning of a word assumes unfavourable connotations
- BT Semantic change
- RT Amelioration  
Bias words

## DETERMINANTS

- UF \*Classifiers
- SN In compound words, the elements which qualify the meaning of the base word or determinatum
- BT Compound words
- RT Determinatums

Determinatives

USE Determiners

DETERMINATUMS

SN In compound words, the base words which are qualified by the determinants

BT Compound words

RT Determinants

DETERMINERS

UF \*Classifiers  
Determinatives

SN Words which function as adjunct words in noun phrases

BT Noun phrases

NT Articles  
Definite determiners  
Demonstratives  
Indefinite determiners  
Predeterminers

RT \*Premodifiers

DETERMINISM

SN Doctrine that all facts and events are determined by outside causes and natural laws

BT Literary movements

RT Naturalism

DEUS EX MACHINA

SN Resolving arrangements of plot by intervention of outside or supernatural forces, or by an unexpected trick or coincidence

BT Plots

DEVELOPMENTAL LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT Ontogeny  
Psychological linguistics

DEVIANCE

SN Utterance which is not in keeping with the accepted grammatical and semantic norms

BT Standard languages

RT Correctness

Deviants

USE Nonsense forms

DEVOICING

SN Loss of voice in a normally voiced consonant because of certain conditions

BT Consonants

RT Assimilation

DIACHRONIC LINGUISTICS

UF Diachronic phonology  
Diachronistic linguistics  
Historical grammar  
Historical linguistics  
Historical phonology  
Historical semantics  
Philology

BT Linguistics

NT Deflection  
Phylogeny  
Reconstruction  
Reflexes  
Sound change  
Sound shifts



DIACHRONIC LINGUISTICS  
(Cont.)

RT Comparative linguistics  
Comparison of languages  
Descriptive linguistics  
\*Language variation  
Synchronic linguistics

Diachronic phonology

USE Diachronic linguistics

Diachronistic linguistics

USE Diachronic linguistics

DIACRITIC MARKS

UF Auxiliary marks  
Auxiliary signs

SN Auxiliary marks or symbols added above, below or after graphic signs to indicate pronunciation differences

BT Alphabetic writing  
Linear scripts

NT Acute accents  
Apex  
Apostrophes  
Breves  
Carets  
Cedillas  
Circumflexes  
Diaeresis  
Grave accents  
Macrons  
Nigori marks  
Stress marks  
Tildes

RT Analphabetic notations  
Letter  
Phonetic transcriptions  
Punctuation

DIAERESIS

UF Dieresis  
Tremas  
Umlaute

BT Diacritic marks

DIAGRAMMATIC SIGNS

SN Abstract pictures acting as signs in writing

BT Writing systems

Dialect atlases

USE Linguistic atlases

Dialect geography

USE Dialectology

DIALECTALISATION

UF Divergence

SN Process whereby a national language disintegrates into a number of local and regional dialects

BT Languages

RT Dedialectalisation  
Drift

DIALECTOLOGY

UF Dialect geography  
Geographical linguistics  
Linguistic geography

BT Linguistics

NT Areas

RT Dialects

## DIALECTS

- UF Local dialects  
Patois  
Social dialects  
Sociolects  
Territorial dialects
- SN Regional, temporal or social varieties of a language
- BT \*Language variation  
Languages
- NT Eye dialects  
Geographical dialects  
\*Hunza dialect  
Idiolects  
Nasal twang
- RT Cockneys  
Dialectology  
Elocution  
Koine  
Linguistic atlases  
Local colour  
National languages  
Standard languages

## DIALOGUE

- UF Colloquy  
Duologue
- SN Speaking together
- BT Speaking
- RT Conversation  
Monologues

## DIAPHONES

- SN Phonemes from different dialects which are phonetically different but phonologically equivalent
- BT Phonology
- RT Phonemes

## DIARIES

- UF Journals
- SN Daily records of experiences
- BT Biographies
- RT Autobiographies  
Letters (Epistles)

## DIBRACHS

- UF Pyrrhic feet
- SN Poetic feet of two unaccented short syllables
- BT Feet

## DICTION

- SN Choice of words and clarity of sounds produced to achieve a particular effect
- BT Speaking
- RT Elocution

## DICTIONARIES

- BT Vocabulary
- NT \*Crossword dictionaries  
Definitions  
Lexicographers  
\*Monolingual dictionaries  
\*Picture dictionaries  
\*Rhyming dictionaries  
\*Technical dictionaries
- RT Lexicons

## Dieresis

- USE Diaeresis

Differential analysis

USE Contrastive analysis

Differential linguistics

USE Contrastive analysis

DIGLOSSIA

UF Middle language

SN Presence in a language of two standards, "high" and "low"

BT Languages

RT Bilingualism  
Sociolinguistics  
Standard languages

DIGRAPHS

SN Combinations of two letters representing a single speech sound

BT Speech sounds

RT Trigraphs

Dilation

USE Assimilation

DILEMMA

BT Plots

RT Conflicts

DIMETERS

SN Verse lines of two metrical feet

BT Verse

Diminutive suffixes

USE Diminutives

DIMINUTIVES

UF Diminutive suffixes

SN Forms of words meaning "little", "small"

BT Word formation

RT Augmentatives  
Terms of endearment

DIPHTHONGISATION

SN Process whereby a monophthong becomes a diphthong

BT Vowels

RT Diphthongs  
Monophthongisation  
Monophthongs

DIPHTHONGS

UF Ascending diphthongs  
Centring diphthongs  
Closing diphthongs  
Descending diphthongs  
Falling diphthongs  
Narrow diphthongs  
Rising diphthongs  
Triphthongs  
Wide diphthongs

SN Vowel sounds within syllables with a perceptible change in their quality during their production

BT Vowels

RT Diphthongisation  
Monophthongisation  
Monophthongs  
Vowel clusters

DIPS

SN Formulae used in glotto-  
chronology to determine  
the degree of lexical re-  
lationship between two or  
more languages

BT Glottochronology

#### DIRECT CASE

BT Case

RT Nominative case  
Oblique case  
Vocative case

Direct discourse

USE Direct speech

#### DIRECT METHOD

SN Method of foreign langua-  
ge teaching

BT Language teaching

RT Grammar translation me-  
thod

Direct objects

USE Objects

#### DIRECT QUESTIONS

SN Questions asked in direct  
speech

BT Questions

RT Direct speech  
Indirect questions

#### DIRECT SPEECH

UF Direct discourse

#### DIRECT SPEECH (Cont.)

SN Quotation of actual  
speech as opposed to in-  
direct speech

BT Syntax

RT Direct questions  
Indirect speech

#### \*DIRECTING

SN Supervising the acting,  
etc., of plays

BT Theatre

RT Acting

#### DIRGES

SN Lyrical poems or songs ex-  
pressing mourning for the  
dead

BT Poems

RT Elegies  
Laments

#### DISCONTINUITY

UF Discontinuous constitu-  
ents  
Discontinuous morphemes

SN Separation of otherwise  
continuous elements by  
the insertion of other  
elements

BT Syntax

RT Inseparables

Discontinuous constituents

USE Discontinuity

Discontinuous morphemes

USE Discontinuity

DISCORD

SN Strife or conflict between contending characters

BT Plots

RT Conflicts

DISCORDS

SN Confused or harsh sounds

BT Sounds

RT Cacophony  
Dissonance

DISCOURSE

SN Continuous stretch of (spoken) language larger than a sentence

BT Linguistics

NT Conversation analysis  
Discourse analysis

RT Manner of discourse

DISCOURSE ANALYSIS

SN Discovering linguistic regularities in discourse using grammatical, phonological and semantic criteria

BT Discourse

NT Speech acts

Discovery procedures

USE Procedures

DISJUNCTION

SN Relationship between structures separated by "or" or "but" implying a contrast or disassociation

BT Syntax

RT Disjunctive pronouns

DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

SN Personal pronouns used alone or after a preposition or for stress

BT Pronouns

RT Conjunctive pronouns  
Disjunction  
Emphatic pronouns

#DISJUNCTIVE RULE ORDERING

BT Rule ordering

Disjunctives

USE Epenthetics

DISPLACED SPEECH

SN Words used to refer to something not physically present

BT Syntax

RT Immediate speech

DISSIMILATION

UF Anticipatory dissimilation

DISSIMILATION (Cont.)

UF Contiguous dissimilation  
 Distant dissimilation  
 Incontiguous dissimila-  
 tion  
 Juxtapositional dissimi-  
 lation  
 Progressive dissimilation  
 Regressive dissimilation  
 Retrogressive dissimila-  
 tion  
 Total dissimilation

SN Process or result of two  
 sounds becoming dissimi-  
 lar due to influence of  
 the one upon the other

BT Sound change

RT Assimilation  
 Environmental condition-  
 ing

DISSONANCE

SN Combination of sounds  
 considered unpleasant

BT Sounds

RT Cacophony  
 Discords

Distant assimilation

USE Assimilation

Distant dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

Distich

USE Couplets

DISTINCTIVE FEATURES

UF Major class features

DISTINCTIVE FEATURES (Cont.)

UF Manner of articulation  
 features  
 Protensity features  
 Sonority features  
 Source features  
 Tonality features

SN Any features which dis-  
 tinguish one linguistic  
 unit from another

BT Contrast

RT Nondistinctive features  
 Opposition

DISTRIBUTION

SN Number of possible con-  
 texts in which particular  
 linguistic item can occur  
 in a language

BT Statistical linguistics

DISTRIBUTIONAL ANALYSIS

UF Distributionalism

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Functional analysis

Distributionalism

USE Distributional analysis

DISYLLABICS

SN Consisting of two syl-  
 lables

BT Syllables

## DITHYRAMBS

SN Literary expressions in verse or prose which employ unrestrained, passionate, wild or excited language

BT Genre

Divergence

USE Dialectalisation

## \*DIVINE LOVE

RT \*Christianity

## DOGGEREL

SN Crudely written poetry, loose or irregular in measure, usually comic or burlesque

BT Poems

RT Echo verse  
Light verse  
Nonsense verse  
Occasional verse

Domain

USE Semantic fields

## DOMESTIC TRAGEDIES

SN Serious and sombre plays involving middle-class or lower-class characters, settings and conflicts

BT Plays

## DORSALS

SN Produced with the dorsum or back of the tongue as the active articulator

BT Speech sounds

RT Dorsoalveolars  
Dorsopalatals  
Dorsouvulars  
Dorsovelars

## DORSOALVEOLARS

SN Dorsum region of the tongue touching or approaching the alveolar ridge

BT Alveolars  
Dorsals

## DORSOPALATALS

SN Dorsum region of the tongue touching or approaching the palate

BT Dorsals  
Palatals

## DORSOUVULARS

SN Contact or close approximation between uvula and dorsum region of the tongue

BT Dorsals  
Uvulars

## DORSOVELARS

SN Dorsum region of the tongue touching or approaching the velum

BT Dorsals  
Velars

## DOUBLE ARTICULATION

SN Production of a speech sound with two simultaneous strictures of equal importance

BT Articulation

Double bar junctures

USE Junctures

## DOUBLE COMPARISON

SN Formation of comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives or adverbs by both morphemic and syntactic devices

BT Adjectives  
Adverbs

RT Degree

Double consonants

USE Duration

Double cross junctures

USE Junctures

## DOUBLE NEGATIVES

SN Use of two negatives in the same phrase or sentence

BT Negatives

## DOUBLE RHYME

SN Rhyme of two syllables of which the second is unstressed

BT Rhyme

## DOUBLE RHYME (Cont.)

RT Feminine rhyme

Double vowels

USE Duration

Doubling

USE Geminates

\*DOYLE, ARTHUR CONAN. The sign of four

## DOWNGRADING

SN Embedding of a grammatical unit within a unit at a lower level or rank of a structure

BT Transformational generative grammar

Downward comparison

USE Inferior comparison

## DRAMA

BT Genre

NT Adaptations  
Catastrophe  
Catharsis  
Characterisation  
Dramatic conventions  
Dramatic irony  
Dramatic poetry  
Little theatre  
Mime  
Mimicry  
Oriental theatre  
Plays  
\*Playwrights  
Plots  
Slice of life  
Theatre



DRAMA (Cont.)

NT Theatre in the round  
Theatre of the absurd

RT Nonfiction  
Poetry

DRAMATIC CONVENTIONS

SN Devices employed in a play as substitutes for reality which the audience is supposed to accept as genuine and real

BT Drama

NT Asides  
Chorus  
Monologues  
Soliloquies  
Stage whisper

RT Acting  
Conventions

DRAMATIC IRONY

SN Audience is made aware of information unknown to some of the actual characters in a play

BT Drama

RT Irony

#DRAMATIC MONOLOGUES

BT Monologues

DRAMATIC POETRY

SN Poetry that employs dramatic form

BT Drama  
Poems

RT Closet dramas

\*DRAWINGS

BT \*Art

RT \*Illustrations  
\*Paintings

DRIFT

SN Successive changes in the historical development of a particular language

BT Languages

RT Change  
Dialectalisation

DRILL

SN Series of exercises to impart linguistic skill

BT Language teaching

NT Pattern drill

DUALS

SN Grammatical categories of number referring to two items as opposed to singulars and plurals

BT Number

RT Plurals  
Singulars

DUMMY ELEMENTS

SN Grammatical elements postulated in the deep structure to explain the surface structure of an utterance

BT Transformational generative grammar

Duologue

USE Dialogue

#### DURATION

UF Double consonants  
Double vowels  
Length  
Long consonants  
Long vowels

SN Length of time given to  
articulation of a speech  
sound

BT Articulation

NT Chronemes

RT Quantity

#### \*DUTCH LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Afrikaans language  
\*Flemish language  
\*Holland

Dynamic accent

USE Expiratory accent

#### DYSARTHRIA

SN Defective articulation  
due to defective central  
nervous system

BT Articulation

RT Dyslalia

#### DYSLALIA

SN Defective speech due to  
malfunction of external  
speech organs

#### DYSLALIA (Cont.)

BT Organs of speech

RT Dysarthria

#### DYSLEXIA

SN Partial disability to  
read

BT Reading

RT Alexia

#### Dysphasia

USE Aphasia

#### DYSPHONIA

SN Any defect in the phona-  
tion of speech sounds

BT Speech production

#### \*EAST GERMANY

BT \*Germany

RT \*West Germany

#### \*EBLAITE LANGUAGE

BT Languages

#### ECHO ALLUSION

SN Allusion that varies a  
well-known saying

BT Allusion

#### ECHO QUESTIONS

SN Questions asking for con-  
firmation of a previous  
statement

## ECHO QUESTIONS (Cont.)

BT Questions

## ECHO VERSE

SN In which a line has its closing syllables echoed with a different meaning in the following line

BT Poems

RT Doggerel

## ECLOGUES

SN Pastoral or idyllic poems that praise country life

BT Poems

RT Georgics  
Pastorals

## ECOLOGY OF LANGUAGE

SN Study of interactions between a language and its environment

BT Language

## \*ECONOMICS

RT \*Trade

## ECONOMY

UF Conciseness

SN 1. Reduction of redundancy of language  
2. Principle that regularities in a language be stated in the smallest possible number of rules  
3. Efficient and sparing use of words to express ideas and emotions

## ECONOMY (Cont.)

BT Style

RT Redundancy  
Verbosity

## EDWARDIAN

SN Reign of Edward VII of England

BT Literary periods

RT Victorian

## \*EFFECTIVENESS

SN Production of effects and results intended or expected

Egressive air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Egressive stops

USE Stops

## EGRESSIVES

SN Produced with the air stream moving out of the vocal tract

BT Speech sounds

RT Expiratory accent  
Ingressives

## EJECTIVES

SN Usually stops characterized by closure in the glottis and another stricture above the glottis

BT Speech sounds

EJECTIVES (Cont.)

RT Stops

Elegiacs

USE Elegies

ELEGIES

UF Elegiacs

SN Mournful, melancholy poems

BT Poems

RT Dirges  
Laments

ELEMENTS

SN Constituent parts of a whole

BT Gestalt

Elevation

USE Amelioration

ELISION

SN Omission of a vowel at the end of one word when the next word begins with a vowel, or the dropping of a vowel, consonant or syllable in pronunciation

BT Metre

RT Haplology  
Hiatus

ELIZABETHAN

SN Reign of Elizabeth I of England

ELIZABETHAN (Cont.)

BT Literary periods

RT Jacobean  
Renaissance  
Tudor

Ellipsis

USE 1. Aphesis  
2. Apocope

ELOCUTION

UF Speech education  
Speech improvement

SN Type of speech training attempting to teach a socially correct accent

BT Speaking

RT Accents  
Dialects  
Diction

\*EMBARRASSMENT

SN Feeling of shame

BT Emotions

EMBEDDED CLAUSES

UF Parenthetical clauses  
Parenthesis

BT Clauses

RT Embedding  
Included positions  
Layering

EMBEDDING

SN Process of inserting a constituent structure into a matrix structure

## EMBEDDING (Cont.)

- BT Transformational generative grammar
- RT Embedded clauses  
Layering

## \*EMBLEMS

- SN Signs, designs, figures or symbols identifying or representing something
- RT Symbolism

## EMOTIONS

- BT Aesthetics
- NT \*Embarrassment  
Euphoria  
Passion  
Pathos  
Sentimentalism

## EMOTIVE MEANING

- SN Emotion a reader or listener associates with a word or phrase
- BT Meaning
- RT Cognitive meaning  
Connotation  
Denotation

## EMPATHY

- SN Identification with an object and sharing its physical and emotional sensations
- BT Aesthetics
- RT Identification  
Pathetic fallacy  
Sympathy

## EMPHASIS

- SN High pitch and heavier stress or both
- BT Stress

## EMPHATIC PRONOUNS

- SN Personal pronouns used for emphasis
- BT Pronouns
- RT Disjunctive pronouns  
Personal pronouns

## EMPIRICISM

- SN Recognises only observable reality
- BT Literary movements

## Empty words

- USE Function words

## ENCLITICS

- SN Words in an unstressed form attached to other words which carry the stress
- BT #Grammar
- RT Clitics  
Proclitics

## ENCODING

- SN Converting a message into code
- BT Codes
- RT Decoding

Encomiums

USE Eulogies

END RHYME

UF Terminal rhyme

SN Rhyme that occurs at the end of lines of poetry

BT Rhyme

RT Feminine rhyme  
Internal rhyme

END STOPPED LINES

SN Lines of poetry in which a grammatical pause coincides with the end of the line

BT Verse

RT Run on lines

Endings

USE Suffixes

ENDOPHASIA

SN Subvocal inaudible language

BT Speaking

RT Exophasia

\*ENGLAND

ENGLISH LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT Anglicisms  
Anglo Saxon  
Basic English

ENGLISH LANGUAGE (Cont.)

RT Cockneys  
Middle English  
Old English

English sonnets

USE Shakespearean sonnets

ENGRAMS

SN Memory traces stored in the human brain

BT Psychological linguistics

Enjambement

USE Run on lines

ENLIGHTENMENT

UF Age of reason  
Aufklarung  
Reason, Age of

SN 17th and 18th century philosophical trend in Europe and Great Britain that emphasised the importance of scientific methods and discoveries

BT Literary periods

ENTRACTES

SN 1. Intervals between two acts  
2. Entertainment provided during these periods

BT Plays

RT Acts

#Entwicklungsromane

USE Bildungsromane

Envelopes

USE Spectra

Environment

USE Context

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONING

SN Influence of adjacent sounds on a particular speech sound

BT Sound change

RT Assimilation  
Dissimilation

EPENTHESIS

SN Insertion of one or more sounds or letters into a loan word to make it conform phonologically to the borrowing language

BT Pronunciation

RT Anaptyxis  
Epenthetics  
#Insertion

EPENTHETICS

UF Disjunctives  
Excrescents  
Parasitic sounds

SN Vowels or consonants inserted into a word to make pronunciation easier

BT Pronunciation

RT Anaptyxis

EPENTHETICS (Cont.)

RT Epenthesis  
Intrusion  
Paragogue  
Prothesis

Ephemeral words

USE Nonce formations

EPICENES

SN Words which may refer to male or female persons

BT Nouns

RT Gender nouns

EPICS

SN Lengthy narrative poems

BT Poems

RT \*Mythology  
Oral transmission  
Sagas

EPIGLOTTIS

SN Protrusion situated above the larynx to protect the larynx during swallowing

BT Organs of speech

Epigrams

USE Aphorisms

EPIGRAPHY

SN Study of ancient inscriptions on hard surfaces

BT Writing

## EPIGRAPHY (Cont.)

NT \*Inscriptions

RT Palaeography

## EPILOGUES

SN 1. Concluding parts added to literary works  
2. Speeches delivered at the end of plays

BT Fiction  
Plays  
Poems

RT Chorus  
Prologues

## EPIPHORA

UF Epistrophe

SN Repetition of a word or words at the end of two or more successive phrases, clauses or verses

BT Verse

RT Anaphora  
Identical rhyme

## EPISTEMOLOGY

SN Study of the origin and organisation of scientific knowledge

RT Logic in language

Epistrophe

USE Epiphora

## EPITAPHS

SN Usually brief poems praising a deceased person

## EPITAPHS (Cont.)

BT Poems

RT \*Inscriptions  
Obituaries

## EPITHETS

SN Words or phrases applied to a person or thing to show a quality or characteristic; not necessarily invective

BT Words

RT Expletives  
Qualifiers

## EPONYMS

SN Names of persons so commonly associated with a specific characteristic or quality that the name itself stands for the attribute

BT Names

RT Patronyms

## EQUATIONAL SENTENCES

SN Sentences in which an adjectival or nominal phrase in the predicate is identified with the subject

BT Sentences

Equational verbs

USE Copulas

## EQUIVALENTS

UF Analogues



EQUIVALENTS (Cont.)

- SN Words or phrases which correspond to similar words or phrases in another language
- BT Meaning
- RT Translation

EQUIVOCATION

- SN Two words being exactly alike in written and spoken form, but having different meanings
- BT Meaning
- RT Heterographs  
Heteronyms  
Homographs  
Homonyms

ERROR ANALYSIS

- SN Technique of measuring progress
- BT Language teaching  
Linguistic analysis
- RT Contrastive analysis  
Testing

Erziehungsromane

- USE Bildungsromane

ESCAPISM

- SN Desire or tendency to avoid reality and seek entertainment in fantasy
- BT Fiction
- RT \*Escapist literature  
Euphoria

\*ESCAPIST LITERATURE

- SN Enables reader to forget his troubles and to live vicariously in another world
- BT Genre
- RT Escapism  
\*Trivial literature

ESPERANTO

- BT Artificial languages
- RT Basic English  
Interlingua  
Novial  
Volapuk

ESSAYS

- SN Short literary compositions in prose
- BT Prose
- RT Criticism  
Reviews

ETHNOGRAPHIC LINGUISTICS

- BT Linguistics
- RT Field work

ETHNOLINGUISTICS

- BT Anthropological linguistics

Etymological cognates

- USE Cognate words

ETYMOLOGY

SN Study of source and history of words

BT Linguistics

NT Folk etymology  
Onomastics  
Paronyms

RT Lexicology  
Semantics

EULOGIES

UF Encomiums  
Panegyrics

SN Formal compositions or speeches in praise of someone

BT Rhetoric

RT Orations

EUPHEMISMS

UF Acyrologia

SN Use of indirect, mild or vague words or expressions for one thought to be coarse, offensive or blunt

BT Style

RT Bowdlerisation  
Expletives  
Mrs Grundy  
Noa words  
Parrhesia  
Taboos

EUPHONY

SN Combination of sounds considered pleasant

BT Sounds

EUPHONY (Cont.)

RT Cacophony

EUPHORIA

SN Feeling of well-being

BT Emotions

RT Escapism

\*EURIPIDES . Medea

Evaluation procedures

USE Procedures

EVOCATION

SN Power of a word or phrase to cause an emotional reaction by its connotation .

BT Meaning

RT Connotation  
Imagery

EXAGGERATION

SN Magnifying beyond the limits of truth

BT Style

RT Hyperbole

EXCEPTIONS

SN Forms not in keeping with norms

BT Phonetic laws

Exclamation marks

USE Punctuation

#### EXCLAMATIONS

UF Interjections

SN Utterances conveying intensity of emotion

BT Sentence patterns

RT Exclamatives

#### EXCLAMATIVES

SN Words or phrases used to introduce an exclamation

BT Invariable words

RT Exclamations  
Expletives  
Independent elements

Exclusive personal pronouns

USE Person

Excrescents

USE Epenthetics

Exegesis

USE Explication

#### EXHALATION

UF Expiration

SN Breathing out

BT Speech production

#### EXISTENTIALISM

SN Belief that man forms his essential being in the course and pattern of the life he chooses to lead

BT Literary movements

NT Angst  
Black comedy

RT Iconoclasm  
Theatre of the absurd

#### EXOPHASIA

SN Audible vocalisation of language

BT Speaking

RT Endophasia

#### EXPANDED VERB FORMS

SN Any verb forms requiring use of an auxiliary with a main verb

BT Verbs

RT Auxiliary verbs

#### EXPANSION

SN 1. Addition of further elements in a sentence without changing its structure  
2. Linguistic effects of migration and transmission of institutions across language boundaries  
3. Widening of meaning

BT Semantic change

RT Extension

EXPERIMENTAL PHONETICS

UF Instrumental phonetics  
Laboratory phonetics

BT Phonetics

\*EXPERIMENTS

RT Deduction  
\*Research

Expiration

USE Exhalation

EXPIRATORY ACCENT

UF Dynamic accent  
Intensity accent  
Stress accent

SN Stress conditioned by the  
relative degree of energy  
during the production of  
egressive speech sounds

BT Stress

RT Egressives

\*EXPLANATIONS

SN Declarations made with a  
view to mutual understand-  
ing

RT Explication  
\*Hermeneutics

EXPLETIVES

UF Floating elements

SN 1. Words used as fillers  
2. Interjectory words,  
usually profane

BT Invariable words

RT Epithets  
Euphemisms

EXPLETIVES (Cont.)

RT Exclamatives  
Hesitation forms  
Independent elements

EXPLICATION

UF Exegesis

SN Explanation, interpreta-  
tion

BT Criticism

NT Gloss

RT Analysis  
\*Explanations  
\*Hermeneutics

Explosion

USE Plosion

Exponence

USE 1. Systemic grammar  
2. Realisation

EXPOSITION

SN That form of discourse  
that explains, defines  
and interprets

BT Manner of discourse

EXPRESSION

SN 1. Level of phonological  
or graphological form in  
which meaning is represen-  
ted  
2. Utterance which con-  
veys a distinct meaning in  
a special context

BT Linguistic analysis

EXPRESSIONISM

SN Any deliberate distortion of reality

BT Literary movements

NT Angst

RT Futurism  
Impressionism  
Realism  
Theatre of the absurd

EXPRESSIVE FUNCTION

SN Use of language for the purpose of verbalising a person's feeling

BT Speaking

Extended meaning

USE Meaning

EXTENSION

SN 1. Process or result of widening word's meaning by expansion of contexts in which it can occur  
2. Contrasted to intension. Designates features necessary to describe or define a thing

BT Semantic changes

RT Expansion  
Intension  
Reduction

Extensional meaning

USE Meaning

External meaning

USE Meaning

Extinct languages

USE Dead languages

\*EXTRACTION

SN Removal

#Extralinguistic features

USE Kinesics

EXTRAPOLATION

SN Projection of known information by estimate or inference

BT Statistics

RT Cause and effect

#EXTRINSIC RULE ORDERING

BT #Rule ordering

EYE DIALECTS

SN Written forms suggesting regional or social variants of languages

BT Dialects

EYE RHYME

UF Sight rhyme

SN Form of agreement in spelling but not in sound

BT Rhyme

EYE RHYME (Cont.)

RT Approximate rhyme

\*EZEKIEL

BT \*Old Testament

FABLES

SN Short, simple stories, usually with animal characters, designed to teach a moral

BT Narration

NT Anthropomorphism

RT Allegory  
Axioms  
Legends  
\*Mythology  
Parables

\*FACE SAVING

SN The re-establishment of one's image

Fact mood

USE Mood

FACTITIVE VERBS

SN Types of transitive verb which may take two complements

BT Verbs

RT Transitive verbs

Facultative variants

USE Free variants

FADING

SN Lowering of pitch and the gradual transition into silence

BT Pitch

Fading junctures

USE Junctures

\*FAINTING

SN Losing consciousness

FAIRY TALES

UF Marchen

BT Narration

RT Folklore  
Folktales

FALLACY

SN False or misleading notion

BT Aesthetics

NT Affective fallacy  
Intentional fallacy  
Pathetic fallacy

RT Syllogisms

Falling diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

Falling junctures

USE Junctures

## FAMILIAR FORM

- SN Grammatical form denoting degree of intimacy between speakers
- BT Syntax
- RT Honorific form  
Polite form

## FAMILY OF LANGUAGES

- UF Daughter languages  
Descendant languages  
Genetic relationships  
Language family  
Linguistic groups  
Sister languages
- SN Model likening relationships between languages to a genetic relationship similar to family relationships
- BT Languages
- NT Family trees
- RT Ancestor languages  
Genealogical classification

## FAMILY TREES

- SN Models to explain relationships between ancestor and daughter or descendant languages
- BT Family of languages
- RT Tree diagrams

## FANTASIES

- SN Literary works the action of which occurs in a non-existent and unreal world
- BT Novels

## FANTASIES (Cont.)

- RT Science fiction  
Utopian fiction

## FARCES

- SN Light humorous plays
- BT Comedies
- RT Burlesques

## FEATURES

- UF Intralinguistic features
- SN Any qualities or component parts of an element which may become basis for describing regular patterns
- BT Linguistic analysis

## FEEDBACK

- SN 1. Process whereby speaker is consciously aware of own speech production  
2. Those signals reported back indirectly to the input from the output, giving information on efficiency of transmission
- BT Information theory  
Phonetics
- NT Kinaesthetic feedback

## #FEEDING RULE ORDERING

- BT #Rule ordering

## FEET

- UF Foot  
Measures

FEET (Cont.)

SN Groups of syllables constituting metrical units of verse; set patterns of stressed and unstressed sounds

BT Metre

NT Amphibrachs  
Amphimacers  
Anapests  
Bacchic feet  
Choriambics  
Dactyls  
Dibrachs  
Iambics  
Ionic feet  
Paeons  
Spondees  
Trochees

RT Accent (Stress)  
Arsis

Feminine gender

USE Gender

FEMININE RHYME

SN Rhyme extending over two or more syllables

BT Rhyme

RT Double rhyme  
End rhyme  
Masculine endings

\*FEMINISM

\*FERRON, LOUIS. Turkenvespers

FICTION

SN Fashioned to entertain and to make readers feel

FICTION (Cont.)

BT Narration

NT Adaptations  
Catharsis  
Characterisation  
Epilogues  
Escapism  
Free association  
Melodramas  
Novels  
Plots  
Prologues  
Sequels  
Short stories  
Slice of life  
Stream of consciousness

RT Nonfiction

Field study

USE Field work

Field theory

USE Semantics

FIELD WORK

UF Field study

SN Method of collecting linguistic data from native informants

BT Ethnographic linguistics  
\*Research

NT Questionnaires

FIGURATIVE LANGUAGE

SN Deliberate departure from word meanings to gain freshness and strength of expression

BT #Style



FIGURATIVE LANGUAGE (Cont.)

NT Figures of speech  
Imagery

RT Images

FIGURES OF SPEECH

UF Rhetorical figures  
Speech, Figures of  
Tropes

SN Devices for extending the  
semantic meaning of a  
word or group of words  
to achieve a particular  
effect, e.g. the express-  
ion of imagination, or  
deviation from ordinary  
usage for the sake of  
ornament

BT Figurative language

NT Allegory  
Allusion  
Anacoluthon  
Antithesis  
Bathos  
Chiasmus  
Consonance  
Hyperbole  
Irony  
Litotes  
Metaphors  
Metonymy  
Onomatopoeia  
Oxymorons  
Paradoxes  
Personification  
Similes  
Synecdoche

RT Word games

#FILM PLAYS

BT Plays

Final glides

USE Offglides

#FINGER SPELLING

BT Sign languages

FINITE VERBS

SN Forms of the verb limit-  
ed in time by a tense or  
showing agreement with  
person and number

BT Verbs

RT Infinitives

FIRST INFINITIVE

SN Infinitive used without  
the particle "to"

BT Infinitives

RT Second infinitive

First languages

USE Native languages

First perfect tense

USE Perfect tense

First person

USE Person

FIRST SOUND SHIFT

UF Germanic sound shift

SN Series of regular conso-  
nant changes which took  
place in primitive Ger-  
manic

FIRST SOUND SHIFT (Cont.)

BT Sound shifts

\*FIRTH, J.R.

FIXATIONS

UF Fossilised forms

SN Archaic forms surviving in modern language in a stereotyped phrase

BT Style

RT Archaisms  
Cliches

Fixed accent

USE Stress

Fixed stress

USE Stress

FIXED WORD ORDER

SN Indicates grammatical relationships, which, when changed, alter the meaning of the sentence

BT Word order

RT Free word order

\*FLANDERS

BT \*Belgium

NT \*Antwerp

RT \*Flemish language

FLAPS

UF Taps

SN Produced when active articulator is in rapid momentary loose contact with a passive articulator

BT Manner of articulation  
Speech sounds

RT Stops  
Trills

FLASHBACKS

SN Scenes inserted into a play or fiction representing earlier events

BT Plots

RT In medias res

FLAT CHARACTERS

SN Characters presented with a single trait

BT Characterisation

RT Foils  
Round characters  
Static characters  
Stereotypes  
Stock characters

Flection

USE Inflection

\*FLEMISH LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Afrikaans language  
\*Dutch language  
\*Flanders

Flexion

USE Inflection

Flexional endings

USE Inflectional suffixes

Flexional languages

USE Inflected languages

Floating elements

USE Expletives

\*FLOCKS

SN Herds of domesticated animals

RT \*Herdsmen

FLUENCY

SN Using language structures accurately whilst concentrating on content rather than form

BT Speaking

RT Articulacy

Focal areas

USE Areas

FOCUS

SN Central point of attention

BT Plots

FOILS

SN Persons that, by contrast, make others seem better or more prominent

BT Characterisation

RT Antiheroes  
Flat characters  
Fools  
Heroes  
Round characters

FOLK ETYMOLOGY

UF Associative etymology  
Popular etymology

SN Replacement of an unknown word by a more familiar one

BT Etymology

RT Analogy

FOLKLORE

SN Long-standing and traditional beliefs, legends and customs

BT Genre

NT Adages  
Aphorisms  
Axioms  
Maxims  
Mottoes  
Proverbs

RT Fairy tales  
Folktales  
Legends  
\*Mythology

FOLKTALES

SN Legends traditional amongst people

FOLKTALES (Cont.)

- BT Narration
- RT Fairy tales  
Folklore  
Legends  
Myths  
Oral transmission

FOOLS

- SN In drama, court jesters
- BT Characterisation
- RT Foils  
Stock characters

Foot

- USE Feet

FOREIGN LANGUAGES

- UF Second languages  
Secondary languages
- BT Languages
- RT Immigrant languages  
Language teaching  
Native languages

Foreignisms

- USE Loan words

Forlorn elements

- USE Suppletives

FORM

- UF Linguistic form
- SN 1. Shape or appearance of  
a linguistic unit

FORM (Cont.)

- SN 2. Structural pattern of  
a work of art
- BT Systemic grammar
- NT #Arbitrariness  
Form classes
- RT Genre  
Gestalt  
Structure  
Style  
Substance

FORM CLASSES

- UF Constituent classes
- SN Groups of linguistic  
forms considered to be  
members of a single ca-  
tegory
- BT Form

Form words

- USE Function words

FORMAL GRAMMAR

- SN Set of rules describing  
a language
- BT Grammar
- RT Descriptive grammar

FORMAL SPEECH

- UF Deliberate speech
- SN Deliberate style of speech
- BT Manner of discourse

Formal universals

USE Universals

FORMALISATION

SN Aims to make formal relationships in language as explicit as possible by describing them in terms of general rules

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Generative grammar Rules

Formless languages

USE Isolating languages

FORMULAE

BT Comparative method

Formulaic languages

USE Special languages

FORTIS

SN Consonant produced with strong muscular tension

BT Consonants

RT Lenis

Fossilised forms

USE Fixations

FRAME STORIES

SN Stories within a narrative setting or frame

BT Conventions

FRAME STORIES (Cont.)

RT Play within a play  
Story within a story

\*FRAMES

SN Sequence of items in the teaching programme, in the shape of statements or questions with alternative answers, pictures, audio stimuli, etc.

BT Programmed instruction

Free alternants

USE Free variants

FREE ASSOCIATION

SN Writing in which one thought leads to another

BT Fiction

RT Stream of consciousness

Free forms

USE Free morphemes

FREE MORPHEMES

UF Free forms  
Morpheme words

SN Morphemes which can be used on their own as words with a distinct meaning

BT Morphemes

RT Bound morphemes

FREE SENTENCES

SN Syntactic structures which don't need additional context to be meaningful

BT Sentences

RT Bound sentences

Free stress

USE Stress

FREE SYLLABLES

SN Syllables ending in a vowel

BT Syllables

RT Blocked syllables  
Free vowels

Free translation

USE Translation

FREE VARIANTS

UF Facultative variants  
Free alternants  
Individual variants  
Noncontrastive variants  
Optional variants

SN Alternative pronunciations, equally correct

BT Pronunciation

RT Complementary distribution  
Free variations  
Metaphones

FREE VARIATIONS

UF Nonfunctional variations

FREE VARIATIONS (Cont.)

SN Occurring non-distinctively in the same environment

BT Context

RT Free variants

FREE VERSE

UF Vers libre

SN Lacks regular metre and line length but relies upon natural rhythms

BT Poems

RT Blank verse

FREE VOWELS

SN Vowel sounds in a free syllable

BT Vowels

RT Blocked vowels  
Free syllables

FREE WORD ORDER

SN Word order not used to signal grammatical relationships and which can be varied

BT Word order

RT Fixed word order

\*FRENCH LANGUAGE

BT Languages

FREQUENCY

UF Word frequency

FREQUENCY (Cont.)

SN 1. Number of times word occurs in text  
2. Number of vibrations per second of sound waves

BT Sound waves

NT Frequency analysis  
Harmonics

RT Amplitude  
Mathematical linguistics  
Pitch  
Threshold of hearing  
Threshold of pain  
Volume

FREQUENCY ANALYSIS

SN Analysis of the frequency of a word in text

BT Frequency

RT Frequency counts

FREQUENCY COUNTS

UF Word counts

SN Numerical procedures

BT Statistical linguistics

RT Frequency analysis  
Vocabulary

FRICATIVES

UF Close approximants  
Spirants

SN Continuous sounds produced by forcing air through a partially obstructed vocal tract

BT Manner of articulation  
Obstruents  
Speech sounds

FRICATIVES (Cont.)

NT Sibilants  
Slit fricatives

RT Affricates  
Friction

FRICITION

UF Local friction  
Supraglottal friction

SN Sound production as a result of air passing through a stricture in the vocal tract

BT Manner of articulation

RT Fricatives  
Frictionless continuants

FRICITIONLESS CONTINUANTS

UF Open approximants

SN Continuants produced with minimal audible friction

BT Continuants

RT Friction  
Vowels

Front mutations

USE Vowel mutations

FRONT VOWELS

UF Bright vowels  
Slender vowels

SN Produced with the highest part of the tongue towards the front of the mouth

BT Vowels

RT Back vowels

## FRONTALS

SN Articulated by the front of the tongue touching a passive articulator

BT Speech sounds

## FRONTING

SN Sound change resulting in vowels being articulated in the front of the mouth

BT Sound change

Frozen speech

USE Oratorical speech

Full stops

USE Punctuation

## FULL VERBS

UF Main verbs  
Principal verbs

SN Verb forms expressing the main "action" of the sentence

BT Verbs

RT Auxiliary verbs

Full words

USE Content words

## FUNCTION

SN 1. Use of language for a particular purpose

## FUNCTION (Cont.)

SN 2. Role played by element in utterance and its structural relationship to other elements

BT Grammar  
Languages

RT Functional analysis

## FUNCTION WORDS

UF Closed class words  
Empty words  
Form words  
Grammatical words  
Structural words

SN Words which don't carry a full lexical meaning but rather a grammatical significance

BT Words

RT Content words  
Particles

## FUNCTIONAL ANALYSIS

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Distributional analysis  
Function

Functional change

USE Transmutation

## \*FUNCTIONAL GRAMMAR

SN Pragmatic view of language as social interaction

BT Linguistics

RT Rules  
\*Social interaction



\*FUNCTIONAL LOAD

SN Extent to which a linguistic contrast is exploited

BT Contrast

Functional meaning

USE Meaning

Fused compounds

USE Primary compounds

Fusing languages

USE Inflected languages

FUSION

UF Coalescence

SN Close merging of linguistic elements

BT Linguistics

NT Crisis

Fusional languages

USE Inflected languages

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

UF Second future tense

BT Tense

RT Future tense  
Perfect tense

FUTURE TENSE

UF Present future tense

FUTURE TENSE (Cont.)

BT Tense

RT Future perfect tense

FUTURISM

SN Speed, power and violence portrayed, and hostility to the past and to all traditional forms of expression advocated

BT Literary movements

RT Expressionism  
Surrealism  
Vorticism

GAELIC LANGUAGE

SN Speech of ancient Ireland

BT Languages

RT Celtic language

\*GALL, FRANZ JOSEF

GEMINATES

UF Doubling

SN Sequence of identical articulations

BT Articulation

GENDER

UF Common gender  
Feminine gender  
Grammatical gender  
Inanimate gender  
Masculine gender  
Natural gender  
Neutral gender

GENDER (Cont.)

SN Grammatical category based on the forms of nouns

BT Nouns

RT Accidence  
Animates  
Case  
Declensions  
Gender nouns  
Inflection  
Number  
Tense

GENDER NOUNS

SN Nouns which follow natural gender

BT Nouns

RT Epicenes  
Gender

GENEALOGICAL CLASSIFICATION

UF Genetic classification

SN Classification of languages according to their genetic relationships into families

BT Categorisation

NT Tree diagrams

RT Family of languages

General grammar

USE 1. Grammar  
2. Universal grammar

GENERAL LINGUISTICS

UF Theoretical linguistics

BT Linguistics

GENERAL LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

RT Applied linguistics

GENERAL SEMANTICS

SN Rejects the Aristotelian view that words have only one lexical meaning

BT Semantics

RT Meaning

GENERALISED TRANSFORMATION

SN Rule which operates on two strings at once, joining them, embedding them, etc.

BT Transformation rules

GENERATION

SN Specification of new utterances from a limited inventory of linguistic items, by applying a set of grammatical rules

BT Generative grammar

GENERATIVE GRAMMAR

SN Series of explicit rules assigning structural descriptions to language or speech

BT Grammar

NT #Cyclic principle  
Generation  
Selection restriction

RT Formalisation  
Generation  
Rules  
Transformational generative grammar

Generative phonology

USE Phonology

Generative semantics

USE Semantics

GENERIC TERMS

UF Hyponyms

SN Words which denote a whole range of members of a given subclass

BT Nouns

Genetic classification

USE Genealogical classification

Genetic relationships

USE Family of languages

GENITIVE CASE

UF Possessive case

SN Case form in some inflected languages indicating possession or source

BT Case

RT Common case

GENRE

UF Type

SN Category of artistic endeavour having a particular form, technique or content

BT Literature

GENRE (Cont.)

NT Anecdotes  
Apocrypha  
Apologies  
Classics  
Coffee table books  
Comedy  
Cycle  
Dithyrambs  
Drama  
\*Escapist literature  
Folklore  
Graffiti  
Narration  
Nonfiction  
Poetry  
\*Romances  
Tall tales  
Tragedy  
\*Trivial literature

RT Form

GEOGRAPHICAL CLASSIFICATION

UF Areal classification

SN Classification of languages according to their geographical location

BT Categorisation

RT Areal linguistics

GEOGRAPHICAL DIALECTS

SN Regional dialects

BT Dialects

Geographical linguistics

USE Dialectology

GEORGIAN

SN Reigns of the four Georges (1714-1830) in England

GEORGIAN (Cont.)

BT Literary periods

GEORGICS

SN Poems about farming

BT Poems

RT Eclogues  
Idylls  
Pastorals

\*GERMAN LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Germany

GERMANIC LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

Germanic sound shift

USE First sound shift

\*GERMANY

NT \*East Germany  
\*West Germany

RT \*German language

Gerundial clauses

USE Absolute constructions

GERUNDIVES

SN Words having characteristics of both verbs and adjectives

BT Adjectives  
Verbs

GERUNDS

SN Verbal nouns

BT Verbs

RT Nouns  
Present participles  
Verbal nouns

GESTALT

UF Holism

SN Pattern that has a structure not accounted for by the sum of its parts

BT Aesthetics

NT Elements

RT Form  
Structure

GESTURES

SN Form of communication by movement of parts of the body

BT Kinesics

NT Kinemes

RT Speaking

GHOST FORMS

UF Ghost words  
Phantom words  
Vox nihili

SN Words originally coined in error by a scribe or lexicographer or by misinterpreting a foreign word

BT Word formation

Ghost words

USE Ghost forms

Gingivals

USE Alveolars

GLAGOLITIC ALPHABET

SN Forerunner of Cyrillic  
alphabet

BT Alphabets

RT Cyrillic alphabet

GLIDES

UF Semivowels  
Transitional sounds

SN Adventitious production  
of intermediate sounds  
when speech organs pass  
from the position for  
one speech sound to the  
position for another

BT Manner of articulation  
Speech sounds

RT Anticipation  
Haplology

GLOSS

SN Word used to circumscribe  
another word

BT Explication

GLOSSEMES

SN Basic units established  
in the linguistic ana-  
lysis of several  
schools

BT Linguistic analysis

GLOSSEMES (Cont.)

RT Noemes

GLOSSOLALIA

SN "Speaking in tongues"

Glossology

USE 1. Linguistics  
2. Semantics

Glottal catches

USE Glottal stops

GLOTTAL STOPS

UF Glottal catches

SN Closure of glottis fol-  
lowed by its sudden re-  
lease

BT Speech sounds

RT Glottalisation  
Laryngeals

Glottalic air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Glottalic closures

USE Closures

GLOTTALISATION

UF Constriction

SN Articulation of a glottal  
stop as a secondary fea-  
ture of a speech sound

BT Speech sounds

GLOTTALISATION (Cont.)

RT Glottal stops

Glottals

USE Laryngeals

GLOTTIS

UF Voice state  
Whisper state

SN Gap between the vocal  
cords and the larynx

BT Organs of speech

GLOTTOCHRONOLOGY

SN Lexicostatistical techni-  
ques to establish mutual  
family relationships be-  
tween languages

BT Comparison of languages

NT Dips  
Loss

RT Ancestor languages  
Mathematical linguistics

GLOTTOGONIC LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

NT Origin of speech

Glottology

USE Linguistics

Glottopolitics

USE Institutional linguistics

Gnomics

USE Maxims

\*GOETHE, JOHANN WOLFGANG VON

\*GOLD

SN Precious metal

RT \*Silver

GOTHIC ALPHABET

BT Alphabets

GOTHIC NOVELS

SN Literature characterised  
by gloomy settings, vio-  
lent or grotesque action,  
and a mood of decay, de-  
generation or decadence

BT Novels

RT Melodramas

GOVERNMENT

UF Rection

SN Determination of the mor-  
phological form of one  
word by another word

BT Syntax

RT Agreement

Gradations

USE Vowel gradations

Graded areas

USE Areas

## GRAFFITI

SN Words or phrases written on walls of buildings, pavements and public rest rooms

BT Genre

## GRAMMAR

UF General grammar  
Traditional grammar

SN Generalised statements of regularities and irregularities in language

BT Linguistics

NT Aberrants  
Antigrammatical constructions

Clitics  
Deletion  
Descriptive grammar  
Enclitics  
Formal grammar  
Function  
Generative grammar  
Grammatical analysis  
Grammatical units  
Morphology  
Negatives  
Parsing  
Parts of speech  
Pedagogical grammar  
Philosophical grammar  
Proclitics  
Rules  
Scientific grammar  
Sentence patterns  
Suppletives  
Syntax  
Universal grammar

RT Deep structure  
Linguistic analysis  
Phonology  
Semantics  
Transformational generative grammar

## GRAMMAR TRANSLATION METHOD

SN Messages are translated from or into the foreign language

BT Language teaching

RT Direct method

## GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS

BT Grammar  
Linguistic analysis

NT String analysis

Grammatical features

USE Taxemes

Grammatical gender

USE Gender

Grammatical meaning

USE Meaning

Grammatical subjects

USE Subjects

## GRAMMATICAL UNITS

SN Units of linguistic structure

BT Grammar

NT Clauses  
Cumuls  
Groups  
Morphemes  
Phrases  
Sentences  
Words

GRAMMATICAL UNITS (Cont.)

RT Rank  
Rank scales

Grammatical words

USE Function words

GRAMMATICALITY

UF Grammaticalness

SN Utterances in agreement  
with conventions of the  
standard language

BT Standard languages

RT Correctness  
\*Purism  
Rules

Grammaticalness

USE Grammaticality

Grammemes

USE Tagmemes

GRAPHEMES

SN Minimum distinctive units  
of a writing system

BT Writing systems

NT Allographs

RT Graphs  
Morphemes  
Phoneme grapheme corres-  
pondence  
Phonemes  
Signs

GRAPHS

SN In the analysis of text,  
any written signs which  
recur as units

BT Texts

RT Graphemes  
Semes

GRAVE ACCENTS

BT Diacritic marks

RT Acute accents

\*GRAZING

SN Pasturage for domestica-  
ted animals

RT \*Herdsman

GREEK ALPHABET

BT Alphabets

Groove fricatives

USE Sibilants

Groove spirants

USE Sibilants

Group inflected languages

USE Inflected languages

GROUPS

SN Words or phrases which  
function as constituents  
of a clause

BT Grammatical units



GROUPS (Cont.)

RT Clauses  
Words

Grundy, Mrs

USE Mrs Grundy

#GRUPPE 47

BT Literary movements

\*GRUWEZ, LUUK

Gutturals

USE 1. Pharyngeals  
2. Velars

Habitual aspect

USE Aspect

Hackneyed expressions

USE Cliches

HAIKU

UF #Hokku

SN Form of Japanese verse,  
composed of three lines  
of seventeen or nine-  
teen syllables

BT Poems

RT Tankas

HALF CLOSE VOWELS

SN Tongue in medium high po-  
sition

BT Vowels

HALF CLOSE VOWELS (Cont.)

RT Half open vowels

HALF OPEN VOWELS

SN Tongue in medium low po-  
sition

BT Vowels

RT Half close vowels

Half rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

HAMITOSEMITIC LINGUISTICS

UF Afroasiatic linguistics

BT Linguistics

HAPLOLOGY

SN Omission in speech of one  
or more similar sounds in  
succession

BT Manner of articulation

RT Elision  
Glides

Harangues

USE Tirades

HARD SIGN

SN Cyrillic character to in-  
dicate preceding charac-  
ter is non-palatised

BT Palatisation

RT Soft sign

## HARLEQUINS

- SN Comic characters
- BT Commedia dell arte

## HARMONICS

- UF Overtones
- SN Vibrations at a frequency which is a multiple of the fundamental frequency
- BT Frequency
- RT Resonance

## HARMONY

- SN Proportion of separate parts to each other and the whole
- BT Aesthetics
- RT Proportion

## Head rhyme

- USE Alliteration

## Head words

- USE Heads

## HEADS

- UF Centre  
Head words
- SN Words syntactically dominant in a group
- BT Syntax
- RT Modifiers

## HEARING

- BT Linguistic skills
- NT Audiology  
Threshold of hearing  
Threshold of pain
- RT Acoustics  
\*Deafness  
Listening  
Sounds
- Heavy stress
- USE Stress

## HELLENISM

- BT Literary periods
- Helper verbs
- USE Auxiliary verbs

## HEMISTICH

- SN Half line of verse or a line less than the usual length
- BT Verse
- RT Caesuras

## HEPTAMETERS

- SN Lines of verse consisting of seven feet
- BT Verse

## HEPTASTICH

- SN Stanza or poem consisting of seven lines
- BT Stanzas

HEPTASTICH (Cont.)

RT Chaucerian stanzas  
Hexastich  
Quatrains

\*HERDSMEN

SN Owners or keepers of  
herds

RT \*Flocks  
\*Grazing

\*HERMENEUTICS

SN Interpretation

RT \*Explanations  
Explication

HEROES

BT Characterisation

RT Antiheroes  
Foils  
Heroines  
\*Knights  
Villains

HEROIC COUPLETS

UF Riding rhyme

SN Two rhyming lines of  
verse in iambic pentameter

BT Couplets

RT Heroic stanzas  
Pentameters

HEROIC STANZAS

SN Four lines in iambic pentameter

BT Stanzas

HEROIC STANZAS (Cont.)

RT Heroic couplets  
Pentameters  
Quatrains

HEROINES

BT Characterisation

RT Heroes  
\*Ladies

HESITATION FORMS

SN Sequence of neutral  
sounds articulated in  
speech pauses

BT Invariable words

RT Expletives  
Independent elements

HETEROGRAPHS

SN Words identical in meaning  
and perhaps in sound,  
but different in spelling

BT Words

RT Equivocation  
Heteronyms  
Homographs  
Homonyms

HETERONYMS

SN Words identical in spelling,  
but different in  
sound and meaning

BT Words

RT Equivocation  
Heterographs  
Homographs  
Homonyms

## HEXAMETERS

SN Lines of verse consisting of six feet

BT Verse

RT Alexandrines

## HEXASTICH

SN Stanza or poem of six lines

BT Stanzas

RT Heptastich  
Quatrains

## HIATUS

SN Break between two adjacent monophthongs forming two successive syllables

BT Monophthongs

RT Elision

## HIERARCHY

SN Ordered arrangement into levels, strata or planes

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Rank scales

Hieratic script

USE Hieroglyphics

## HIEROGLYPHICS

UF Demotic script  
Hieratic script

BT Writing systems

High German sound shift

USE Second sound shift

\*HIGH SCHOOLS

SN Secondary schools

BT \*Public education

## HIGH VOWELS

SN Tongue in high position

BT Vowels

RT Low vowels

## HIRANAGA

SN Japanese syllabic writing system

BT Kana

## HISTORIC PRESENT TENSE

UF Historical present tense

BT Tense

RT Past tense  
Present tense

Historical grammar

USE Diachronic linguistics

Historical linguistics

USE Diachronic linguistics

## HISTORICAL NOVELS

UF Costume pieces

## HISTORICAL NOVELS (Cont.)

SN Imaginative reconstruction of historical personages and events

BT Novels

RT Historical plays  
History

Historical phonology

USE Diachronic linguistics

## HISTORICAL PLAYS

UF Costume pieces

BT Plays

RT Chronicle plays  
Historical novels  
History

Historical present tense

USE Historic present tense

Historical semantics

USE Diachronic linguistics

## HISTORY

BT Nonfiction

NT Anachronisms  
\*Colonial rule

RT Biographies  
Historical novels  
Historical plays

\*HOGARTH, WILLIAM. Marriage a la mode

## #HoKku

USE Haiku

Holism

USE Gestalt

## \*HOLLAND

RT \*Dutch language

## HOLOPHRASES

SN Words which express on their own the meaning of entire sentences

BT Words

## HOMILETICS

SN Art and practice of preaching

BT Rhetoric

RT Sermons

## HOMILIES

SN Moralising discourses

BT Rhetoric

RT Sermons

## HOMOGRAMS

SN Words which are homographs with different etymologies

BT Homographs

## HOMOGRAPHS

- SN Words identical in spelling but different in meaning
- BT Words
- NT Homograms
- RT Equivocation  
Heterographs  
Heteronyms  
Homonyms

## Homoionyms

- USE Near synonyms

## HOMONYMS

- UF Homophones
- SN Words identical in sound but different in meaning
- BT Words
- RT Equivocation  
Heterographs  
Heteronyms  
Homographs

## Homophones

- USE Homonyms

## #HOMORGANIC NASALS

- BT Nasals

## HONORIFIC FORM

- SN Indicating humbleness and inferiority of speaker
- BT Syntax
- RT Familiar form  
Polite form

## HUBRIS

- SN Arrogance
- BT Plots
- RT Catastrophe

## HUMANISM

- BT Literary movements  
Literary periods
- RT Renaissance

## HUMOUR

- BT Comedy
- NT Irony  
Whimsy
- RT Anecdotes  
Wit

## \*HUNGARIAN LANGUAGE

- BT Languages

## \*HUNZA DIALECT

- BT Dialects  
\*WaKhi language

## HYBRID WORDS

- UF Mongrel words
- SN Words with components from different languages
- BT Compound words
- RT Loan blends  
Loan words

## Hydronymy

- USE Onomastics

## HYPERBOLE

SN Obvious and deliberate  
exaggeration

BT Figures of speech

RT Exaggeration  
Irony  
Litotes

Hypercorrection

USE Overcorrection

Hyperform

USE Overcorrection

Hyperurbanism

USE Overcorrection

Hyphens

USE Punctuation

Hypocorisma

USE Baby talk

Hyponyms

USE Generic terms

Hypotactic clauses

USE Subordinate clauses

## HYPOTAXIS

SN Joining of sentences and  
clauses by conjunctions,  
indicating subordination

BT Clauses  
Sentences

## HYPOTAXIS (Cont.)

RT Parataxis

## HYPOTHESES

SN Propositions assumed as  
premises

BT Logic

NT \*Null hypothesis

RT Premises  
Propositions  
\*Research  
\*Theories

Hypothetical clauses

USE Conditional clauses

IA

USE Item and arrangement

Iambics

USE Iambus

## IAMBUS

UF Iambics  
Iambus

SN Poetic feet of two syl-  
lables, the first unac-  
cented, the second ac-  
cented

BT Feet

RT Alexandrines  
Blank verse

Iambus

USE Iambus

## IC analysis

USE Immediate constituent analysis

## Iconic signs

USE Signs

## ICONOCLASM

SN Act of destroying or weakening traditional institutions, ideas or ideals

BT Ideology

RT Existentialism

## ICONOGRAPHY

UF Object writing

SN Drawing of pictures or images on concrete objects; primitive method of writing

BT Writing systems

## Ictus

USE Accent (Stress)

## IDENTICAL RHYME

UF Perfect rhyme  
Rime riche

SN Rhyme created by the repetition of a word

BT Rhyme

RT Epiphora

## IDENTIFICATION

UF Reader identification

SN Ascribing to oneself characteristics and qualities of another person; intense feeling of oneness with another person

BT Aesthetics

RT Empathy

## IDEOGRAMS

UF Ideographs

SN Graphic signs used in a writing system to represent a stretch of speech

BT Writing systems

NT Logograms  
Pictograms

Ideographs

USE Ideograms

## IDEOLOGY

BT Literature

NT Iconoclasm  
Obscurantism  
Propaganda

## IDIOLECTS

SN Varieties of language used by one individual speaker

BT Dialects  
Usage

NT Key words

RT Idiophones  
\*Language variation



IDILECTS (Cont.)

RT Ontogeny  
Pronunciation  
Vocabulary

Idiomatic expressions

USE Idioms

Idiomatic translation

USE Translation

IDIOMS

UF Idiomatic expressions

SN Groups of words with special connotations, not usually equal to sum of meanings of individual words; can't usually be translated literally into another language without losing their meaning

BT Vocabulary

IDIOPHONES

SN Speech sounds characteristic to one idiolect

BT Speech sounds

RT Idiolects

IDYLLS

SN Compositions in prose or verse describing simple, charming or pastoral events

BT Poems

RT Georgics  
Pastorals

ILLITERACY

SN 1. Inability to read and write  
2. Manner of discourse noticeably different from standard languages

BT Manner of discourse  
Reading  
Writing

RT Literacy  
Standard languages

\*ILLUSTRATIONS

SN Pictures complementing text

BT \*Art

RT \*Drawings  
\*Paintings  
\*Posters

IMAGERY

SN Use of descriptive language

BT Figurative language

RT Archetypes  
Connotation  
Evocation  
Images

IMAGES

SN Mental impressions summoned up by a word, phrase or sentence

BT Aesthetics

NT Controlling images

RT Connotation  
Description  
Figurative language  
Imagery

## IMAGES (Cont.)

RT Imagism  
Interior monologues

## IMAGISM

SN Theory of early 20th century poets that poetry should use language of common speech with freedom of subject matter, new rhythms, and clear, precise, concentrated images

BT Literary movements

RT Images  
Impressionism

Imitation

USE Language acquisition

## IMMEDIATE CONSTITUENT ANALYSIS

UF IC analysis  
Immediate constituents

SN Method of analysing sentences or words by dividing them into their component parts

BT Linguistic analysis

NT Ultimate constituents

RT String analysis

Immediate constituents

USE Immediate constituent analysis

## IMMEDIATE SPEECH

SN Speech referring to a tangible or observable situation present at the time of speaking

BT Syntax

RT Displaced speech

## IMMIGRANT LANGUAGES

SN 1. Native languages spoken by minority immigrant populations  
2. Variety of host languages spoken by immigrants

BT Languages

RT Foreign languages  
Minority languages  
Native languages

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

SN Sentence or verb form which commands, requires or forbids

BT Mood

RT Commands

## IMPERFECT TENSE

SN Traditionally associated with a continuous or habitual action in the past

BT Tense

RT Past tense  
Perfect tense

Imperfect rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

## Imperfective aspect

USE Aspect

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

UF Monopersonal verbs

SN Verbs used only in the third person singular

BT Verbs

RT Personal verbs

## Implication

USE Connotation

## #IMPLICATURE

UF #Conversational implicature

SN The fact that in speech, more can be meant than what is actually said

BT Pragmatics

## IMPLOSION

SN Movement of air inwards upon release of a stop

BT Air stream mechanism

RT Plosion  
Stops

## Implosive stops

USE Stops

## IMPRESSIONISM

SN Literary practice stressing impressions of author or one of his characters

BT Literary movements

RT Expressionism  
Imagism  
Stream of consciousness  
Symbolism

## IMPRESSIONISTIC TRANSCRIPTIONS

SN Made with no knowledge or reference to the system of the particular language

BT Phonetic transcriptions

RT Systematic transcriptions

## IMPROPER COMPOUNDS

SN Compound words of which all parts are inflected

BT Compound words

RT Proper compounds

## IMPROVISATIONS

BT Acting

## IN MEDIAS RES

SN Beginning a narrative in the middle

BT Conventions  
Plots

RT Flashbacks

## Inactive voice

USE Passive voice

Inanimate gender

USE Gender

Incapsulating languages

USE Incorporating languages

Inceptive aspect

USE Aspect

Inchoative aspect

USE Aspect

#### INCIDENTS

SN Events

BT Plots

#### INCLUDED POSITIONS

SN When linguistic forms appear as part of a larger construction

BT Sentence modifiers

RT Absolute constructions  
Embedded clauses

Inclusive personal pronouns

USE Person

#### INCOHERENCE

SN Disconnected, rambling speech or writing

BT Logic  
Style

RT Coherence

Incomplete verbs

USE Defective verbs

Incontiguous assimilation

USE Assimilation

Incontiguous dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

#### INCORPORATING CONJUNCTIONS

BT Conjunctions

#### INCORPORATING LANGUAGES

UF Incapsulating languages  
Polysynthetic languages

BT Languages

RT Agglutinative languages  
Inflected languages

Indefinite articles

USE Articles

Indefinite declensions

USE Strong declensions

#### INDEFINITE DETERMINERS

SN Determiners in a noun phrase expressing generality

BT Determiners

RT Definite determiners  
Indefinite pronouns

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

SN 1. Don't refer to a definite person or thing  
2. Predeterminers

BT Pronouns

RT Indefinite determiners

## Independent clauses

USE Main clauses

## INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS

SN Words or phrases, usually interjections or exclamations, which have no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence

BT Invariable words

RT Auxiliaries  
Exclamatives  
Expletives  
Hesitation forms

## Independent sound change

USE Sound change

## INDEX

UF Affix index  
Agglutinative index  
Nexus index  
Synthetic index

SN 1. Non-linguistic items: handwriting, pronunciation, voice quality, gesture, etc., indicating class, attitude, etc. of speaker  
2. Ratio between particular elements in a language serving as a measure of a certain feature

## INDEX (Cont.)

BT Language  
Languages

## INDIC LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

## Indicative mood

USE Mood

## Indigenous languages

USE Native languages

## Indirect discourse

USE Indirect speech

## Indirect objects

USE Objects

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

UF Oblique questions  
Reported questions

SN Questions reported in indirect speech

BT Indirect speech  
Questions

RT Direct questions

## Indirect quotations

USE Indirect speech

## INDIRECT SPEECH

UF Indirect discourse  
Indirect quotations  
Reported speech

INDIRECT SPEECH (Cont.)

SN Paraphrasing of an utterance without quoting verbatim

BT Syntax

NT Indirect questions

RT Direct speech  
Subjunctive mood

\*INDIRECT THREATS

BT \*Threats

Individual variants

USE Free variants

INDOEUROPEAN LINGUISTICS

UF Indogermanic linguistics

BT Linguistics

Indogermanic linguistics

USE Indoeuropean linguistics

INDUCTION

SN Reasoning from the specific to the general

BT Logic

RT Deduction

\*INDUSTRY

SN Trade and manufacture

RT \*Trade

Infantile speech

USE Baby talk

INFERIOR COMPARISON

UF Downward comparison

SN Comparative form of adjective or adverb expressing lesser quantity or intensity of content

BT Adjectives  
Adverbs

RT Superior comparison

INFINITIVE PHRASES

SN Phrases consisting of an infinitive with or without complement

BT Phrases

RT Infinitives

Infinitive verb forms

USE Nonfinite verb forms

INFINITIVES

SN Forms of the verb not limited by person, number or tense

BT Verbs

NT First infinitive  
Passive infinitive  
Second infinitive  
Split infinitive

RT Finite verbs  
Infinitive phrases

## INFIXES

- SN Affixes inserted within a word
- BT Affixes
- RT Prefixes  
Suffixes

## INFLECTED LANGUAGES

- UF Amalgamating languages  
Flexional languages  
Fusing languages  
Fusional languages  
Group inflected languages
- SN Grammatical relationships shown by inflections rather than word order
- BT Languages
- NT Root inflected languages  
Stem inflected languages
- RT Incorporating languages  
Inflection  
Synthetic languages

## INFLECTION

- UF Flection  
Flexion  
Inflexion
- SN Process or result of adding affixes to a base of a word to determine or limit its grammatical significance
- BT Word formation
- RT Accidence  
Affixes  
Case  
Deflection  
Derivations  
Gender  
Inflected languages  
Inflectional suffixes

## INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

- UF Flexional endings  
Inflexional endings
- SN Inflectional endings added to a base or stem
- BT Suffixes
- RT Derivational affixes  
Inflection

## Inflexion

- USE Inflection

## Inflexional endings

- USE Inflectional suffixes

## INFORMATION CONTENT

- SN Ratio of actual to probable occurrence of an item in a particular linguistic environment
- BT Information theory

## INFORMATION THEORY

- UF Semantic information
  - NT Communication  
Cybernetics  
Feedback  
Information content
  - RT Computational linguistics  
Mathematical linguistics  
Semantics
- Ingressive air stream mechanism
- USE Air stream mechanism

## Ingressive stops

USE Stops

## INGRESSIVES

SN Produced with the air stream moving into the vocal tract

BT Speech sounds

RT Clicks  
Egressives

## INHALATION

UF Inspiration

SN Breathing in

BT Speech production

## Initial glides

USE Onglides

## Initial mutations

USE Mutations

## INITIAL STRESS

UF Recessive stress

SN Stress on the first syllable of a word

BT Stress

## INITIAL TEACHING ALPHABET (ITA)

UF ITA

SN Near-phonemic alphabet used to teach English-speaking children to read

BT Alphabets

## INITIATION

SN Process whereby breath stream is set in motion by the action of an initiator in the vocal tract

BT Air stream mechanism

RT Initiators  
Speech production

## INITIATORS

SN Any moving part in a cavity or chamber which can change the size of the cavity, causing movement of air

BT Organs of speech

RT Initiation  
Speech production

## Inner closures

USE Closures

## INNER FORM

UF Outer form

SN What languages have in common: grammatical and semantic structure is unique to each language

BT Language

RT Content  
Universals

## INNOVATION

SN Change in sound, form or meaning resulting in the creation of a new word

BT Word formation



INNOVATION (Cont.)

RT Change  
Neologisms

INORDINATED ADJECTIVES

SN Most important adjectives  
of several modifying the  
same noun

BT Adjectives

\*INSCRIPTIONS

SN Words inscribed, especi-  
ally on monuments, coins,  
stone, etc.

BT Epigraphy

RT Epitaphs

INSEPARABLES

SN Affixes which cannot be  
separated from their  
stems

BT Affixes

RT Discontinuity  
Separables  
Synthetic compounds

Inserted clauses

USE Constituent sentences

#INSERTION

BT Phonology

RT Deletion  
Epenthesis

Inspiration

USE Inhalation

INSTITUTIONAL LINGUISTICS

UF Glottopolitics

BT Linguistics

RT Language planning  
National languages  
Standard languages  
Standardisation

INSTRUMENTAL CASE

SN Case form in some in-  
flected languages denot-  
ing agent or origin of  
action

BT Case

RT Ablative case

Instrumental phonetics

USE Experimental phonetics

INSTRUMENTATIVE VERBS

SN Verbs which show the in-  
strument of the action  
in its meaning

BT Verbs

INTENSIFIERS

UF Intensives

SN Adverbials of degree  
which intensify the mean-  
ing of a word

BT Adverbials

RT Degree  
\*Premodifiers

## INTENSION

- SN Connotative and denotative meaning given to a word or phrase by implication or definition
- BT Meaning
- RT Extension

Intensional meaning

- USE Meaning

Intensity accent

- USE Expiratory accent

Intensive pronouns

- USE Reflexive pronouns

Intensives

- USE Intensifiers

## INTENTIONAL FALLACY

- SN So-called error of judging meaning and success of a literary work in terms of the author's expressed purpose in writing it
- BT Fallacy
- RT Aesthetic distance  
Affective fallacy

## INTERCONSONANTALS

- SN Occurring between consonants
- BT Consonants

## INTERDENTALS

- SN Speech sounds articulated between the teeth
- BT Speech sounds
- RT Dentals

## \*INTERDISCIPLINARITY

- SN Participation or cooperation of two or more disciplines
- BT Method
- RT \*Curriculum design

## INTERFERENCE

- SN Errors made by carrying over speech habits of native language or dialect into a second language or dialect
- BT Language learning
- RT Pronunciation  
Transfer  
Vocabulary

## INTERIOR MONOLOGUES

- SN Forms of writing representing the inner thoughts of a character
- BT Monologues  
Narration
- RT Images  
Psychological novels  
Soliloquies  
Stream of consciousness

## INTERJECTED CLAUSES

SN Clauses which are interpolated into a sentence but are not part of its structure

BT Clauses

Interjections

USE Exclamations

Interlanguage

USE Interlinguistics

## INTERLINGUA

BT Artificial languages

RT Esperanto  
Novial  
Volapuk

## INTERLINGUISTICS

UF Interlanguage

SN 1. #Language aiming to achieve the level of a target language  
2. Comparative study of different languages to find common elements

BT Comparison of languages

RT Artificial languages

Intermediate vowels

USE Neutral vowels

Internal changes

USE Vowel gradations

Internal hiatus

USE Transitions

Internal inflexions

USE Vowel gradations

Internal meaning

USE Meaning

Internal modifications

USE Vowel gradations

Internal open junctures

USE Transitions

## INTERNAL RECONSTRUCTION

SN Method of reconstructing older forms of a language by observation of its modern structural patterns

BT Reconstruction

RT Comparative method

## INTERNAL RHYME

UF Leonine verse

SN Correspondence in sound created by two or more words in the same line of verse

BT Rhyme

RT Alliteration  
End rhyme

Internal speech

USE Endophasia

INTERNATIONAL PHONETIC AL-  
PHABET

- UF IPA
- BT Phonetic transcriptions
- RT Alphabets

INTERNATIONAL WORDS

- SN Words known internation-  
ally in all major langua-  
ges - usually borrowed
- BT Words
- RT Loan words

INTERPRETING

- UF Consecutive interpreting  
Simultaneous interpreting
- SN Oral translation
- BT Translation
- RT Language barrier

Interrogation marks

- USE Punctuation

Interrogation points

- USE Punctuation

Interrogative adjectives

- USE Interrogative words

Interrogative adverbs

- USE Interrogative words

INTERROGATIVE MOOD

- SN Verb form or sentence type  
which is one way of ex-  
pressing a question
- BT Mood
- RT Interrogative sentences  
Interrogative words  
Questions

Interrogative pronouns

- USE Interrogative words

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

- SN Structures containing  
questions
- BT Sentences
- RT Interrogative mood  
Interrogative words  
Inverted word order

INTERROGATIVE WORDS

- UF Interrogative adjectives  
Interrogative adverbs  
Interrogative pronouns  
Question words
- SN Words used at the beginn-  
ing of a clause or sen-  
tence to mark it as in-  
terrogative
- BT Questions
- RT Interrogative mood  
Interrogative sentences

\*INTERTEXTUALITY

- SN The idea that a work is  
made up from scraps of  
earlier writing

## \*INTERVIEWS

- SN Questions and answers
- RT Questionnaires

## INTERVOCALICS

- SN Consonants occurring between two vowels
- BT Consonants
- RT Vowels

## INTIMATE SPEECH

- SN Very informal manner of discourse
- BT Manner of discourse
- NT Terms of endearment

## INTONATION

- SN Melodic pattern produced by the variation in pitch of the voice during speech
- BT Melodics
- RT Contour  
Intonation languages  
Intonation patterns  
Pitch  
Prosodic features  
Tone

Intonation contours

USE Intonation patterns

Intonation formants

USE Intonation morphemes

## INTONATION LANGUAGES

- SN Languages in which melodic pitch patterns form part of the structure of sentences rather than words
- BT Languages
- RT Intonation

## INTONATION MORPHEMES

- UF Intonation formants
- SN Intonation patterns which serve to distinguish different types of utterances
- BT Intonation patterns

## INTONATION PATTERNS

- UF Intonation contours
- SN Chronologically significant melodic patterns of pitch differences during speech
- BT Melodics
- NT Intonation morphemes  
Junctures
- RT Intonation  
Pitch

Intralinguistic features

USE Features

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS

- SN Verbs making sense on their own without an object
- BT Verbs

INTRANSITIVE VERBS (Cont.)

RT Transitive verbs

#INTRINSIC RULE ORDERING

BT #Rule ordering

Introductory adverbs

USE Conjunctive adverbs

Introflexions

USE Vowel gradations

INTRUSION

UF Intrusive R  
Linking R

SN Addition of a speech  
sound between syllables  
and words, usually for  
ease of pronunciation

BT Pronunciation

RT Epenthetics  
Paragogue  
Prothesis

Intrusive R

USE Intrusion

INVARIABLE WORDS

UF Invariants

SN Words never changing  
their form, whatever con-  
struction they occur in

BT Words

NT Exclamatives  
Expletives  
Hesitation forms

INVARIABLE WORDS (Cont.)

NT Independent elements  
Particles  
Prepositions

RT Variable words

Invariants

USE Invariable words

Inverse derivation

USE Back formation

INVERSE SPELLING

SN Written form of overcor-  
rection

RT Overcorrection

Inversion

USE Inverted word order

Inverted commas

USE Punctuation

INVERTED WORD ORDER

UF Inversion

SN Arrangement of words with-  
in a sentence that differs  
from the normal declara-  
tive pattern

BT Word order

RT Interrogative sentences

## IONIC FEET

SN Metrical feet with two long and two short syllables

BT Feet

## IPA

USE International phonetic alphabet

## IRONY

SN Literal meaning of word or statement is the opposite of that intended

BT Figures of speech  
Humour

NT Sarcasm

RT Caricatures  
Dramatic irony  
Hyperbole  
Satire  
Understatement

## IRREGULAR VERBS

UF Strong verbs

BT Verbs

RT Regular verbs  
Weak verbs

## IRREGULARITY

SN Phenomenon of a linguistic form deviating from the grammatical rule

BT Rules

RT Regularity

## Isochronism

USE Tempo

## Isolated areas

USE Areas

## Isolates

USE 1. Clause equivalents  
2. Segments

## ISOLATING LANGUAGES

UF Formless languages  
Radical languages  
Root isolating languages  
Stem isolating languages

SN Use invariable root words and distinctive word order

BT Languages

RT Analytic languages

## Isolative sound change

USE Sound change

## ISOMORPHISM

SN Similarities between two or more languages

BT Languages

RT Inner form

## Isosyllabism

USE Tempo

## ITA

USE Initial teaching alphabet (ITA)

ITALIAN SONNETS

- UF Petrarchan sonnets
- BT Sonnets
- RT Miltonic sonnets

ITEM AND ARRANGEMENT

- UF IA
- SN Excludes all considerations of time and describes language in terms of lists of items and the arrangements in which they occur
- BT Linguistic analysis
- RT Item and process

ITEM AND PROCESS

- UF Process
- SN Describes language as a dynamic system
- BT Linguistic analysis
- RT Item and arrangement

Iterative aspect

- USE Aspect

ITERATIVE COMPOUNDS

- UF Repetitive compounds
- SN Compound words made up of two identical halves
- BT Compound words

Iterative numerals

- USE Multiplicative numerals

JACOBAN

- SN Reign of King James I of England
- BT Literary periods
- RT Elizabethan

\*JAMAICAN LITERATURE

\*JAPAN

JARGON

- SN
  1. Unitelligible or meaningless writing or talk
  2. Vocabulary of a particular trade, profession or group
  3. Mixed speech for communication between persons speaking different languages
- BT Manner of discourse
- RT Cant

\*JAVA

\*JOHNSON, UWE. Jahrestage

Journals

- USE Diaries

JUNCTURES

- UF
  - Clause terminals
  - Doublebar junctures
  - Doublecross junctures
  - Fading junctures
  - Falling junctures
  - Rising junctures
  - Singlebar junctures
  - Sustained junctures
  - Terminal junctures



JUNCTURES (Cont.)

SN Significant intonation patterns marking the joining of one phrase or clause with another or with silence

BT Intonation patterns

RT Transitions

#JUNGES DEUTSCHLAND

BT Literary movements

JUXTAPOSED COMPOUNDS

SN Compounds made up of two elements placed next to each other but written as separate words

BT Compound words

JUXTAPOSING LANGUAGES

SN Grammatical relationships shown by the adding of short formal elements or classifiers to the base of words

BT Languages

Juxtapositional assimilation

USE Assimilation

Juxtapositional dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

KABUKI

SN Popular drama of Japan with elaborate costuming, stylized acting and rhythmic dialogue

KABUKI (Cont.)

BT Oriental theatre

RT Noh

\*KAFKA, FRANZ

KANA

SN Collective term for the two Japanese syllabic writing systems

BT Writing systems

NT Hiranaga  
Katakana

KATAKANA

SN Japanese syllabic writing system largely for transcribing foreign words

BT Kana

KEY WORDS

SN Terms or concepts representing ideals typical of a period or social group

BT Idiolects

Keys

USE Manner of discourse

\*KILLER INSTINCT

SN Alleged basic human reaction to threatening stimuli

## KINAESTHETIC FEEDBACK

SN A speaker's awareness of the movements of his articulatory organs

BT Feedback

## KINEMES

SN Minimum units of gesture, coined by analogy with phonemes

BT Gestures

## Kinemics

USE Kinesics

## KINESICS

UF Body language  
Body semantics  
#Extralinguistic features  
Kinemics  
Movements of expression

BT Language

NT Gestures

RT #Paralinguistic features  
#Sign languages

## KINETIC CONSONANTS

SN Consonants such as stops which cannot be prolonged without changing their quality

BT Consonants

NT Stops

\*KLEE, PAUL

## \*KNIGHTS

SN Men devoted to the service of ladies as attendants or champions in war or tournaments

BT Characterisation

RT Courtly love  
Heroes  
\*Ladies  
\*Lovers  
\*Romances

\*KOCH, CHRISTOPHER J.

## KOINE

UF Compromise languages

SN Spoken dialect becoming the common standard language for a politically unified region

BT Languages

RT Dialects  
Pidgin  
Standard languages

## \*KULTEPE

## Kunstlerromane

USE Bildungsromane

## LABIALISATION

UF Lip rounding  
Rounding

SN Articulation accompanied by lip movement, e.g. rounding

BT Speech sounds

RT Delabialisation

LABIALS

- SN Speech sounds involving the use of both lips
- BT Speech sounds
- NT Bilabials  
Labiodentals  
Labiovelars

LABIODENTALS

- SN Bringing the lower lip near or into contact with the upper teeth
- BT Labials

Labiolabials

- USE Bilabials

LABIOVELARS

- SN Velar speech sounds produced with rounded lips
- BT Labials  
Velars

Laboratory phonetics

- USE Experimental phonetics

LAD

- USE Language acquisition device

\*LADIES

- SN Women to whom knights are chivalrously devoted
- BT Characterisation
- RT Courtly love  
Heroines

\*LADIES (Cont.)

- RT \*Knights  
\*Lovers  
\*Romances

Lallation

- USE Language acquisition

LAMENTS

- BT Poems
- RT Dirges  
Elegies

LAMPOONS

- SN Satires in prose or verse directed against individuals or institutions
- BT Satire
- RT Burlesques

LANGUAGE

- SN Most fundamental means of human communication
- NT Categorisation  
Competence and performance  
Culture and language  
Ecology of language  
Index  
Kinesics  
Langue and parole  
Linguistic skills  
Linguistics  
Logic in language
- RT Communication  
\*Language variation  
Languages  
Origin of speech

## LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

- UF Babbling  
Imitation  
Lallation  
Loquacity  
Talking
- BT Languages
- NT Baby talk  
#Critical age
- RT Language acquisition de-  
vice  
Language learning  
Language teaching

## LANGUAGE ACQUISITION DEVICE

- UF LAD
- SN Exactly how the brain ac-  
quires language compe-  
tence is not known, but  
the term language acqui-  
sition device is applied  
to the unknown quantity
- BT Languages
- RT Language acquisition  
Language learning

## LANGUAGE BARRIERS

- SN Difficulties of communi-  
cation between speakers  
of different languages
- BT Languages
- RT Interpreting  
Language teaching  
Translation

## Language change

- USE Change

## Language contact

- USE Contact
- Language family
- USE Family of languages

## LANGUAGE LABORATORIES

- SN Electronic equipment and  
furniture to help in lan-  
guage teaching
- BT Language teaching
- RT Programmed instruction

## LANGUAGE LEARNING

- BT Languages
- NT Interference  
Transfer
- RT Language acquisition  
Language acquisition de-  
vice  
Language teaching  
Linguistic skills  
Programmed instruction

## LANGUAGE PLANNING

- UF \*Language policy  
Planned language change
- SN Collective term for com-  
plex of efforts to im-  
prove interdialect commu-  
nication
- BT Languages
- RT Institutional linguistics
- \*Language policy
- USE Language planning

Language skills

USE Linguistic skills

LANGUAGE TEACHING

BT Languages

NT Direct method  
Drill  
Error analysis  
Grammar translation method  
Language laboratories  
\*Multimedia instruction  
Programmed instruction  
Substitution  
Substitution frames

RT Foreign languages  
Language acquisition  
Language barriers  
Language learning  
Pedagogical linguistics  
Phonetics  
Testing

\*LANGUAGE VARIATION

SN Differences in systems of a language that result from historical, geographic, social or functional change

BT Sociolinguistics

NT Borrowing  
Creole  
Dialects  
Pidgin

RT Diachronic linguistics  
Idiolects  
Language  
Manner of discourse  
\*Purism  
Standard languages

LANGUAGES

BT Linguistics

LANGUAGES (Cont.)

NT Accents  
Affixing languages  
\*Afrikaans language  
Agglutinative languages  
Ambilingualism  
Analytic languages  
Ancestor languages  
\*Ancient Avestan language  
\*Ancient Greek language  
\*Ancient Hebrew language  
Areal group  
Artificial languages  
\*Assyrian language  
Balance  
Bilingualism  
Celtic language  
Change  
Classical languages  
Classificatory languages  
Cognate languages  
Creativity  
Creole  
Dead languages  
Dialectalisation  
Dialectalisation  
Dialects  
Diglossia  
Drift  
\*Dutch language  
\*Eblaite language  
English language  
Family of languages  
\*Flemish language  
Foreign languages  
\*French language  
Function  
Gaelic language  
\*German language  
\*Hungarian language  
Immigrant languages  
Incorporating languages  
Index  
Inflected languages  
Inner form  
Intonation languages  
Isolating languages  
Isomorphism  
Juxtaposing languages  
Koine  
Language acquisition  
Language acquisition device  
Language barriers

LANGUAGES (Cont.)

NT Language learning  
 Language planning  
 Language teaching  
 Lingua franca  
 Linguistic atlases  
 Living languages  
 \*Madi language  
 Metalanguage  
 \*Middle Egyptian language  
 Minority languages  
 Modern languages  
 Multilingualism  
 \*Nande language  
 National languages  
 Native languages  
 Natural languages  
 Norms  
 Oxytonic languages  
 Paroxytonic languages  
 Pidgin  
 \*Portuguese language  
 Prefixing languages  
 \*Proto Tano Congo language  
 \*Sesotho language  
 #Sign languages  
 Special languages  
 Speech communities  
 Standard languages  
 Standardisation  
 Suffixing languages  
 Synthetic languages  
 Texts  
 \*Thai language  
 Tone languages  
 Translation  
 Typology  
 \*Ugaritic language  
 Usage  
 Variants  
 Vocabulary  
 Vowel harmony  
 \*Wakhi language  
 \*Xhosa language

RT Language

LANGUE AND PAROLE

UF Parole

LANGUE AND PAROLE (Cont.)

SN Langue is system of language passed on from one generation to another, parole refers to all that which a speaker actually says or understands

BT Language

RT Codes  
 Messages  
 Speaking

LAPSES

SN Spontaneous creation of meaningless or unintended forms during speech, e.g. slips of the tongue

BT Words

RT Nonsense forms

Laryngealised voicing

USE Register

LARYNGEALS

UF Glottals

SN Produced in the larynx

BT Speech sounds

RT Glottal stops

LARYNX

SN Contains the vocal cords

BT Organs of speech

NT Vocal cords

Lateral areas

\*LAW (Cont.)

USE Areas

NT \*Legal rights

LATERAL PLOSION

RT \*Boule  
\*Politics

SN Release of a stop consonant in such a fashion as to allow air to escape around the sides of the tongue

LAX VOWELS

BT Plosion

SN Vowel sounds produced with little muscular tension

RT Laterals  
Nasal plosion

BT Vowels

RT Tense vowels

Lateral release

LAYERING

USE Release

SN Term used in tagmemics, equivalent to embedding

LATERALS

BT Tagmemics

UF Asymmetric consonants  
Bilateral consonants  
Monolateral consonants  
Unilateral consonants

RT Embedded clauses  
Embedding

SN Consonants produced whilst allowing air to escape around one or both sides of a closure formed by the tongue with the roof of the mouth

\*LEGAL RIGHTS

SN Rights of individuals under the law

BT Consonants  
Manner of articulation

BT \*Law

RT Lateral plosion

LEGENDS

Latin alphabet

SN Traditions or stories handed down from earlier times and popularly accepted as true

USE Roman alphabet

BT Narration

\*LAW

RT Fables  
Folklore  
Folktales  
\*Mythology  
Myths  
Sagas

SN Rule of conduct or action established by authority, society or custom

Length

USE Duration

LENIS

SN Consonant produced with weak muscular tension

BT Consonants

RT Fortis

Leonine verse

USE Internal rhyme

\*LEROUX , ETIENNE

\*LEROUX , ETIENNE . Onse Hymie

LETTER

SN Sign used in writing to represent speech sounds

BT Alphabetic writing

NT \*Capital letters

RT Diacritic marks  
Runes  
Signs

LETTERS (Epistles)

BT Biographies

RT Diaries

LEVELS

SN Planes which may be set up to divide languages into managable subsystems

BT Linguistic analysis

LEVELS (Cont.)

RT Structure

LEXEMES

SN Basic units of the vocabulary of a language

BT Vocabulary

RT Lexical items  
Morphemes  
Sememes

Lexical fields

USE Semantic fields

#Lexical insertion

USE Lexical selection

LEXICAL ITEMS

SN Units of vocabulary in a language

BT Vocabulary

RT Lexemes  
Lexicography

Lexical meaning

USE Meaning

LEXICAL SELECTION

UF #Lexical insertion

SN Compatibility of words within larger syntactical units

BT Meaning

RT Nonsense forms



Lexical tone

USE Tone

Lexical words

USE Content words

LEXICOGRAPHERS

SN Persons engaged in dictionary-making

BT Dictionaries

RT Lexicography

LEXICOGRAPHY

SN Branch of applied lexicology: making dictionaries

BT Lexicology

NT Terminology

RT Dictionaries  
Lexical items  
Lexicographers

LEXICOLOGY

SN Study and analysis of vocabulary items of a language, their meaning and evolution

BT Linguistics

NT Lexicography

RT Etymology

LEXICONS

SN #Reference works concerning phonological, syntactic and semantic qualities of all morphemes of a language as well as of all words not derived from morphemes in the ordinary way

BT Vocabulary

RT Dictionaries  
Morphemes

LEXOTACTICS

SN Study of the characteristic arrangement of lexemes in sequence

BT Tactics

LIAISON

SN Joining of one word to the next with close transitions

BT Pronunciation

RT Transitions

LIBELS

SN Written or printed words or pictures which defame or maliciously misrepresent

BT Literature

RT Slander

LIGHT VERSE

SN Verse designed to entertain, amuse or please

BT Poems

LIGHT VERSE (Cont.)

RT Doggerel  
Nonsense verse

LIMERICKS

SN Light verse; stanzas of five lines rhyming aabba

BT Poems

RT Clerihews

Line spectra

USE Spectra

Linear phonemes

USE Phonemes

LINEAR PROGRAMMES

SN Courses of programmed instruction where students are obliged to follow set sequences of exercises or frames

BT Programmed instruction

LINEAR SCRIPTS

SN Forms of writing using abstract signs or characters

BT Writing systems

NT Alphabets  
Diacritic marks

Lines of verse

USE Verse

LINGUA FRANCA

UF Trade languages

SN Language adopted by different speech communities as their common medium of communication

BT Languages

RT Contact  
Creole  
Pidgin

LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS

BT Analysis  
Linguistics

NT Componential analysis  
Content  
Contextual analysis  
Contrastive analysis  
Delicacy  
Distributional analysis  
Error analysis  
Expression  
Features  
Formalisation  
Functional analysis  
Glossemes  
Grammatical analysis  
Hierarchy  
Immediate constituent analysis  
Item and arrangement  
Item and process  
Levels  
Marked members  
Noemes  
Ontogeny  
Procedure  
Prosodic analysis  
Pseudoprocedures  
Segmental analysis  
Semantic analysis  
Sequence  
Stratificational grammar  
Systemic grammar  
Tagmemics

RT Grammar  
Method

LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS (Cont.)

RT Semantics

Linguistic anthropology

USE Anthropological linguistics

Linguistic areas

USE Areas

LINGUISTIC ATLASES

UF Dialect atlases

SN Maps and charts showing geographical distribution features of a language or dialect or both

BT Languages

RT Dialects

Linguistic borrowing

USE Borrowing

Linguistic change

USE Change

Linguistic context

USE Context

Linguistic form

USE Form

Linguistic geography

USE 1. Areal linguistics  
2. Dialectology

Linguistic groups

USE Family of languages

Linguistic minorities

USE Minority languages

Linguistic sciences

USE Linguistics

Linguistic semantics

USE Semantics

Linguistic signs

USE Signs

LINGUISTIC SKILLS

UF Language skills  
Skills  
Verbal skills

SN Ability of individual speaker to use his language well

BT Language

NT \*Comprehension  
Hearing  
Listening  
Reading  
Speaking  
Writing

RT Language learning

Linguisticians

USE Linguists

LINGUISTICS

UF Glossology

LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

UF Glottology  
Linguistic sciences

SN Field of study the subject of which is language

BT Language

NT African linguistics  
American linguistics  
Amerindian linguistics  
Anthropological linguistics  
Applied linguistics  
Areal linguistics  
Asterisk forms  
Biolinguistics  
British linguistics  
Cartesian linguistics  
Celtic linguistics  
Clinical linguistics  
Comparative linguistics  
Computational linguistics  
Descriptive linguistics  
Developmental linguistics  
Diachronic linguistics  
Dialectology  
Discourse  
Ethnographic linguistics  
Etymology  
\*Functional grammar  
Fusion  
General linguistics  
Germanic linguistics  
Glottogonic linguistics  
Grammar  
Hamitosemitic linguistics  
Indic linguistics  
Indoeuropean linguistics  
Institutional linguistics  
Languages  
Lexicology  
Linguistic analysis  
Linguists  
Macrolinguistics  
Malayopolynesian linguistics  
Mathematical linguistics  
Mechanistic linguistics  
Medieval linguistics  
Mentalistic linguistics  
Oceanic linguistic  
Ontogeny

LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

NT Parametric linguistics  
Phonetics  
Prague School  
Prescriptive linguistics  
Psycholinguistics  
Psychological linguistics  
Realisation  
Renaissance linguistics  
Romance linguistics  
Scholasticism  
Semiotics  
Sinotibetan linguistics  
Slavonic linguistics  
Sociolinguistics  
Statistical linguistics  
Structural linguistics  
Synchronic linguistics  
Tactics  
Transformational generative grammar

LINGUISTS

UF Linguisticians

BT Linguistics

Linguostylistics

USE Stylistics

LINKING MORPHEMES

UF Connecting consonants  
Connecting vowels

SN Elements placed between two parts of compounds to join them together

BT Compound words

Linking R

USE Intrusion

Linking verbs

USE Copulas

Lip rounding

USE Labialisation

Lip spreading

USE Delabialisation

## LIQUIDS

SN Collective term for apico-alveolar continuants

BT Speech sounds

RT Apicoalveolars

## LISPING

BT Pronunciation

## LISTENING

SN Ability to identify and comprehend speech

BT Linguistic skills

RT Hearing  
Reading  
Speaking

## LITERACY

SN Ability to read and write

BT Reading  
Writing

RT Articulacy  
Illiteracy  
Preliteracy

Literal translation

USE Translation

Literary ballads

USE Ballads

## LITERARY MOVEMENTS

BT Literature

NT #Agitprop  
Classicism  
#Dadaism  
Determinism  
Empiricism  
Existentialism  
Expressionism  
Futurism  
#Gruppe 47  
Humanism  
Imagism  
Impressionism  
#Junges Deutschland  
#Mannerism  
Materialism  
Naturalism  
Neoclassicism  
Pragmatism  
Preraphaelites  
Primitivism  
Rationalism  
Realism  
Romanticism  
Sturm und Drang  
Surrealism  
Symbolism  
Vorticism

## LITERARY PERIODS

BT Literature

NT Baroque  
Biedermeier  
Caroline  
Cavalier  
Edwardian  
Elizabethan  
Enlightenment  
Georgian

LITERARY PERIODS (Cont.)

NT Hellenism  
Humanism  
Jacobean  
Middle ages  
Renaissance  
Restoration  
Tudor  
Victorian

LITERARY PRIZES

BT Literature

NT #Buchner prize  
#Nobel prize  
Pulitzer prize

\*LITERARY STUDIES

SN Scientific study of literary trends and movements as well as the development of various branches of genres of literature

BT Literature

LITERARY THEORIES

UF Theory of literature

BT Literature

RT #Criticism  
#Method

Literary translation

USE Translation

LITERATURE

UF Oral literature

LITERATURE (Cont.)

SN Any collection of texts of a writer, especially those subjected to aesthetic evaluation

NT Aesthetics  
Black literature  
Book  
Censorship  
#Comparative literature studies  
Criticism  
Genre  
Ideology  
Libel  
Literary movements  
Literary periods  
Literary prizes  
\*Literary studies  
Literary theories  
Rhetoric  
Slander  
Stylistics  
Word games

RT \*Art  
\*Music  
\*Mythology

LITOTES

UF Meiosis

SN Form of understatement in which something is affirmed by stating the opposite of its opposite

BT Figures of speech

RT Hyperbole  
Understatement

LITTLE THEATRE

SN Experimental, noncommercial drama

BT Drama

RT Theatre

LITURGICAL PLAYS

- SN Plays performed as part of church services
- BT Plays
- RT Morality plays  
Mystery plays

LIVING LANGUAGES

- BT Languages
- RT Artificial languages  
Dead languages

LOAN BLENDS

- SN Formation of compound words or phrases by combining native forms with borrowed elements
- BT Compound words
- RT Hybrid words

LOAN SHIFTS

- SN Borrowing of words from other languages and simultaneous modification of their phonological shapes
- BT Borrowing
- RT Loan words

LOAN WORDS

- UF Alien words  
Alienisms  
Borrowed elements  
Foreignisms  
Peregrinisms
- SN Words introduced into languages directly from foreign languages

LOAN WORDS (Cont.)

- BT Borrowing Words
- RT Acculturation  
Hybrid words  
International words  
Loan shifts  
Native words  
Phonemic loans

Loans

- USE Borrowing

LOCAL COLOUR

- SN Writing, developing and promoting mannerisms, dress, speech and customs of a particular region
- BT Style
- RT Dialects

Local dialects

- USE Dialects

Local friction

- USE Friction

Locale

- USE Setting

LOCATIVE CASE

- SN Indicates location at which an action takes place
- BT Case
- RT Prepositional case

LOGIC		LOGOGRAMS (Cont.)
SN	Art, science or technique of reasoning	RT Syllabograms
BT	Philosophy	Logographs
NT	Analogy Cause and effect Coherence Coincidences Deduction Hypotheses Incoherence Induction Paradoxes Premises Propositions Syllogisms	USE Logograms  Logopaedics  USE Speech therapy  Logopedics  USE Speech therapy
RT	*Contradiction	Long duration  USE Duration
LOGIC IN LANGUAGE		
SN	Techniques of formal logic should be used to explain rather than regulate patterns of language usage	Long vowels  USE Duration
BT	Language	LOOK AND SAY
RT	Epistemology Philosophical grammar	SN Method of teaching reading  BT Reading
Logical subjects		Loquacity
USE	Subjects	USE Language acquisition
LOGOGRAMS		LOSS
UF	Logographs Word signs	SN Discarding of phonological, grammatical or lexical items in the history of a language
SN	Graphic signs in logographic systems to represent words	BT Glottochronology
BT	Ideograms	RT Vocabulary
RT	Aphabets Signs	



Loudness

USE Volume

\*LOVERS

BT Characterisation

RT Courtly love  
\*Knights  
\*Ladies

LOW VOWELS

SN Vowel sounds pronounced  
with the tongue low in  
the mouth

BT Vowels

RT High vowels

LULLABIES

SN Songs used to lull  
children to sleep

BT Poems

RT Nursery rhymes  
Songs

LYRICS

SN 1. Poems having the form  
and musical qualities of  
songs  
2. Words of songs

BT Poems

MACHINE TRANSLATION

UF Automatic translation  
Mechanical translation

SN Computer translating

BT Translation

MACROLINGUISTICS

SN Concerned with all types  
of human communication

BT Linguistics

NT Microlinguistics  
Paralinguistic features

RT Communication

MACRONS

BT Diacritic marks

\*MADI LANGUAGE

BT Languages

MADRIGALS

SN Lyric poems, short and  
suitable for being set to  
music

BT Poems

RT Canzones

MAIN CLAUSES

UF Independent clauses  
Principal clauses

SN Have full meaning when  
standing alone

BT Clauses

RT Matrix sentences  
Simple sentences  
Subordinate clauses

Main verbs

USE Full verbs

Major class features

USE Distinctive features

MALAPROPISMS

UF Catachresis

SN Inappropriate use of words because they sound similar to the appropriate words

BT Style

MALAYOPOLYNESIAN LINGUISTICS

UF Austronesian linguistics

BT Linguistics

RT Oceanic linguistics

Manifestation

USE Realisation

\*MANN, THOMAS. Tod in Venedig

MANNER OF ARTICULATION

UF Mode of articulation

SN Way in which air stream is constricted or released in vocal tract, used as a way of classifying speech sounds

BT Articulation

NT Affricates  
Flaps  
Fricatives  
Friction  
Glides  
Haplology  
Laterals  
Nasals  
Trills

MANNER OF ARTICULATION (Cont.)

NT Vowels

RT Speech sounds

Manner of articulation features

USE Distinctive features

MANNER OF DISCOURSE

UF Colloquial speech  
Cultivated speech  
Keys  
Nonstandard speech  
Substandard speech  
Vulgar speech

SN Variety of language used in a particular situation

BT Speaking

NT Argumentation  
Cant  
Casual speech  
Colloquialisms  
Common language  
Consultative speech  
Description  
Exposition  
Formal speech  
Illiteracy  
Intimate speech  
Jargon  
Oratorical speech  
Slang

RT \*Language variation

#MANNERISM

SN Use of a characteristic manner in literature and art

BT Literary movements

Marchen

USE Fairy tales

Marginal areas

USE Areas

Marginal elements

USE Syllables

Marked infinitive

USE Second infinitive

MARKED MEMBERS

UF Unmarked members

SN Those members of binary pairs carrying distinctive features to distinguish them from the other members

BT Linguistic analysis

NT Markers

#MARKEDNESS

BT Phonology

MARKERS

UF Semantic markers

SN Special features of linguistic units indicating their class or functions

BT Marked members

\*MASANOBU, KITAO. Edo umare uwaki no kabayaki

MASCULINE ENDINGS

UF Masculine rhyme

SN Lines of verse in which the final syllable is stressed and rhymes

BT Rhyme

RT Feminine rhyme

Masculine gender

USE Gender

Masculine rhyme

USE Masculine endings

MASQUES

SN Forms of entertainment with dancing, pantomime, songs and dialogue

BT Plays

MASS MEDIA

SN Forms of communication reaching large numbers of people

BT Communication

NT \*Television news

RT Propaganda

MASS NOUNS

UF Noncount nouns  
Quantifiable nouns  
Unbounded nouns  
Uncountable words

## MASS NOUNS (Cont.)

- SN Nouns which don't usually form plurals, or if plurals exist, they have different meanings
- BT Nouns
- RT Plurals  
Unit nouns

## MATERIALISM

- SN Insists all phenomena of whatever kind are traceable to material (physical) agencies
- BT Literary movements
- RT Naturalism

## MATHEMATICAL LINGUISTICS

- UF Algebraic linguistics  
Quantitative linguistics  
Stylostatistics
- BT Linguistics
- NT Models
- RT Comparative linguistics  
Computational linguistics  
Frequency  
Glottochronology  
Information theory  
Statistical linguistics

## MATRIX SENTENCES

- SN Sentences in which constituent sentences are embedded
- BT Sentences
- RT Constituent sentences  
Main clauses

## MATRONYMS

- UF Metronyms
- SN Names given to persons based on their mothers' names
- BT Names
- RT Patronyms  
Teknonyms

## MAXIMS

- UF Gnomics
- SN Expressions of general and practical truth
- BT Folklore
- RT Adages  
Aphorisms  
Axioms  
Mottoes  
Proverbs

## MEANING

- UF Connotative meaning  
Contextual meaning  
Denotative meaning  
Extended meaning  
Extensional meaning  
External meaning  
Functional meaning  
Grammatical meaning  
Intensional meaning  
Internal meaning  
Lexical meaning  
Narrowed meaning  
Referential meaning  
Semantic meaning  
Situational meaning  
Structural meaning  
Widened meaning
- SN Sense a word or group of words conveys
- BT Semantics

MEANING (Cont.)

- NT Bias words
- Cognitive meaning
- Connotation
- Denotation
- Emotive meaning
- Equivalents
- Equivocation
- Evocation
- Intension
- Lexical selection
- Monosemy
- Nonsense forms
- Pejoratives
- Polysemy
- Referent
- Semantic changes
- Semantic pairs
- Semantic value
- Sense
- Specialised meaning
  
- RT Philosophical semantics
- Semantic analysis
- Semantic structure

Meaninglessness

- USE Nonsense forms

\*MEASUREMENTS

- SN Numerical description
  
- RT Norms
- Testing

Measures

- USE Feet

Mechanical translation

- USE Machine translation

MECHANISTIC LINGUISTICS

- UF Antimentalism

MECHANISTIC LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

- BT Linguistics
  
- RT Mentalistic linguistics

MEDIEVAL LINGUISTICS

- UF Modistae
- Speculative grammars
  
- BT Linguistics
  
- RT Renaissance linguistics
- Scholasticism

Mediopalatals

- USE Palatals

Mediovelars

- USE Velars

Medium vowels

- USE Neutral vowels

Meiosis

- USE Litotes

Melioration

- USE Amelioration

Meliorative suffixes

- USE Ameliorative suffixes

MELODICS

- SN System and study of intonation patterns
  
- BT Intonation
- Speaking

MELODICS (Cont.)

NT Intonation patterns  
Tone

MELODRAMAS

SN Intensify sentiment,  
exaggerate emotion and  
relate sensational and  
thrilling actions

BT Fiction  
Plays

RT Cliff hangers  
Gothic novels  
Western stories

Memoirs

USE Biographies

\*MENTAL DISORDERS

UF \*Mental illness

SN Emotional or organic men-  
tal impairments

\*Mental illness

USE \*Mental disorders

Mentalism

USE Mentalistic linguistics

MENTALISTIC LINGUISTICS

UF Mentalism

BT Linguistics

RT Mechanistic linguistics

MERGER

UF Convergence

SN Sound change resulting in  
the contrast between two  
phonemes being neutralised

BT Sound change

\*MESCH, EDO

MESOSTICH

SN Composition in which cer-  
tain middle letters in  
successive lines form a  
word when put together

BT Word games

RT Acrostics  
Telestich

MESSAGES

SN 1. Information in ordered  
signs or signals conveyed  
in a communication system  
from sources through chan-  
nels to receivers  
2. \*Oral or written commu-  
nication sent or transmit-  
ted by one person to an-  
other

BT Communication

RT Langue and parole  
Noise  
Texts

METALANGUAGE

UF Second order language

SN Language or set of sym-  
bols used to describe an-  
other language

BT Languages

## METAPHONES

SN Free variants of phonemes

BT Phonology

RT Free variants  
Phonemes

## Metaphony

USE Vowel mutations

## METAPHORS

SN Words or phrases applied to persons, ideas or objects to which they are not literally applicable

BT Figures of speech

NT Mixed metaphors

RT Analogy  
Personification  
Similes

## METAPHRASING

SN Converting an utterance from one language into another without altering the meaning

BT Translation

RT Paraphrasing

## METAPHYSICAL POETRY

SN Highly intellectual and philosophical poems

BT Poems

## METATHESIS

UF Anastrophe

## METATHESIS (Cont.)

SN Change in order, in words in a sentence or speech sounds in words, deviating from normal which may sometimes lead to permanent change in a language

BT Change

## METHOD

SN Way of approaching, observing, analysing and explaining a particular phenomenon

NT \*Interdisciplinarity

RT #Criticism  
Linguistic analysis  
#Literary theories  
Procedures

## METHOD ACTING

UF Stanislavski method

SN Actor identifies as closely as possible with the character represented and renders that role in an individualised, relatively quiet and natural manner

BT Acting

## METONYMY

SN Name of one object or idea is used for another to which it is related or of which it is a part

BT Figures of speech

RT Synecdoche

METRE

SN Poetic measure referring to the pattern of stressed and unstressed syllables in a line, or verse, of a poem. The number of feet in a line of poetry determines its metre

BT Prosody

NT Accent (Stress)  
Arsis  
Caesuras  
Elision  
Feet

RT Cadence  
Rhythm  
Scansion  
Verse

Metrics

USE Prosody

Metronyms

USE Matronyms

MICROLINGUISTICS

SN Direct analysis of linguistic material

BT Macrolinguistics

Mid vowels

USE Neutral vowels

MIDDLE AGES

SN From the end of the Roman empire to the beginnings of the Renaissance

BT Literary periods

MIDDLE AGES (Cont.)

NT Chivalry  
Courtly love

RT Renaissance  
\*Romances  
\*Watchmen

\*MIDDLE EGYPTIAN LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Ancient Egypt

MIDDLE ENGLISH

SN English language as spoken and written after the Norman conquest and preceding the English Renaissance

BT English language

Middle language

USE Diglossia

Middle voice

USE Voice

Middle vowels

USE Neutral vowels

\*MIDDLEBROW NOVELS

SN Works of entertainment rather than of great literary value

BT Novels

MILES GLORIOSUS

SN Braggart warrior



MILES GLORIOSUS (Cont.)

BT Stock characters

Milieu

USE Setting

MILTONIC SONNETS

SN Same rhyme scheme for the octave as the Italian sonnets, but don't pause after the octave and don't follow a fixed rhyme scheme in the sestet

BT Sonnets

RT Italian sonnets

MIME

SN Mimicking or imitating others

BT Drama

RT Mimicry  
Pantomime

MIMETIC WORDS

SN Words coined to imitate the sounds of other words

BT Words

RT Coinage  
Onomatopoeia

MIMICRY

SN Imitation of the voice-quality features of another person

BT Acting

MIMICRY (Cont.)

RT Mime

\*MINIMAL DISTINCTIONS

SN Smallest possible contrasts in phonemic structure of a language

BT Contrast

RT Minimal pairs

MINIMAL PAIRS

UF Contrastive pairs

SN Formed by two items contrasting only in a single unit

BT Contrast

RT \*Minimal distinctions

Minimal stress

USE Stress

MINNESINGERS

SN Medieval German lyric poets

BT Poets

RT Minstrels  
Troubadours

\*MINOR PROPHETS

BT \*Old Testament

NT \*Zephaniah

RT \*Prophecies

## MINORITY LANGUAGES

- UF Linguistic minorities
- SN Speech communities using different languages from the majority of people living there
- BT Languages
- RT Immigrant languages

## MINSTRELS

- SN Professional entertainers of the Middle ages, usually attached to one great household
- BT Poets
- RT Minnesingers

## Miracle plays

- USE Mystery plays

## MISE EN SCENE

- SN Stage setting of a play
- BT Theatre
- RT Setting

## Mixed languages

- USE 1. Creole  
2. Pidgin

## MIXED METAPHORS

- SN Using in the same sentence two or more metaphors that are incongruous or illogical
- BT Metaphors

## MNEMONICS

- SN Art of improving or developing the memory

## MOCK HEROICS

- SN Style of satire treating ordinary characters and events very ceremoniously and loftily
- BT Satire

## MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

- SN Auxiliary verbs used to express moods such as optative, obligative, etc.
- BT Auxiliary verbs
- RT Mood

## Modality

- USE Mood

## Mode

- USE Mood

## Mode of articulation

- USE Manner of articulation

## MODELS

- SN Concrete pictures or abstract formulae used to describe or explain relationships
- BT Mathematical linguistics

## MODERN LANGUAGES

- BT Languages

MODERN LANGUAGES (Cont.)

RT Classical languages

MODIFIERS

SN In syntax, adjuncts limiting or qualifying head words in noun or verb phrases

BT Noun phrases  
Verb phrases

NT Adjuncts  
Adnominals  
Dangling modifiers  
Sentence modifiers

RT Heads  
Qualifiers

Modistae

USE Medieval linguistics

MODULATION

SN Collective term for prosodic features such as stress, intonation, etc.

BT Prosodic features

Momentary aspect

USE Aspect

Monemes

USE Morphemes

Mongrel words

USE Hybrid words

Monolateral consonants

USE Laterals

\*MONOLINGUAL DICTIONARIES

BT Dictionaries

RT Bilingualism

MONOLOGUES

UF Multilogues  
Polylogues

SN Speeches by one person

BT Dramatic conventions  
Rhetoric

NT #Dramatic monologues  
Interior monologues

RT Dialogue  
Soliloquies

MONOMETERS

UF Monopody

SN One-foot lines of verse

BT Verse

Monopersonal verbs

USE Impersonal verbs

MONOPHTHONGISATION

SN Process of change from a diphthong to a monophthong

BT Vowels

RT Diphthongisation  
Diphthongs  
Monophthongs

## MONOPHTHONGS

- UF Pure vowels  
Simple vowels
- SN Single vowel sounds with  
no change in quality from  
beginning to end
- BT Vowels
- NT Hiatus
- RT Diphthongisation  
Diphthongs  
Monophthongisation

## Monopody

- USE Monometers

## MONOSEMY

- SN When a word or phrase has  
only one semantic meaning
- BT Meaning
- RT Polysemy

## MONOSYLLABLES

- SN Words of one syllable
- BT Syllables  
Words

## MOOD

- UF Common mood  
Declarative mood  
Fact mood  
Indicative mood  
Modality  
Mode  
Obligative mood  
Optative mood  
Third person imperative  
mood
- BT Verbs

## MOOD (Cont.)

- NT Imperative mood  
Interrogative mood  
Subjective mood
- RT Aspect  
Description  
Modal auxiliary verbs  
Tense

## MORALITY PLAYS

- SN Allegories in dramatic  
form current from the  
14th to the 16th century
- BT Plays
- RT Allegory  
Liturgical plays  
Mystery plays

## MORAS

- SN Smallest units for mea-  
suring quantity or length  
in a prosodic system,  
usually shorter than syl-  
lables
- BT Prosody
- RT Syllables

## Morphemic alternants

- USE Allomorphs

## Morpheme words

- USE Free morphemes

## MORPHEMES

- UF Monemes
- SN Minimum distinctive units  
of meaning

MORPHEMES (Cont.)

- BT Grammatical units
- NT Bound morphemes  
 Canonic forms  
 Free morphemes  
 Morphs  
 \*Readjustment rules
- RT Allomorphs  
 Graphemes  
 Lexemes  
 #Lexicons  
 Morphemics  
 Morphophonemes  
 Morphophonemic variations  
 Morphotactics  
 Words

Morphemically conditioned alternations

USE Morphophonemic variations

MORPHEMICS

- SN Technique for analysing a language into morphemes
- BT Morphology
- RT Morphemes  
 Morphological analysis

MORPHOLOGICAL ANALYSIS

- SN Observation and description of the grammatical elements in a language by studying their form and function, phonological variants, distribution and mutual relationships
- BT Morphology
- RT Morphemics

MORPHOLOGY

- SN Concerned with the study and analysis of structure, forms, classes and meanings of words
- BT Grammar
- NT Morphemics  
 Morphological analysis

Morphonemes

USE Morphophonemes

MORPHOPHONEMES

- UF Morphonemes
- SN Phonological units consisting of sets of phonemes occurring in the allomorphs of particular morphemes
- BT Phonology
- RT Morphemes  
 Morphophonemic variations  
 Phonemes

MORPHOPHONEMIC VARIATIONS

- UF Morphemically conditioned alternations
- SN Changes in the phonemic form of phonemes
- BT Phonemes
- RT Morphemes  
 Morphophonemes

Morphophonemics

USE Morphophonology

## MORPHOPHONOLOGY

- UF Morphophonemics  
Phonomorphology
- SN Study of phonological variations in allomorphs which accompany their grouping into words
- BT Phonology
- NT Allomorphs

## MORPHOTACTICS

- SN System and study of the characteristics arrangement of morphemes in sequence
- BT Tactics
- RT Morphemes

## MORPHS

- SN Phonological or orthographical representations of morphemes
- BT Morphemes
- NT Replacive morphs
- RT Allomorphs  
Semes

## Mother tongue

- USE Native languages

## #Motherese

- USE Baby talk

## \*MOTION

## MOTIVATION

- SN Reasons and explanations for action through presentation of convincing and impelling causes for that action
- BT Plots
- RT Characterisation

## Motor phonemics

- USE Articulatory phonetics

## MOTTOES

- UF Bywords
- SN Especially appropriate words or sayings attached to an activity, institution or undertaking
- BT Folklore
- RT Adages  
Aphorisms  
Axioms  
Maxims  
Proverbs  
Slogans

## Movements of expression

- USE Kinesics

## \*MPHAHLELE, ES'KIA. Chirundu

## MRS GRUNDY

- UF Grundy, Mrs
- SN Conventional, narrow-minded person critical of any breach of propriety
- BT Conventions

MRS GRUNDY (Cont.)

RT Euphemisms  
Obscenity

\*MULTALTULI. Ideen

Multidimensional phonology

USE Prosodic analysis

MULTILINGUALISM

USE Plurilingualism

SN Use of two or more lan-  
guages by a speaker or  
speech community

BT Languages

RT Bilingualism

Multilogues

USE Monologues

\*MULTIMEDIA INSTRUCTION

SN Integration of more than  
one medium in a presenta-  
tion or module of in-  
struction

BT Language teaching

RT Programmed instruction

Multiple meanings

USE Polysemy

Multiple sentences

USE Compound sentences

MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS

UF Iterative numerals

SN Numerals indicating num-  
ber of times actions  
take place

BT Numerals

Multisyllables

USE Polysyllables

Murmur vowels

USE Neutral vowels

\*MUSIC

RT \*Art  
Literature

MUSICAL COMEDIES

SN Plays with music

BT Plays

\*MUSLIMS

RT \*Christianity

MUTATIONS

UF Initial mutations

SN Modifications of sounds  
in words under the influ-  
ence of sounds in neigh-  
bouring words

BT Pronunciation

NT Vowel mutations

RT Similitude  
Vowel gradations

## MUTES

SN Written symbols which don't represent speech sounds in particular words

BT Speech sounds

Mutual exclusiveness

USE Complementary distribution

## MYSTERY PLAYS

UF Miracle plays  
Passion plays

SN Dramatic form, popular in the Middle ages, dealing with biblical stories

BT Plays

RT Liturgical plays  
Morality plays

## MYSTERY STORIES

SN Any stories of adventure involving a criminal act that is not immediately explained

BT Novels

RT Adventure stories  
Detective stories  
Science fiction  
Western stories

## \*MYTHOLOGY

RT Epics  
Fables  
Folklore  
Legends  
Literature  
Myths  
Symbolism

## MYTHS

SN Legendary or traditional stories dealing with events that have no natural explanation

BT Narration

NT Archetypes

RT Folktales  
Legends  
\*Mythology  
Oral transmission  
Sagas

## \*NAGID IBN MUSLIM

## NAMES

BT Nouns  
Onomastics

NT Eponyms  
Matronyms  
Patronyms  
\*Place names  
Pseudonyms  
Teknonyms  
Toponymy

## \*NANDE LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Proto Tano Congo language

## NARRATION

UF Narratives

SN Forms of discourse for the purpose of relating an event or series of events

BT Literature

NT Bible  
Fables



NARRATION (Cont.)

- NT Fairy tales
- Fiction
- Folktales
- Interior monologues
- Legends
- Myths
- Oral transmission
- Parables
- Prose
- Sagas
- Stories

Narratives

- USE Narration

Narrow diphthongs

- USE Diphthongs

NARROW TRANSCRIPTIONS

- SN Represent continuums of speech as accurately as possible on paper
- BT Phonetic transcriptions
- RT Broad transcriptions

Narrow vowels

- USE Close vowels

Narrowed meaning

- USE Meaning

Narrowing of meaning

- USE Reduction

Nasal cavity

- USE Cavity

Nasal consonants

- USE Nasals

NASAL PHARYNX

- SN Part of the pharynx forming part of the nasal cavity
- BT Pharynx
- RT Velum

NASAL PLOSION

- SN Release of a stop consonant in such a way as to allow air to escape the nose
- BT Plosion
- RT Lateral plosion  
Stops

Nasal release

- USE Release

NASAL TWANG

- SN Regional nasalisation of vowels usually oral in standard pronunciation
- BT Dialects

Nasal vowels

- USE Nasals

NASALISATION

- SN Timbre of a speech sound given by allowing air to escape into the nasal cavity by lowering the velum

## NASALISATION (Cont.)

BT Speech sounds

RT Denasalisation  
Nasals  
Tildes

Nasalised vowels

USE Nasals

## NASALS

UF Nasal consonants  
Nasal vowels  
Nasalised vowels

SN Velum lowered so that air  
can escape through the  
nasal cavity which acts  
as resonator

BT Manner of articulation  
Speech sounds

NT #Homorganic nasals

RT Alveolars  
Bilabials  
Nasalisation  
Velars

## NATIONAL LANGUAGES

UF Official languages

BT Languages

RT Dialects  
Institutional linguistics  
Standard languages

## NATIVE LANGUAGES

UF First languages  
Indigenous languages  
Mother tongue  
Primary languages

BT Languages

## NATIVE LANGUAGES (Cont.)

RT Foreign languages  
Immigrant languages

## NATIVE WORDS

SN Developed from the original  
sources of particular  
languages

BT Words

RT Loan words

## #NATURAL CLASSES

SN Two or more segments con-  
stitute a natural class if  
fewer features are requi-  
red to specify the class  
than to specify any one  
member of it

BT Phonology

Natural gender

USE Gender

## NATURAL LANGUAGES

BT Languages

RT Artificial languages

## NATURALISM

SN In literature, an attempt  
to achieve fidelity to  
nature by rejecting idea-  
lised portrayals of life

BT Literary movements

RT Determinism  
Materialism  
Realism  
Slice of life

Near rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

#### NEAR SYNONYMS

UF Homoionyms  
Pseudosynonyms

SN Words similar in meaning  
but not synonyms

BT Synonyms

#### NEGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

SN Conjunctions implying ne-  
gatives

BT Conjunctions  
Negatives

#### NEGATIVE PARTICLES

SN Used to turn declarative  
into negative sentences

BT Negatives  
Particles

#### NEGATIVES

SN Grammatical forms usually  
implying negation

BT Grammar

NT Double negatives  
Negative conjunctions  
Negative particles

#### \*NEGOTIATION

SN Conferring with the ob-  
ject of reaching an  
agreement, possibly by  
compromise

#### NEOCLASSICISM

SN Style of writing of the  
17th and 18th centuries  
which rigidly adheres to  
canons of form derived  
from classical antiquity

BT Literary movements

RT Rationalism

Neofirthian linguistics

USE Systemic grammar

#### NEOLOGISMS

SN Newly coined words or  
phrases which have not yet  
received general accep-  
tance

BT Word formation

RT Acronyms  
Coinage  
Innovation  
\*Purism

#### \*NERVOUS SYSTEM

RT \*Brain

Neutral gender

USE Gender

#### NEUTRAL VOWELS

UF Abnormal vowels  
Central vowels  
Intermediate vowels  
Medium vowels  
Mid vowels  
Middle vowels  
Murmur vowels  
Schwas  
Shwas

NEUTRAL VOWELS (Cont.)

- SN Vowel sounds, usually un-stressed, pronounced with tongue in neutral position
- BT Vowels

NEW CRITICISM

- SN Form of criticism relying on close analysis of language, imagery, and emotional or intellectual meanings of a literary work
- BT Criticism
- NT Aesthetic distance  
Objective correlative  
Ontology  
Tension

\*NEW ZEALAND LITERATURE

- RT \*Australian literature

Nexus index

- USE Index

NIGORI MARKS

- SN Diacritic marks used in Japanese Kana syllabic writing to indicate the syllable begins with a voiced consonant
- BT Diacritic marks

No

- USE Noh

NOA WORDS

- SN Euphemistic words replacing taboo words
- BT Taboos
- RT Euphemisms

#NOBEL PRIZE

- BT Literary prizes

NODES

- SN In a tree-diagram, represent the point where branches "divide"
- BT Tree diagrams

NOEMES

- SN Meaning of glossemes
- BT Linguistic analysis
- RT Glossemes

NOH

- UF No
- SN Classic drama of Japan
- BT Oriental theatre
- RT Kabuki

NOISE

- SN Any undesirable interference in the transmission of information which is caused by the communication channel
- BT Communication
- RT Messages

## NOMINAL CLAUSES

- UF Noun clauses
- SN Clauses rank-shifted to function as nominal groups
- BT Clauses

## Nominal definitions

- USE Definitions

## Nominal groups

- USE Noun phrases

## Nominal phrases

- USE Noun phrases

## Nominal sequences

- USE Noun phrases

## NOMINALISATION

- SN
  1. Process or result of forming a noun from some other part of speech
  2. #Action or event in the deep structure is transformed into noun or adjective in the surface structure
- BT Nouns
- RT Nominals

## NOMINALS

- UF Noun equivalents  
Substantives
- SN Function as nouns, but don't have all the formal characteristics of nouns

## NOMINALS (Cont.)

- BT Parts of speech
- RT Nominalisation  
Nouns
- Nominative absolutes
- USE Absolute constructions

## NOMINATIVE CASE

- SN Noun in question usually functions as the subject
- BT Case
- RT Direct case  
Oblique case  
Subjective case

## Noms de plume

- USE Pseudonyms

## NONCE FORMATIONS

- UF Ephemeral words  
Nonce words
- SN Linguistic forms deliberately or accidentally made up for one particular purpose
- BT Word formation
- RT Coinage
- Nonce words
- USE Nonce formations

## Noncontiguous assimilation

- USE Assimilation

Noncontrastive variants

USE Free variants

Noncount nouns

USE Mass nouns

Nondefinite articles

USE Articles

NONDISTINCTIVE FEATURES

SN Phonetic features of utterances which are not significant phonemically

BT Contrast

RT Distinctive features

NONFICTION

SN Presents ideas and opinions based upon facts and reality

BT Genre

NT Biographies  
History

RT Drama  
Fiction  
Poetry

NONFINITE VERB FORMS

UF Infinite verb forms

SN Forms of verbs not limited by person, number or time

BT Verbs

Nonfunctional variations

USE Free variations

NONRESTRICTIVE STRUCTURES

SN Structures within sentences which give additional information about some elements in the sentences but aren't essential to the general meaning of the sentences

BT Sentences

RT Restrictive structures

NONSENSE FORMS

UF Deviants  
Meaninglessness

SN In keeping with phonological and grammatical conventions of the language, but semantically meaningless

BT Meaning

RT Lapses  
Lexical selection

NONSENSE VERSE

UF Amphigory

SN Form of light verse, entertaining because of its rhythmic appeal and absurd or farfetched ideas

BT Poems

RT Doggerel  
Light verse  
Nursery rhymes

Nonstandard speech

USE Manner of discourse

NONSYLLABICS

SN Speech sounds which don't carry the peaks of sonority of syllables

BT Speech sounds

Normative linguistics

USE Prescriptive linguistics

NORMS

SN Recognised standards of written or spoken language

BT Languages

RT \*Measurements  
\*Values

\*NORTHWESTERN CAPE PROVINCE

BT \*Cape Province

NOTATION

SN Process or result of representing speech by graphic symbols

BT #Phonology  
Writing systems

NT #Alpha notation  
Alphabetic writing  
Analphabetic notation  
#Brace notation  
#Bracket notation  
#Parenthesis notation

RT Alphabets  
Transcription

Notional grammar

USE Philosophical grammar

Notional words

USE Content words

NOUN ADJUNCTS

SN Nouns modifying following nouns

BT Nouns

Noun clauses

USE Nominal clauses

Noun clusters

USE Noun Phrases

Noun equivalents

USE Nominals

NOUN PHRASE INDICATORS

SN Determiners capable of preceding articles in a noun phrase

BT Noun phrases

NOUN PHRASES

UF Nominal groups  
Nominal phrases  
Nominal sequences  
Noun clusters

SN Words or groups of words with nouns or pronouns at the head and functioning like nouns

BT Nouns

NOUN PHRASES (Cont.)

NT Determiners  
 Modifiers  
 Noun phrase initiators

NOUNS

SN Words denoting or naming  
 persons, things or concepts

BT Parts of speech

NT Abstract nouns  
 Accidence  
 Action nouns  
 Animates  
 Appellative names  
 Case  
 Collective nouns  
 Common nouns  
 Compound nouns  
 Concrete nouns  
 Declensions  
 Epicenes  
 Gender  
 Gender nouns  
 Generic terms  
 Mass nouns  
 Names  
 Nominalisation  
 Noun adjuncts  
 Number  
 Proper nouns  
 Unit nouns  
 Verbal nouns

RT Gerunds  
 Nominals  
 Pronouns

Novelettes

USE Novels

Novellas

USE Novels

NOVELS

UF Novelettes  
 Novellas

SN Lengthy fictitious prose  
 narratives portraying characters  
 in events and settings

BT Fiction

NT Adventure stories  
 Best sellers  
 Bildungsromane  
 Cliff hangers  
 Cloak and daggers  
 Detective stories  
 Fantasies  
 Gothic novels  
 Historical novels  
 \*Middlebrow novels  
 Mystery stories  
 Picaresque novels  
 Problem novels  
 Psychological novels  
 Science fiction  
 Sociological novels  
 Utopian fiction  
 Western stories

RT Plays  
 Prose  
 Short stories  
 Stories

NOVIAL

BT Artificial languages

RT Esperanto  
 Interlingua  
 Volapuk

#Nucleus

USE #Sonoric peak



\*NULL HYPOTHESIS

SN Hypothesis under test, tested for statistical significance of results

BT Hypotheses  
Statistics

NUMBER

SN Grammatical category distinguishing between singular, dual, plural etc.

BT Nouns

NT Duals  
Paucals  
Plurals  
Singulars

RT Accidence  
Case  
Declensions  
Gender  
Numerals  
Tense

NUMERALS

SN Words denoting numbers or quantities

BT Words

NT Cardinal numbers  
Multiplicative numerals  
Ordinal numbers  
Partitive numerals  
Quantifiers

RT Number

\*NUMISMATICS

NT \*Coins

Nursery language

USE Baby talk

NURSERY RHYMES

SN Simple poems or songs for infants and young children

BT Poems

RT Lullabies  
Nonsense verse

OBITUARIES

SN Death notices of persons

BT Prose

RT Epitaphs

Object writing

USE Iconography

OBJECTIVE CASE

SN Term used to refer to oblique case forms

BT Case

RT Oblique case  
Subjective case

OBJECTIVE CORRELATIVE

SN Chain of events, or situations, which makes objective a particular (subjective) emotion

BT New criticism

RT Aesthetic distance  
Objectivity

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS

SN Forms of pronouns governed by verbs or prepositions

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS (Cont.)

BT Pronouns

OBJECTIVITY

SN 1. Dealing with outward things  
2. Reality as it is, or seems to be

BT Aesthetics

RT Aesthetic distance  
Objective correlative  
Subjectivity

OBJECTS

UF Direct objects  
Indirect objects

SN Words or groups of words forming the "complements" of certain verbs

BT Sentence parts

NT Cognate objects

RT Subjects

Obligative mood

USE Mood

OBLIQUE CASE

SN Any case form in inflected languages other than the nominative case

BT Case

RT Direct case  
Nominative case  
Objective case

Oblique questions

USE Indirect questions

OBSCENITY

SN Indecency; offensive to modesty or delicacy

BT Censorship

RT Bowdlerisation  
Mrs Grundy  
Pornography  
Taboos

OBSCURANTISM

SN 1. Deliberate evasion, uncertainty or obscurity of clarity and meaning  
2. Opposition to the increase and spread of learning

BT Ideology

RT Theatre of the absurd

Obsolete diction

USE Archaisms

OBSTRUENTS

SN Category of consonants including stops, fricatives and affricates

BT Consonants

NT Affricates  
Fricatives  
Stops

RT Resonants

Obviate

USE Person

OCCASIONAL VERSE

SN Poetry or doggerel written for a special occasion, usually to commemorate a special event

BT Poems

RT Doggerel

Occlusives

USE Stops

OCCULT

SN Supernatural affairs and agencies

OCEANIC LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT Malayopolynesian linguistics

OCTAMETERS

SN Verse lines of poetry consisting of eight feet

BT Verse

Octastich

USE Octaves

OCTAVES

UF Octastich

SN Stanzas of eight lines, especially the first eight lines of the sonnet

BT Stanzas

RT Ottava rima

OCTAVES (Cont.)

RT Sestets  
Sonnets

ODES

SN Lyric poems with a dignified theme phrased in a formal elevated style

BT Poems

OESOPHAGAL SPEECH

SN Speech sounds produced with air from the oesophagus

BT Speech production

Off rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

OFFGLIDES

UF Final glides

SN Movements of speech organs after speech sound production, back to neutral position or to prepare for next sound

BT Organs of speech

RT Onglides

Official languages

USE National languages

OLD ENGLISH

SN English language as spoken and written ca. AD 450 to about 1150 BC

OLD ENGLISH (Cont.)

BT English language

RT Anglo Saxon

\*OLD TESTAMENT

BT Bible

NT \*Ezekiel  
\*Minor prophets

One act plays

USE One actors

ONE ACTERS

UF One act plays

SN Plays consisting of one act

BT Plays

RT Short stories

ONGLIDES

UF Initial glides

SN Movement of speech organs from position for a sound just produced or from neutral position, immediately prior to speech sound production

BT Organs of speech

RT Offglides

ONOMASTICS

UF Hydronymy  
Onomatology

SN Study of the origin and meaning of names

●ONOMASTICS (Cont.)

BT Etymology

NT Anomia  
Anthroponymy  
Names  
Toponymy

RT Proper nouns

Onomatology

USE Onomastics

ONOMATOPOEIA

UF Sound echoism

SN Formation and use of words that suggest by their sounds the object or idea being named

BT Figures of speech

RT Alliteration  
Assonance  
Mimetic words.

ONSET

SN Initial part of a syllable

BT Syllables

ONTOGENY

SN Study of one person's speech habits throughout his whole lifetime

BT Linguistics

RT Developmental linguistics  
Idiolects  
Phylogeny

## ONTOLOGY

SN Study and science of being, of existence

BT New criticism

Open approximants

USE Frictionless continuants

Open class words

USE Content words

Open junctures

USE Transitions

## OPEN SYLLABLES

SN #End in a vowel

BT Syllables

Open transitions

USE Transitions

## OPEN VOWELS

SN Produced with the tongue in a relatively low position in the mouth

BT Vowels

RT Close vowels

## OPPOSITION

SN Relationship of elements of a system by means of which the elements can be distinguished from each other

BT Contrast

## OPPOSITION (Cont.)

RT Distinctive features

Optative mood

USE Mood

Optional variants

USE Free variants

Oracy

USE Articulacy

Oral air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Oral literature

USE Literature

## ORAL TRANSMISSION

SN Spreading or passing on of material by word of mouth

BT Narration

RT Ballads  
Epics  
Folktales  
Myths  
Proverbs  
Songs

## ORATIONAL SPEECH

UF Frozen speech

SN Ceremonial type of language used on very formal occasions

BT Manner of discourse

ORATIONS

- SN Formal speeches delivered on special occasions
- BT Rhetoric
- RT Eulogies

ORDER

- SN Succession or sequence
- RT Organisation

ORDINAL NUMBERS

- SN Numerals which answer the question "In what order?"
- BT Numerals
- RT Cardinal numbers

Ordinary language

- USE Common language

ORGANISATION

- SN Forming co-ordinates and interdependent parts into a whole
- RT Order

ORGANS OF SPEECH

- UF Speech organs  
Vocal tract
- SN Parts of the human body concerned with the articulation of speech sounds
- BT Speaking
- NT Air stream mechanism  
Alveolar ridge

ORGANS OF SPEECH (Cont.)

- NT Anticipation  
Cavity  
Dyslalia  
Epiglottis  
Glottis  
Initiators  
Larynx  
Offglides  
Onglides  
Pharynx  
Tongue  
Uvula  
Velum

- RT Articulation

ORIENTAL THEATRE

- SN Drama as it has originated and developed in the East
- BT Drama
- NT Kabuki  
Noh
- RT Theatre

Origin of language

- USE Origin of speech

ORIGIN OF SPEECH

- UF Origin of language
- SN Question of where and how human beings first developed language
- BT Speaking
- RT Language

ORIGINALITY

SN In literature, applies to the ability to think and express oneself in an independent way

BT Style

Orthoepy

USE Pronunciation

Orthography

USE Spelling

Ostensive definitions

USE Definitions

\*OSTRACISM

SN Banishment for ten or five years by voting system in which name of person to be banished was written on potsherd

BT \*Political systems

RT \*Ancient Greece

OTTAVA RIMA

SN Stanza of eight iambic pentameter lines rhyming abababcc

BT Stanzas

RT Octaves

Outer closures

USE Closures

Outer form

USE Inner form

OVERCORRECTION

UF Hypercorrection  
Hyperform  
Hyperurbanism

SN Mispronunciation of words or use of unaccepted grammatical constructions due to conscious efforts to avoid regional or sub-standard forms of speech

BT Standard languages

RT Inverse spelling

Overtones

USE 1. Connotations  
2. Harmonics

OXYMORONS

SN Two contradictory words or phrases are combined to produce a rhetorical effect by means of concise paradoxes

BT Figures of speech

RT Antithesis  
Paradoxes

OXYTONES

SN Words with the stress on the final syllable

BT Stress

RT Oxytonic languages  
Paroxytones  
Proparoxytones  
Terminal stress

OXYTONIC LANGUAGES

SN Languages in which most words have fixed stress on the final syllables

BT Languages

RT Oxytones  
Paroxytonic languages  
Stress

PACE

SN Rate of movement; tempo

BT Plots

RT Actions

PAEONS

SN Feet consisting of one stressed and three unstressed syllables in any order of appearance

BT Feet

\*PAGARCHS

SN District officials

BT \*Political systems

\*PAINTINGS

BT \*Art

RT \*Drawings  
\*Illustrations  
\*Rock paintings

PALAEOGRAPHY

SN Study of ancient cursive writing on soft surfaces

BT Writing

PALAEOGRAPHY (Cont.)

NT Palimpsests  
Parchment

RT Archaeography  
Epigraphy

PALATALS

UF Mediopalatals  
Postpalatals  
Prepalatals

SN Consonants articulated with the tongue touching or approaching the hard palate

BT Consonants

NT Dorsopalatals  
Palatoalveolars

RT Coronals  
Palatisation

PALATISATION

UF Softening

SN Raising of the tongue towards the hard palate, normally as a secondary feature of articulation

BT Speech sounds

NT Hard sign  
Soft sign

RT Depalatisation  
Palatals  
Tildes



PALATOALVEOLARS

SN Consonants articulated with the front part of the tongue touching or approaching the junction of the alveolar ridge and the hard palate

BT Alveolars  
Palatals

PALIMPSESTS

SN Parchment or other writing materials from which the text has been erased or removed to make room for new writing

BT Palaeography

RT Archaeography  
Parchment

PALINDROMES

SN Words, sentences or verses reading the same backward as forward

BT Word games

RT Acronyms  
Anagrams

Panegyrics

USE Eulogies

PANGRAMS

SN Exercises (clauses, sentences, compositions) containing all the letters of the alphabet

BT Word games

PANTOMIME

SN Play or entertainment in which performers express ideas or actions by movements only

BT Plays

RT Commedia dell arte  
Mime

\*PAPYRUS BEROLINENSIS 2966

PARABLES

UF Apologues

SN Stories designed to convey some religious principle, moral lesson or general truth

BT Narration

RT Allegory  
Axioms  
Fables

PARADIGMS

SN 1. Example patterns  
2. Lists of all the various inflected forms of declinable words

PARADOXES

SN Statements apparently selfcontradictory and absurd, but really containing possible truths

BT Figures of speech  
Logic

RT Oxymorons

## PARAGOGUE

- SN Addition of a sound or sounds to the end of a word for the sake of euphony or easier pronunciation
- BT Pronunciation
- RT Epenthetics  
Intrusion  
Prothesis

## PARAGRAPHS

- SN Units of spoken or written discourse intermediate between the sentence and the whole text
- BT Texts
- NT Sentences

## Paralanguage

- USE Paralinguistic features

## PARALINGUISTIC FEATURES

- UF Paralanguage
- SN Formal patterns of speech which characterise an individual speaker of a language
- BT Macrolinguistics
- NT Voice qualifiers
- RT #Kinesics

## PARAMETRIC LINGUISTICS

- SN Method of analysing linguistic entities into physical variables such as voice, pitch, tongue and lip movements, etc.

## PARAMETRIC LINGUISTICS (Cont.)

- BT Linguistics

## PARAPHRASING

- SN Process or result of rewording utterances from one level or variety of language into another without altering the meanings
- BT Translation
- RT Metaphrasing

## #PARARHYME

- BT Rhyme

Parasitic sounds

- USE Epenthetics

## PARATAXIS

- SN Joining together of sentences or clauses by juxtaposition, with or without the use of conjunctions
- BT Clauses  
Sentences
- RT Hypotaxis

## PARCHMENT

- SN Skin of sheep or goats prepared for use as material on which to write
- BT Palaeography
- RT Palimpsests

## Parent languages

USE Ancestor languages

## Parentheses

USE Punctuation

## Parenthesis

USE Embedded clauses

## #PARENTHESIS NOTATION

BT Notation

## Parenthetical clauses

USE 1. Constituent sentences  
2. Embedded clauses

## PARODY

SN Satirical or humorous imitation of a person, event or serious work of literature

BT Satire

RT Burlesques  
Caricatures

## Parole

USE Langue and parole

## Paronomasia

USE Puns

## PARONYMS

SN Words derived from the same base as other words, or words having the same form as cognate words in another language

BT Etymology

RT Cognate words

## PAROXYTONES

SN Words with the stress on the last syllable but one

BT Stress

RT Oxytones  
Paroxytonic languages  
Proparoxytones

## PAROXYTONIC LANGUAGES

SN Languages in which most words have a fixed stress on the last syllable but one

BT Languages

RT Oxytonic languages  
Paroxytones  
Stress

## PARRHESIA

SN Boldness of speech, freedom of expression

BT Style

RT Euphemisms

PARSING

SN Description of sentences and words by giving names to the grammatical categories of various elements

BT Grammar

Partial assimilation

USE Assimilation

PARTICIPIAL PHRASES

SN Meaningful groups of words containing participles

BT Participles  
Phrases

RT Dangling modifiers

PARTICIPLES

SN Non-finite forms of verbs

BT Parts of speech  
Verbs

NT Participial phrases  
Present participles

PARTICLES

SN Invariable parts of speech with grammatical rather than lexical meanings

BT Invariable words  
Parts of speech

NT Negative particles  
Postpositions

RT Function words  
Prepositions

PARTITIVE NUMERALS

SN Numerals denoting fractions

BT Numerals

PARTS OF SPEECH

UF #Syntactic lexical categories

SN Grammatical word classes

BT Grammar

NT Adjectives  
Adverbs  
Articles  
Conjunctions  
Nominals  
Nouns  
Participles  
Particles  
Prepositions  
Pronouns  
Transmutation  
Verbs

PASSION

SN Powerful, compelling feeling or emotion

BT Emotions

Passion plays

USE Mystery plays

Passive cavity

USE Cavity

PASSIVE INFINITIVE

SN Infinitive form of the verb

BT Infinitives

PASSIVE INFINITIVE (Cont.)

RT Verbs

PASSIVE VOICE

UF Inactive voice

BT Voice

RT Active voice

Past perfect tense

USE Pluperfect tense

PAST TENSE

UF Preterite tense  
Simple past tense

BT Tense

RT \*Aorist  
Historic present tense  
Imperfect tense  
Perfect tense  
Pluperfect tense

PASTORALS

UF Bucolics

SN Deal with life of shepherds or with simple rural existence

BT Poems

RT Eclogues  
Georgics  
Idylls

PATHETIC FALLACY

SN Crediting inanimate objects with the emotions and traits of human beings

PATHETIC FALLACY (Cont.)

BT Fallacy

RT Anthropomorphism  
Empathy  
Personification

PATHOS

SN Power in literature and other art to call forth feelings of pity, compassion and sadness

BT Emotions

Patois

USE Dialects

PATRONYMS

SN Names given to persons based on their fathers' first names

BT Names

RT Eponyms  
Matronyms  
Teknonyms

PATTERN DRILL

UF Structure drill  
Substitution drill

SN Application of substitution frame technique to language teaching to practice a particular linguistic structure

BT Drill

RT Substitution frames

PAUCALS

SN Categories of number denoting "a few"

BT Number

#Peak of prominence

USE Syllabic peak

#Peak of sonority

USE Syllabic peak

PEDAGOGICAL GRAMMAR

SN Grammatical description of a language designed as an aid to teaching that language to native or foreign learners

BT Grammar

PEDAGOGICAL LINGUISTICS

BT Applied linguistics

RT Language teaching

PEDANTRY

SN Display of learning; rigid adherence to book knowledge at the expense of common sense

BT Style

\*PEER GROUPS

RT \*Children  
\*Social groups

Pejoration

USE Deterioration

PEJORATIVES

SN Words or morphemic elements with unfavourable connotations

BT Meaning

RT Amelioration

Pen names

USE Pseudonyms

PENTAMETERS

SN Verse lines of five metrical feet

BT Verse

RT Blank verse  
Chaucerian stanzas  
Heroic couplets  
Heroic stanzas  
Sonnets

Pentastich

USE Quintains

\*PERCEPTION

SN Process of becoming aware of objects, qualities or relations via the sense organs

RT Cognitive meaning  
\*Comprehension  
\*Speech recognition

Peregrinisms

USE Loan words

Perfect aspect

USE Aspect

Perfect rhyme

USE Identical rhyme

#### PERFECT TENSE

UF First perfect tense  
Present perfect tense  
Simple perfect tense

BT Tense

RT Future perfect tense  
Imperfect tense  
Past tense  
Pluperfect tense

Perfective aspect

USE Aspect

Performance

USE Competence and performance

Periods

USE Punctuation

Peripheral areas

USE Areas

#### PERIPHERAL VOWELS

SN Produced with the highest part of the tongue farthest removed from the centre of the mouth in any direction

BT Vowels

RT Cardinal vowels

Permansive aspect

USE Aspect

#### \*PERSEPOLIS

BT \*Ancient Greece

#### PERSON

UF Exclusive personal pronouns  
First person  
Inclusive personal pronouns  
Obviate  
Proximate  
Second person  
Third person

SN Deictic category relating participants one to another in a linguistic situation

BT Pronouns

RT Deixis

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

SN Pronouns referring to categories of persons

BT Pronouns

RT Emphatic pronouns

#### PERSONAL VERBS

SN Verbs used in all three persons

BT Verbs

RT Impersonal verbs

#### PERSONIFICATION

UF Prosopopoeia

PERSONIFICATION (Cont.)

SN Figure of speech in which abstractions, animals, ideas and inanimate objects are endowed with human form, character, traits or sensibilities

BT Figures of speech

RT Anthropomorphisms  
Metaphors  
Pathetic fallacy

Petrarchan sonnets

USE Italian sonnets

Phantom words

USE Ghost forms

Pharyngeal air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Pharyngeal cavity

USE Pharynx

PHARYNGEALS

UF Gutturals

BT Speech sounds

PHARYNX

UF Pharyngeal cavity

SN Chamber between the root of the tongue and the back wall of the throat

BT Organs of speech

NT Nasal pharynx

PHILISTINES

SN Persons indifferent to culture and refinement

BT Aesthetics

Philology

USE 1. Comparative linguistics  
2. Diachronic linguistics

PHILOSOPHICAL GRAMMAR

UF Notional grammar

SN Study of the features all languages have in common

BT Grammar

RT Logic in language

PHILOSOPHICAL SEMANTICS

UF Rhematics  
Rhematology

SN Several approaches to the philosophical study of meaning in language

BT Semantics

RT Meaning

PHILOSOPHY

SN Investigation of the principles and truths of knowledge, being and conduct

NT Logic

Phonation

USE 1. Speech production  
2. Voicing



## PHONEMATIC UNITS

SN Segmental elements left when all the prosodies have been abstracted

BT Prosodic analysis

## PHONEME GRAPHEME CORRESPONDENCE

SN In the writing system, correspondence between graphic elements and phonological/grammatical units which they represent

BT Writing systems

RT Graphemes  
Phonemes  
Reading  
Spelling

## PHONEMES

UF Linear phonemes  
Segmental phonemes

SN Smallest units of phonology

BT Phonology  
Phonotactics

NT Morphophonemic variations

RT Allophones  
\*Archiphonemes  
Diaphones  
Graphemes  
Metaphones  
Morphophonemes  
Phoneme grapheme correspondence  
Phonemic sound change  
Phonemic structure  
Phonemic transcriptions  
Phonemes

## PHONEMIC LOANS

SN Borrowed words retaining sounds and combinations of sounds of their original language, even though such sounds are not known in the borrowing language

BT Pronunciation

RT Loan words

Phonemic notation

USE Phonemic transcriptions

## PHONEMIC SOUND CHANGE

UF Phonological change  
Sound change by phonemes

SN Sound changes affecting the distribution of allophones to phonemes and thus affecting the whole phonemic structure of a language

BT Sound change

RT Phonemes

## PHONEMIC STRUCTURE

UF Sound systems

SN Inventory of all the phonemes and relationships between them with a phonetic description of the allophones

BT Phonology

RT Phonemes

## PHONEMIC TRANSCRIPTIONS

UF Phonemic notation

PHONEMIC TRANSCRIPTIONS

(Cont.)

SN Broad transcriptions using one symbol per phoneme with no information about allophones

BT Transcription

RT Phonemes  
Phonetic spelling  
Phonetic transcriptions

PHONES

SN Smallest possible segments of sound abstracted from the continuum of speech

BT Phonology

RT Allophones  
Phonemes  
Semes

PHONETIC LAWS

UF Sound laws

SN Seek to explain regular changes in a language's sound system

BT Phonetics

NT Exceptions

RT Sound shifts

Phonetic notations

USE Phonetic transcriptions

Phonetic scripts

USE Phonetic transcriptions

PHONETIC SIGNS

UF Phonetic symbols

SN Graphic signs used in phonetic transcriptions

BT Phonetic transcriptions

PHONETIC SOUND CHANGE

UF Allophonic change  
Sound change by allophones

SN Sound change which doesn't affect the phonemic structure of languages

BT Sound change

PHONETIC SPELLING

SN Spelling system attempting to follow closely and consistently the actual sounds of speech

BT Spelling

RT Phonemic transcriptions

Phonetic symbols

USE Phonetic signs

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTIONS

UF Comparative transcriptions  
Phonetic notations  
Phonetic scripts

SN Systems of graphic signs and diacritic marks to represent sounds of speech on paper

BT Transcription

NT Broad transcriptions  
Consecutive transcriptions

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTIONS  
(Cont. )

NT . Impressionistic transcriptions  
International phonetic alphabet  
Narrow transcriptions  
Phonetic signs  
Systematic transcriptions

RT Analphabetic notation  
Diacritic marks  
Phonemic transcriptions  
Phonetics

Phonetic variants

USE Allophones

PHONETICS

SN Study of speech processes

BT Linguistics  
Speaking

NT Acoustic phonetics  
Articulatory phonetics  
Auditory phonetics  
Experimental phonetics  
Feedback  
Phonetic laws  
Phonic substance

RT Language teaching  
Phonetic transcriptions  
Phonology  
Sounds  
Speech therapy

PHONIC SUBSTANCE

SN Auditory aspects or sound features of spoken language

BT Phonetics

RT Speech sounds

PHONICS

SN Method of teaching reading by training learner to associate particular sounds with particular symbols

BT Reading

PHONOGRAMS

SN Graphic signs used in writing to represent sound elements in speech

BT Writing systems

RT Signs

PHONOLOGICAL CHANGE

USE Phonemic sound change

#PHONOLOGICAL RULES

SN Convert phonological representations into phonetic ones

BT Phonology

NT #Rule inversion  
#Rule ordering

PHONOLOGY

UF Generative phonology  
Systematic phonemic representation  
Systematic phonetic representation  
Systematic phonological representation

SN Study of speech sounds of a given language

BT Speech sounds

NT #Complementary distribution

PHONOLOGY (Cont.)

NT #Deletion  
 Diaphones  
 #Insertion  
 #Markedness  
 Metaphones  
 Morphophonemes  
 Morphophonology  
 #Natural classes  
 #Notation  
 Phonemes  
 Phonemic structure  
 Phones  
 #Phonological rules  
 #Sound change  
 Transitions

RT Grammar  
 Phonetics

Phonomorphology

USE Morphophonology

Phonostylistics

USE Stylistics

PHONOTACTICS

SN System and study of the characteristic arrangement of phonemes in sequence

BT Tactics

NT Phonemes

PHRASAL COMPOUNDS

SN Compound words made up of two or more words which have entirely different independent meanings when used alone

BT Compound words

Phrasal verbs

USE Verb phrases

PHRASE STRUCTURE

SN Arrangement of syntactic elements to form larger units

BT Phrases

RT Phrase structure rules  
 Transformation rules

PHRASE STRUCTURE RULES

SN Series of syntactic re-write instructions in generative grammars

BT Transformational generative grammar

RT Phrase structure

PHRASES

UF Syntactic groups  
 Word groups

SN Groups of words forming syntactic units which are not complete sentences

BT Grammatical units

NT Infinitive phrases  
 Participial phrases  
 Phrase structure  
 \*Premodifiers  
 Relator axis phrases

RT Clauses  
 Sentences

\*PHRENOLOGY

SN Study of external conformation of cranium as supposed index to development and position of organs belonging to the various mental faculties

PHYLOGENY

SN Study of the historical development of a language

BT Diachronic linguistics

RT Ontogeny

Physical phonetics

USE Acoustic phonetics

Physiological phonetics

USE Articulatory phonetics

PICARESQUE NOVELS

SN Adventures of a rogue are related in humorous or satiric scenes

BT Novels

PICTOGRAMS

UF Pictographs

SN Graphic signs representing stretches of speech by images

BT Ideograms

Pictographs

USE Pictograms

\*PICTURE DICTIONARIES

BT Dictionaries

PIDGIN

UF Contact vernaculars  
Mixed languages  
Trade languages

SN Mixture of elements from different natural languages in regions of intensive language contact

BT \*Language variation  
Languages

RT Contact  
Creole  
Koine  
Lingua franca

PITCH

SN Measures in cycles per second

BT Acoustics

NT Fading

RT Contour  
Frequency  
Intonation  
Intonation patterns  
Tone  
Tonemes

\*PLACE NAMES

SN Names of geographical locations

BT Names

RT Toponymy  
\*Towns

PLAGIARISM

SN Literary theft

BT Authorship

Planned language change

USE Language planning

PLATITUDES

SN Flat, dull or trite re-  
marks

BT Style

RT Cliches

PLAY WITHIN A PLAY

SN Segment of dramatised ac-  
tion (or miniature drama)  
set within the framework  
of a larger play

BT Plays

RT Frame stories  
Story within a story

PLAYS

BT Drama

NT Acts  
Chronicle plays  
Cloak and daggers  
Closet dramas  
Comedies  
Commedia dell arte  
Domestic tragedies  
Entractes  
Epilogues  
#Film plays  
Historical plays  
Liturgical plays  
Masques  
Melodramas  
Morality plays  
Musical comedies

PLAYS (Cont.)

NT Mystery plays  
One acters  
Pantomime  
Play within a play  
Problem plays  
Prologues  
#Radio plays  
Sociological plays  
Spectacles  
#Television plays  
Tragedies  
Tagicomedies

RT Novels  
\*Playwrights  
Poems

\*PLAYWRIGHTS

BT Drama

RT Plays  
Poets

Plene writing

USE Defective writing

Pleonasm

USE Redundancy

PLOSION

UF Explosion

SN Movement of air outwards  
upon release of a stop

BT Air stream mechanism

NT Lateral plosion  
Nasal plosion

RT Implosion  
Release

## PLOSIVES

SN Stops released with egressive pulmonic air streams

BT Stops

## PLOTS

SN Arrangements of events to achieve intended effects

BT Drama  
Fiction

NT Actions  
Anticlimax  
Catastrophe  
Climax  
Complications  
Conflicts  
Counterplots  
Crisis  
Denouements  
Description  
Deus ex machina  
Dilemma  
Discord  
Flashbacks  
Focus  
Hubris  
In medias res  
Incidents  
Motivation  
Pace  
Poetic justice  
Setting  
Suspense  
Tension

RT Characterisation

## PLUPERFECT TENSE

UF Past perfect tense  
Second perfect tense

BT Tense

RT Past tense  
Perfect tense

## Pluralisers

USE Unit nouns

## PLURALS

SN Categories of number

BT Number

RT Duals  
Mass nouns  
Pluratives  
Singulars  
Unit nouns

## PLURATIVES

SN Affixes of adjuncts denoting plurals

BT Affixes

RT Plurals  
Singulatives

## Plurilingualism

USE Multilingualism

Plus junctures

USE Transitions

## POEMS

BT Poetry

NT Albas  
Alcaics  
Aubades  
Ballades  
Ballads  
Blank verse  
Canzones  
Clerihews  
Complaints  
Dirges  
Doggerel  
Dramatic poetry

POEMS (Cont.)

NT Echo verse  
 Eclogues  
 Elegies  
 Epics  
 Epilogues  
 Epitaphs  
 Free verse  
 Georgics  
 Haiku  
 Idylls  
 Laments  
 Light verse  
 Limericks  
 Lullabies  
 Lyrics  
 Madrigals  
 Metaphysical poetry  
 Nonsense verse  
 Nursery rhymes  
 Occasional verse  
 Odes  
 Pastorals  
 Prologues  
 Quantitative verse  
 Rondels  
 Songs  
 Sonnets  
 Tankas

RT Plays

POETIC JUSTICE

SN Ideal distribution of re-  
 wards and punishments

BT Plots

POETIC LICENSE

SN Liberty taken by a writer  
 to produce a desired ef-  
 fect by deviating from  
 conventional form, rules,  
 even fact or logic

BT Style

POETICS

SN 1. Literary criticism  
 dealing with poetry  
 2. Treatise (treatment)  
 of poetry  
 3. Study of prosody

BT Poetry

RT Prosody

POETRY

BT Literature

NT Poems  
 Poetics  
 Poets  
 Prosody  
 Scansion

RT Drama  
 Nonfiction  
 Prose

POETS

BT Poetry

NT Minnesingers  
 Minstrels  
 Troubadours

RT \*Playwrights

Polemics

USE Argumentation

POLITE FORM

SN Grammatical form denoting  
 a relationship of respect  
 between speakers

BT Syntax

RT Familiar form  
 Honorific form



\*POLITICAL SYSTEMS

BT \*Politics

NT \*Boule  
\*Demos  
\*Ostracism  
\*Pagarchs

\*POLITICS

SN Activities concerned with guiding or influencing governmental policy, including winning or holding control over a governing body

NT \*Political systems

RT \*Law

Polylogues

USE Monologues

POLYPHONY

SN Spelling in which several different sounds are represented by the same written signs

BT Spelling

Polysemia

USE Polysemy

POLYSEMY

UF Multiple meanings  
Polysemia

SN Term used when a word or phrase has two or more meanings

BT Meaning

POLYSEMY (Cont.)

RT Monosemy

POLYSYLLABLES

UF Multisyllables

SN Words consisting of more than one syllable

BT Syllables

Polysynthetic languages

USE Incorporating languages

Polysystemic phonology

USE Prosodic analysis

Polytonic languages

USE Tone languages

Popular ballads

USE Ballads

Popular etymology

USE Folk etymology

Popular language

USE Common language

PORNOGRAPHY

SN Obscene literature, art or photography

BT Censorship

RT Obscenity

Portmanteau words

USE Blends

PORTRAYAL

SN 1. Graphic description  
2. Dramatic representation

BT Acting  
Characterisation

\*PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE

BT , Languages

\*POSITION

SN Place occupied by any object or item

RT \*Space

Positive degree

USE Degree

Possessive adjectives

USE Pronouns

Possessive case

USE Genitive case

Possessive pronouns

USE Pronouns

Postalveolars

USE Alveolars

Postdentals

USE Dentals

\*POSTERS

SN Placards displayed in public places

RT \*Illustrations

Postpalatals

USE Palatals

POSTPOSITIONS

SN Particles placed after the nouns they govern

BT Particles

RT Prepositions

Postvelars

USE Velars

Pragmatic translation

USE Translation

PRAGMATICS

SN #The study of language from the point of view of the users

BT #Semiotics

NT #Implicature

RT #Discourse  
#Speech acts

## PRAGMATISM

- SN Philosophical movement emphasising practical consequences and values
- BT Literary movements
- RT Realism

## PRAGUE SCHOOL

- BT Linguistics

## Prearticles

- USE Predeterminers

## Prebases

- USE Prefixes

## PRECIS

- SN Short summary of a larger composition
- BT Prose

## PREDETERMINERS

- UF Prearticles
- SN Words or groups of words occurring in front of articles of other determiners in noun phrases
- BT Determiners

## Predicate phrases

- USE Verb phrases

## PREDICATES

- SN Verbs or verb phrases functioning as one of the fundamental constituents of a sentence, the other constituent being the subject
- BT Sentence parts
- RT Subjects  
Verb phrases  
Verbs

## PREFIXES

- UF Prebases
- BT Affixes
- RT Infixes  
Suffixes

## PREFIXING LANGUAGES

- BT Languages
- RT Suffixing languages

## PRELITERACY

- SN Stage in the history of a language before the development of a writing system
- BT Reading  
Writing
- RT Literacy  
Writing systems

## PREMISES

- SN Propositions supporting a conclusion
- BT Logic
- RT Hypotheses

PREMISES (Cont.)

RT Syllogisms

\*PREMODIFIERS

SN Items occurring before the head of a phrase

BT Phrases

RT Adjectives  
Determiners  
Intensifiers  
Quantifiers

Prepalatals

USE Palatals

PREPOSITIONAL CASE

SN Case form in some inflected languages indicating dependence on certain prepositions

BT Case

RT Locative case

PREPOSITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS

BT Conjunctions

Prepositional groups

USE Prepositions

Prepositional phrases

USE Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS

UF Deferred prepositions  
Prepositional groups  
Prepositional phrases

PREPOSITIONS (Cont.)

SN Parts of speech used with a noun phrase

BT Invariable words  
Parts of speech

RT Particles  
Postpositions

PRERAPHAELITES

SN Group of English writers (ca. 1850) who united to resist conventions in literature and art and revived the Italian style of before Raphael's time

BT Literary movements

Prescriptive grammar

USE Prescriptive linguistics

PRESCRIPTIVE LINGUISTICS

UF Normative linguistics  
Prescriptive grammar  
Prescriptivism  
Proscriptive grammar

SN Attitude to language studies which seeks to establish rules for correct usage

BT Linguistics

RT Correctness  
Descriptive grammar  
Descriptive linguistics

Prescriptivism

USE Prescriptive linguistics

Present future tense

USE Future tense

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLES

SN Non-finite forms of the verb used for forming compound tenses

BT Participles

RT Gerunds

Present perfect tense

USE Perfect tense

#### PRESENT TENSE

BT Tense

RT Historic present tense

Pressure stops

USE Stops

Preterite tense

USE Past tense

Prevelars

USE Velars

Primary accent

USE Stress

Primary articulation

USE Articulation

#### PRIMARY COMPOUNDS

UF Base compounds  
Fused compounds  
Solid compounds

SN Compound words consisting of two simple bases

BT Compound words

Primary derivatives

USE Word formation

Primary languages

USE Native languages

#### PRIMARY SOURCES

SN Original sources of information

BT Sources

RT Secondary sources

Primary vowels

USE Cardinal vowels

Primary words

USE Word formation

#### PRIMITIVISM

SN Belief that the qualities of early cultures are superior to those of contemporary civilisation

BT Literary movements

RT Realism  
Romanticism

Principal clauses

USE Main clauses

PRINCIPAL PARTS

SN Those forms of a verb which are necessary for deducing the whole conjugation according to regular patterns

BT Verbs

RT Conjugations

Principal verbs

USE Full verbs

PROBLEM NOVELS

SN Depict characters in states of conflict or suggest theses

BT Novels

RT Problem plays  
\*Problems  
Propaganda  
Sociological novels

PROBLEM PLAYS

SN Depict characters in states of conflict or suggest theses

BT Plays

RT Problem novels  
\*Problems  
Propaganda  
Sociological plays

\*PROBLEMS

SN Difficulties or obstacles not easily overcome

\*PROBLEMS (Cont.)

RT Algorithms  
Problem novels  
Problem plays

PROCEDURES

UF Decision procedures  
Discovery procedures  
Evaluation procedures

SN Set of techniques in linguistic analysis

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Method  
Pseudoprocedures

Process

USE Item and process

Prochronisms

USE Anachronisms

PROCLITICS

SN Words which have only weak stress and which in pronunciation form units with the stressed words following

BT #Grammar

RT Clitics  
Enclitics

PROGRAMMED INSTRUCTION

UF Autoinstruction

SN Method of teaching based on the principles of behaviourism

BT Language teaching

PROGRAMMED INSTRUCTION  
(Cont.)

NT \*Frames  
Linear programmes

RT Language laboratories  
Language learning  
\*Multimedia instruction

Progressive aspect

USE Aspect

Progressive dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

Prolegomenon

USE Prologues

PROLEPSIS

SN Anticipation in the main  
clause of the subject of  
a following subordinate  
clause

BT Clauses

PROLOGUES

UF Prolegomenon

SN Opening sections of lon-  
ger works

BT Fiction  
Plays  
Poems

RT Epilogues

PRONOUNS

UF Possessive adjectives  
Possessive pronouns  
Subjective pronouns

PRONOUNS (Cont.)

BT Parts of speech

NT Anaphora  
Compound personal pronouns  
Conjunctive pronouns  
Declensions  
Disjunctive pronouns  
Emphatic pronouns  
Indefinite pronouns  
Objective pronouns  
Person  
Personal pronouns  
Reciprocal pronouns  
Reflexive pronouns  
Relative pronouns

RT Nouns

PRONUNCIATION

UF Orthoepy

SN The way speech sounds are  
articulated

BT Speaking

NT \*Advanced tongue root  
features

Aphesis  
Apocope  
Epenthesis  
Epenthetics  
Free variants  
Intrusion  
Liaison  
Lisping  
Mutations  
Paragogue  
Phonemic loans  
Prothesis  
Similitude  
Spelling pronunciation  
Syncope

RT Accents  
Articulatory  
Articulation  
Idiolects  
Interference  
Speech sounds

## PROPAGANDA

- SN Information, ideas or rumours spread to help or harm a person, group, movement, belief, institution or nation
- BT Ideology
- NT Slogans
- RT Mass media  
Problem novels  
Problem plays  
Sociological novels  
Sociological plays

## PROPAROXYTONES

- SN Words with the stress on the third syllable from the end
- BT Stress
- RT Oxytones  
Paroxytones

## PROPER ADJECTIVES

- SN Adjectives formed from proper nouns
- BT Adjectives
- RT Proper nouns

## PROPER COMPOUNDS

- SN Common words which have inflection in the final part of the compound only
- BT Compound words
- RT Improper compounds

Proper names

USE Proper nouns

## PROPER NOUNS

- UF Proper names
- SN Names of individual persons, places or objects
- BT Nouns
- NT Antonomasia
- RT Common nouns  
Onomastics  
Proper adjectives

## \*PROPHECIES

- SN Future events foretold
- RT Bible  
\*Minor prophets

## PROPORTION

- UF Symmetry
- SN Relation between parts of a literary composition
- BT Aesthetics
- RT Harmony

## PROPOSITIONS

- SN 1. Plans, schemes or suggestions  
2. Statements of subject of an argument
- BT Logic
- RT Hypotheses

Proscriptive grammar

USE Prescriptive linguistics



PROSE

- SN Spoken or written language
- BT Narration
- NT Essays  
Obituaries  
Precis
- RT Novels  
Poetry  
Stories

Prosiopesis

- USE Aphesis

PROSODIC ANALYSIS

- UF Multidimensional phonology  
Polysystemic phonology  
Prosodic phonology
- SN Method of phonological analysis
- BT Linguistic analysis  
Prosody
- NT Phonematic units
- RT Segmental analysis

PROSODIC FEATURES

- UF Secondary features  
Secondary phonemes  
Suprasegmental features
- SN Features of speech not restricted to single segments of speech
- BT Prosody
- NT Contour  
Modulation  
Prosodic signs

PROSODIC FEATURES (Cont.)

- RT Intonation  
Stress  
Transitions

Prosodic marks

- USE Prosodic signs

Prosodic phonology

- USE Prosodic analysis

PROSODIC SIGNS

- UF Prosodic marks
- SN Graphic signs used to represent prosodic features in writing

- BT Prosodic features

- RT Punctuation

PROSODY

- UF Metrics
- SN 1. Science and study of versification  
2. Phonological feature extending over more than one segment in the continuum of speech

- BT Poetry

- NT Cadence  
Metre  
Moras  
Prosodic analysis  
Prosodic features  
Rhyme  
Rhyme schemes  
Rhythm  
Stanzas  
Versification

- RT Poetics

Prosopopoeia

USE Personification

Prosthesis

USE Prothesis

Protasis

USE Conditional clauses

Protensity features

USE Distinctive features

PROTHESIS

UF Prosthesis

SN Addition of a vowel or  
consonant at the begin-  
ning of a word to make  
pronunciation easier

BT Pronunciation

RT Epenthetics  
Intrusion  
Paragogue

\*PROTO TANO CONGO LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Nande language

PROVERBS

UF Saws  
Sayings

SN Short sayings, usually  
handed down, expressing  
useful thoughts or com-  
monplace truths

BT Folklore

PROVERBS (Cont.)

RT Adages  
Aphorisms  
Axioms  
Maxims  
Mottoes  
Oral transmission

Proximate

USE Person

\*PSEUDOCLEFT SENTENCES

SN Single clauses divided in-  
to two sections, each with  
their own verbs, but with  
main clause-subordinate  
clause relationships

BT Sentences

RT Clauses

PSEUDONYMS

UF Aliases  
Allonyms  
Noms de plume  
Pen names

SN Fictitious names used to  
conceal identity

BT Names

PSEUDOPROCEDURES

SN Method of linguistic ana-  
lysis

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Procedures

Pseudosynonyms

USE Near synonyms

PSYCHOLINGUISTICS

SN #Refers to efforts of linguists and psychologists to explain whether certain hypotheses about language acquisition and competence have a real basis in terms of perception, memory, intelligence, motivation, etc.

BT Linguistics

RT Psychological linguistics

PSYCHOLOGICAL LINGUISTICS

SN #Collective term for several different approaches to language from the point of view of psychology

BT Linguistics

NT Engrams

RT Clinical linguistics  
Developmental linguistics  
Psycholinguistics

PSYCHOLOGICAL NOVELS

BT Novels

- Interior monologues
- Sociological novels
- Sociological plays
- Stream of consciousness

Psychological phonetics

USE Auditory phonetics

Psychological subjects

USE Subjects

\*PUBLIC EDUCATION

SN Education supported in part or entirely by taxation

NT \*High schools

RT \*Pupils  
\*Universities

PULITZER PRIZE

BT Literary prizes

Pulmonic air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Pulmonic cavity

USE Cavity

Pulmonic closures

USE Closures

Punctual aspect

USE Aspect

PUNCTUATION

- UF Brackets
- Colons
- Commas
- Dashes
- Exclamation marks
- Full stops
- Hyphens
- Interrogation marks
- Interrogation points
- Inverted commas
- Parentheses
- Periods
- Question marks
- Quotation marks
- Semicolons

PUNCTUATION (Cont.)

SN Collection of auxiliary graphic signs used in a writing system to denote features of speech

BT Writing systems

RT Diacritic marks  
Prosodic signs

PUNS

UF Annominations  
Paronomasia

SN Play on words

BT Word games

\*PUPILS

SN School children

RT \*Children  
\*Public education

Pure vowels

USE Monophthongs

\*PURISM

SN Attitude towards language disapproving of deviations from certain grammatical rules, of neologisms and borrowings from other languages

RT Borrowing  
Grammaticality  
\*Language variation  
Neologisms

\*PYRAMIDS

SN Monumental structures of stone with polygonal or square bases and sloping sides meeting at an apex

RT \*Ancient Egypt

Pyrrhic feet

USE Dibrachs

QUALIFIERS

SN Words or groups of words limiting or extending the meaning of other words

BT Words

RT Adjectives  
Epithets  
Modifiers

Qualifying conjunctions

USE Subordinating conjunctions

\*QUALITY

SN Degree of excellence

Quantifiable nouns

USE Mass nouns

QUANTIFIERS

SN Words indicating quantity, used to modify other words or groups of words

BT Numerals

RT \*Premodifiers

Quantitative linguistics

USE Mathematical linguistics

#### QUANTITATIVE VERSE

SN Metrical language whose underlying rhythm is determined by the duration of sound in utterance

BT Poems

#### QUANTITY

UF Vowel quantity

SN Duration of a speech sound as a phonological feature

BT Speech sounds

RT Duration

#### QUATORZAINS

SN Stanzas or poems of fourteen lines

BT Stanzas

RT Rondels  
Sonnets

#### QUATRAINS

UF Tetrastich

SN Stanzas or poems of four lines

BT Stanzas

RT Heptastich  
Heroic stanzas  
Hexastich

Question marks

USE Punctuation

Question words

USE Interrogative words

#### QUESTIONNAIRES

BT Field work

RT \*Interviews  
\*Research

#### QUESTIONS

SN Utterances requesting an answer

BT Sentence patterns

NT Direct questions  
Echo questions  
Indirect questions  
Interrogative words

RT Commands  
Interrogative mood  
Statements

#### QUINTAINS

UF Cinquains  
Pentastich

SN Stanzas of five lines

BT Stanzas

RT Tankas

Quotation marks

USE Punctuation

Radical languages

USE Isolating languages

#Radio drama

USE #Radio plays

#RADIO PLAYS

UF #Radio drama

BT Plays

RANK

SN Relationship between one item and another on an hierarchical scale

BT Systemic grammar

NT Rank shift

RT Grammatical units

RANK SCALES

SN Hierarchical order of linguistic units on a particular level of analysis

BT Systemic grammar

RT Grammatical units  
Hierarchy  
Rank shift

RANK SHIFT

SN Process or result of a grammatical unit being moved down the hierarchical scale of rank

BT Rank

RT Rank scales

RATIONALISM

SN Acceptance of reason as the supreme authority in matters of belief, conduct and opinion

BT Literary movements

RT Neoclassicism

Reader identification

USE Identification

READING

SN Skill of recognising and understanding written language

BT Linguistic skills

NT Alexia  
Dyslexia  
Illiteracy  
Literacy  
Look and say  
Phonics  
Preliteracy

RT Listening  
Phoneme grapheme correspondence  
Speaking  
Writing

#READJUSTMENT RULES

SN Govern the restitution of grammatical morphemes by phonological matrices

BT Morphemes

Real definitions

USE Definitions

## REALISATION

- UF Actualisation  
Exponence  
Manifestation  
Representation
- SN Actual expression of phonological, grammatical or semantic feature
- BT Linguistics

## REALISM

- SN Familiar, ordinary aspects of life represented matter-of-factly
- BT Literary movements
- RT Classicism  
Expressionism  
Naturalism  
Pragmatism  
Primitivism  
Romanticism  
Slice of life  
Symbolism

Reason, Age of

USE Enlightenment

Recessive stress

USE Initial stress

Reciprocal assimilation

USE Assimilation

## RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

- SN Pronouns expressing mutual relationships
- BT Pronouns

## RECIPROCAL VERBS

- SN Verbs involving mutual action
- BT Verbs

## RECOMPOSITIONS

- SN Process or results of using borrowed elements as affixes to form new words
- BT Compound words
- RT Affixes

## RECONSTRUCTION

- SN Method of finding the common ancestors of a group of genealogically related languages by comparing their shared features
- BT Diachronic linguistics
- NT Internal reconstruction
- RT Comparative method

Rection

USE Government

## RECURSIVENESS

- SN Property of grammar allowing an infinite number of sentences to be generated
- BT Transformational generative grammar

## REDUCTION

- UF Narrowing of meaning  
Restriction

## REDUCTION (Cont.)

- UF Specialisation of meaning
- SN Process by which the meaning of a word or phrase becomes narrowed by a restriction of the contexts in which it can occur
- BT Semantic changes
- RT Extension

## REDUNDANCY

- UF Pleonasm  
Tautology
- SN Amount of information communicated over and above the required minimum
- BT Style
- RT Cliches  
Economy

## Reference theory of meaning

- USE Semantics

## Referend

- USE Referent

## REFERENT

- UF Referend
- SN Physical entity or abstract concept to which we give a name by a verbal or written symbol
- BT Meaning

## Referential meaning

- USE Meaning

## REFLEXES

- SN Linguistic forms derived from older forms of the same language
- BT Diachronic linguistics

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- UF Intensive pronouns
- SN Personal pronouns referring back to the subject
- BT Pronouns
- RT Reflexive verbs  
Relative pronouns

## REFLEXIVE VERBS

- SN Verbs used usually with reflexive pronouns
- BT Verbs
- RT Reflexive pronouns

## REFRAINS

- SN Phrases or lines of verse recurring at intervals in poems or songs, usually at the end of a stanza
- BT Stanzas
- RT Repetends

## Regional dialects

- USE Geographical dialects



## REGISTER

- UF Breathy phonation  
Breathy voice  
Creak  
Creaky voice  
Laryngealised voicing  
Tight phonation
- SN Voice quality brought about by a specific type of phonation
- BT Speech production

## Regressive assimilation

- USE Assimilation

## Regressive dissimilation

- USE Dissimilation

## REGULAR VERBS

- SN Verbs conjugated according to the paradigms for their class
- BT Verbs
- RT Irregular verbs

## REGULARITY

- SN Linguistic form conforming to the normal grammatical rule
- BT Rules
- RT Irregularity

## Regulation

- USE Speech production

## Related languages

- USE Cognate languages

## RELATIVE ADVERBS

- SN Adverbs acting as conjunctions introducing subordinate clauses
- BT Adverbs  
Conjunctions

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

- SN Subordinate clauses introduced by relative pronouns or adverbs
- BT Clauses

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS

- SN Pronouns referring back to a previous word in the sentence
- BT Pronouns
- RT Reflexive pronouns

## RELATOR AXIS CLAUSES

- SN Traditionally known as subordinate clauses
- BT Clauses  
Tagmemics
- RT Subordinate clauses

## RELATOR AXIS PHRASES

- SN Traditionally known as prepositional phrases
- BT Phrases  
Tagmemics

## RELEASE

UF Lateral release  
Nasal release

SN Movement of speech organs from one speech sound to another or to a resting position that a closure of the vocal tract is opened or a stricture removed

BT Air stream mechanism

RT Plosion

Relic areas

USE Areas

## \*REMEDIES

SN Means of removing or counteracting or relieving anything undesirable

Remote areas

USE Areas

## RENAISSANCE

UF Renascence

SN European period ca. 1350-1650

BT Literary periods

RT Elizabethan  
Humanism  
Middle ages

## RENAISSANCE LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

RT Medieval linguistics

Renascence

USE Renaissance

## REPETENDS

SN Words or phrases repeated at irregular intervals in a poem

BT Versé

RT Refrains

Repetitive compounds

USE Iterative compounds

## REPLACIVE MORPHS

SN Morphs replacing others in the internal modification of words to indicate grammatical features

BT Morphs

Reported questions

USE Indirect questions

Reported speech

USE Indirect speech

Representation

USE Realisation

## \*RESEARCH

SN Systematic investigation, collection and analysis of data to reach conclusions, estimate effects or test hypotheses

NT Field work

RESEARCH (Cont.)

RT \*Experiments  
Hypotheses  
Questionnaires  
Statistics  
\*Theories

RESONANCE

SN Vibrations in sympathy  
with other vibrations

BT Acoustics

RT Harmonics

Resonance curves

USE Spectra

RESONANTS

SN Speech sounds which can  
be lengthened indefinitely

BT Speech sounds

RT Obstruents  
Vibrants

RESTORATION

SN 1. Renewal, revival or  
re-establishment  
2. England ca. 1660-1688

BT Literary periods

Restricted languages

USE Special languages

Restriction

USE Reduction

RESTRICTIVE STRUCTURES

SN Structures within sentences  
specifying antecedent  
structures

BT Sentences

RT Nonrestrictive structures

RETROFLEXES

UF Cacuminals  
Cerebrals

SN Speech sounds articulated  
with the tip of the tongue  
curled upwards and back-  
wards towards the hard pa-  
late

BT Speech sounds

Retrogressive assimilation

USE Assimilation

Retrogressive dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

REVIEWS

UF Book reviews

SN Critical articles or re-  
ports on recent literary  
works

BT Criticism

RT Critiques  
Essays

Revival forms

USE Archaisms

Rhematics

USE Philosophical semantics

Rhematology

USE Philosophical semantics

RHETORIC

SN 1. Effective use of language, both written and oral  
2. Art or science of literary uses of language  
3. Oratory

BT Literature

NT Eulogies  
Homiletics  
Homilies  
Orations  
Sermons  
Tirades

RT Speaking  
Writing

Rhetorical figures

USE Figures of speech

RHYME

UF Rime

SN Similarity or identity of sound in words

BT Prosody

NT Approximate rhyme  
Double rhyme  
End rhyme  
Eye rhyme  
Feminine rhyme  
Identical rhyme  
Internal rhyme  
Masculine endings  
#Pararhyme

RHYME (Cont.)

RT Alliteration  
Rhyme schemes  
\*Rhyming dictionaries

Rhyme royal

USE Chaucerian stanzas

RHYME SCHEMES

SN Patterns of rhyme used in a poem

BT Prosody

RT Rhyme

\*RHYMING DICTIONARIES

BT Dictionaries

RT Rhyme

RHYTHM

SN Uniform recurrence of beat or accent

BT Prosody

NT Sprung rhythm

RT Cadence  
Metre  
Scansion  
Tempo

RIDDLES

SN Puzzles in literary form

BT Word games

Riding rhyme

USE Heroic couplets

\*RIEDL , R .

Rime

USE Rhyme

Rime riche

USE 1. Identical rhyme  
2. Perfect rhyme

Rising diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

Rising junctures

USE Junctures

\*ROCK PAINTINGS

BT \*Art

RT \*Bushmen  
\*Paintings

Rolled consonants

USE Trills

ROMAN ALPHABET

UF Latin alphabet

BT Alphabets

ROMANCE LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

\*ROMANCES

SN Medieval narratives in  
prose or verse dealing  
with heroic persons and  
events

\*ROMANCES (Cont.)

BT Genre

RT Courtly love  
\*Knights  
\*Ladies  
Middle ages

ROMANISATION

SN Transliteration of non-  
Latin writing systems

BT Transliteration

ROMANTICISM

SN Literary attitude in which  
imagination is considered  
more important than formal  
rules and reason and than  
a sense of fact

BT Literary movements

RT Classicism  
Primitivism  
Realism

Rondeaus

USE Rondels

RONDELS

UF Rondeaus

SN Short poems totalling  
fourteen lines

BT Poems

RT Quatorzains

## ROOT CREATIONS

- SN Types of word formation in which new words are coined by onomatopoeia or invention
- BT Word formation
- NT Coinage

## ROOT INFLECTED LANGUAGES

- BT Inflected languages

Root isolating languages

- USE Isolating languages

Roots

- USE Stems

## ROUND CHARACTERS

- SN Persons described so fully as to be recognisable, understandable and individually different
- BT Characterisation
- RT Flat characters  
Foils  
Stock characters

Rounding

- USE Labialisation

## #RULE INVERSION

- SN Can lead to unnatural phonetically conditioned rules or morphological rules
- BT Phonological rules

## #RULE ORDERING

- BT Phonological rules
- NT #Bleeding rule ordering  
#Conjunctive rule ordering  
#Disjunctive rule ordering  
#Extrinsic rule ordering  
#Feeding rule ordering  
#Intrinsic rule ordering
- RT Rules

## RULES

- SN Generalised statements of regularities
- BT Grammar
- NT Irregularity  
Regularity
- RT Formalisation  
\*Functional grammar  
Generative grammar  
Grammaticality  
#Rule ordering

## RUN ON LINES

- UF Enjambement
- SN Single lines of poetry having thoughts that carry over to the next line without a pause
- BT Verse
- RT End stopped lines

## RUNES

- SN Graphic signs or letters of the runic alphabet
- BT Alphabets
- RT Letter

## SAGAS

SN Lengthy narratives or legends about heroic events

BT Narration

RT Epics  
Legends  
Myths

## Sandhi

USE Abbreviations

## SARCASM

SN 1. Form of irony  
2. Bitter and often harsh derision

BT Irony

RT Satire

## SATIRE

SN Ridiculing of folly, stupidity or vice

BT Comedy

NT Caricatures  
Lampoons  
Mock heroics  
Parody

RT Allegory  
Irony  
Sarcasm

## Saws

USE Proverbs

## Sayings

USE Proverbs

Scale and category grammar

USE Systemic grammar

## SCANSION

SN Metrical analysis of poetry by dividing a line of poetry into feet, by indicating accents and counting syllables

BT Poetry

RT Analysis  
Metre  
Stress

## SCENES

SN 1. Divisions of an act of a play  
2. Incidents or situations in real life  
3. Places where acts or events occur

BT Acts

## SCHOLASTICISM

SN Linguistic philosophy of the Schoolmen

BT Linguistics

RT Medieval linguistics

## Schwas

USE Neutral vowels

## Sci fi

USE Science fiction

## SCIENCE FICTION

UF Sci fi

SCIENCE FICTION (Cont.)

UF SF  
Space fiction

SN Narratives drawing imaginatively on scientific knowledge, theory and speculation

BT Novels

RT Fantasies  
Mystery stories

SCIENTIFIC GRAMMAR

SN Linguistic description of the grammar of a language

BT Grammar

SCRIPTS

SN Sets of graphic signs of alphabetic, syllabic or logographic writing systems

BT Writing systems

Second future tense

USE Future perfect tense

SECOND INFINITIVE

UF Marked infinitive

SN The infinitive used with the particle "to"

BT Infinitives

RT First infinitive

Second languages

USE Foreign languages

Second order language

USE Metalanguage

Second perfect tense

USE Pluperfect tense

Second person

USE Person

SECOND SOUND SHIFT

UF High German sound shift

BT Sound shifts

Secondary articulation

USE Articulation

Secondary derivatives

USE Word formation

Secondary features

USE Prosodic features

Secondary languages

USE Foreign languages

Secondary phonemes

USE Prosodic features

SECONDARY SOURCES

SN Sources of information which are not primary or original

BT Sources



## SECONDARY SOURCES (Cont.)

RT Primary sources

Secondary stress

USE Stress

Secondary words

USE Word formation

## \*SECULAR ART

SN Non-religious art

BT \*Art

## SEGMENTAL ANALYSIS

SN Utterances are analysed into units

BT Linguistic analysis

RT Prosodic analysis

Segmental phonemes

USE Phonemes

## SEGMENTS

UF Isolates

SN Linguistic units abstracted from a continuum of speech or text

BT Texts

## SELECTION RESTRICTION

SN Most linguistic units are limited in the way they can combine with other units in particular environments

## SELECTION RESTRICTION (Cont.)

BT Generative grammar

RT Tactics

Semantemes

USE Sememes

## SEMANTIC ANALYSIS

SN Investigates the meaning of vocabulary items by explaining what sense relations hold between them

BT Linguistic analysis  
Semantics

RT Meaning  
Semantic differential

## SEMANTIC CHANGES

UF Semantic shifts  
Shifts of meaning  
Vocabulary changes

SN Shifts in the meaning of a word

BT Meaning

NT Amelioration  
Deterioration  
Expansion  
Extension  
Reduction

## SEMANTIC COMPONENTS

UF Semantic features  
Semantic markers  
Semantic properties

SN Several features which together make up the semantic meaning of a word or utterance

BT Componential analysis  
Transformational generative grammar

## SEMANTIC DIFFERENTIAL

SN Device to measure experimentally the sense an individual speaker gives to a word

BT Semantics

RT Semantic analysis

Semantic features

USE Semantic components

## SEMANTIC FIELDS

UF Domain  
Lexical fields

SN Groups of lexical items which are associated in meaning by sharing some identical semantic features

BT Semantics

RT Semantic range

Semantic information

USE Information theory

Semantic markers

USE 1. Markers  
2. Semantic components

Semantic meaning

USE Meaning

## SEMANTIC PAIRS

SN Pairs of lexical items related in meaning

BT Meaning

## SEMANTIC PAIRS (Cont.)

NT Antonyms  
Synonyms

Semantic properties

USE Semantic components

## SEMANTIC RANGE

SN Number of different contexts in which a word can occur

BT Semantics

RT Semantic fields

Semantic shifts

USE Semantic changes

## SEMANTIC STRUCTURE

SN That level of language on which meaning relations between vocabulary items may be established

BT Semantics

RT Meaning

## SEMANTIC VALUE

SN Ability of a linguistic item to distinguish lexical meaning

BT Meaning

## SEMANTICS

UF Combinatorial semantics  
Conceptual theory of meaning  
Conceptualism

SEMANTICS (Cont.)

UF Contextual theory of meaning  
 Correspondence theory of meaning  
 Field theory  
 Generative semantics  
 Glossology  
 Linguistic semantics  
 Reference theory of meaning  
 Semasiology  
 Sematology  
 Semology  
 Semotactics

SN System and study of meaning in language

BT Semiotics

NT Cognitive reality  
 Complementarity  
 General semantics  
 Meaning  
 Philosophical semantics  
 Semantic analysis  
 Semantic differential  
 Semantic fields  
 Semantic range  
 Semantic structure  
 Sememes  
 Semes  
 Value

RT Componential analysis  
 Etymology  
 Grammar  
 Information theory  
 Linguistic analysis

Semasiology

USE Semantics

Sematology

USE Semantics

SEMEMES

UF Semantemes

SN Minimum units of meaning

BT Semantics

RT Lexemes  
 Semes

Sememic stratum

USE Stratificational grammar

SEMES

SN Units of content or meaning

BT Semantics

RT Graphs  
 Morphs  
 Phones  
 Sememes

Semicolons

USE Punctuation

Semiology

USE Semiotics

SEMIOTICS

UF Semiology  
 Significs

SN Systematic study of linguistic and non-linguistic signs

BT Linguistics

NT #Pragmatics  
 Semantics  
 Syntactics

## SEMIOTICS (Cont.)

RT Stylistics

Semivowels

USE Glides

Semology

USE Semantics

Semotactics

USE Semantics

\*SENIOR, OLIVE

SENSE

SN Semantic meaning a word or phrase has for a speaker or hearer

BT Meaning

Sentence adverbials

USE Sentence modifiers

Sentence compounds

USE Compound sentences

## SENTENCE MODIFIERS

UF Sentence adverbials

SN Adjunct words, phrases or clauses modifying whole sentences, not only particular words

BT Modifiers

NT Absolute constructions  
Included positions

## SENTENCE PARTS

SN Syntactic categories forming constituents of sentences

BT Sentences  
Syntax

NT Complements  
Objects  
Predicates  
Subjects

## SENTENCE PATTERNS

UF Syntactic patterns

SN Four types of sentences: statements, questions, exclamations, commands

BT Grammar

NT Commands  
Exclamations  
Questions  
Statements

RT Clause patterns  
Sentences

Sentence stress

USE Stress

Sentence words

USE Clause equivalents

## SENTENCES

SN Expressions of a complete thought with at least a subject and a predicate

BT Grammatical units  
Paragraphs

NT Aposiopesis  
Basic sentences

SENTENCES (Cont.)

- NT Bound sentences  
Complex sentences  
Compound sentences  
Constituent sentences  
Equational sentences  
Free sentences  
Hypotaxis  
Interrogative sentences  
Matrix sentences  
Nonrestrictive structures  
Parataxis  
\*Pseudocleft sentences  
Restrictive structures  
Sentence parts  
Simple sentences  
Transformed sentences
- RT Phrases  
Sentence patterns  
Syntax

SENTIMENTALISM

- SN Excessive indulgence in  
sentiment or emotionalism
- BT Emotions
- Separable prefixes
- USE Separables

SEPARABLES

- UF Separable prefixes
- SN Affixes which can be se-  
parated from the stem to  
which they are attached
- BT Affixes
- RT Inseparables

SEPTETS

- SN Poems or stanzas of seven  
lines

SEPTETS (Cont.)

- BT Stanzas

SEQUELS

- SN 1. Literary works conti-  
nuing narratives of pre-  
ceding works  
2. Results or consequences
- BT Fiction
- RT Cycle

SEQUENCE

- SN Relationship between lin-  
guistic items in succes-  
sion
- BT Linguistic analysis

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

- SN Conditioning of the tense  
to be used in a subordi-  
nate clause by the tense  
in the main clause
- BT Tense

\*SERIAL PUBLICATION

- SN Publication in instalments
- RT Book

SERMONS

- SN Serious speeches, especi-  
ally on moral issues
- BT Rhetoric
- RT Homiletics  
Homilies

\*SESOTHO LANGUAGE

UF \*Sotho language  
BT Languages  
RT \*Xhosa language

SESTETS

UF Sextets  
Sixains  
SN 1. Last six lines of Italian sonnets  
2. Any poems or stanzas of six lines  
BT Stanzas  
RT Octaves

SETTING

UF Locale  
Milieu  
SN Environment or surroundings of anything  
BT Plots  
RT Mise en scene

\*SEX DIFFERENCES

SN Differences between males and females

Sextets

USE Sestets

SF

USE Science fiction

SHAKESPEAREAN SONNETS

UF English sonnets  
BT Sonnets

Shifts of meaning

USE Semantic changes

Short short stories

USE Short stories

SHORT STORIES

UF Short short stories

SN Brief bits of prose fiction

BT Fiction

RT Novels  
One acters  
Stories

Shwas

USE Neutral vowels

SIBILANTS

UF Groove fricatives  
Groove spirants  
Whistling consonants

SN Fricatives produced by forcing the air stream through a groove-shaped opening between the tongue and the roof of the mouth

BT Fricatives

\*SIDNEY, PHILIP. Astrophil and Stella

\*SIDNEY, PHILIP. The apolo-  
gie

Sight rhyme

USE Eye rhyme

#### #SIGN LANGUAGES

SN Non-spoken languages de-  
veloped as substitutes  
for spoken languages

BT Languages

NT #Ameslan  
#Finger spelling  
#Signed English

RT \*Deafness  
Kinesics

Signaries

USE Alphabets

#### #SIGNED ENGLISH

BT #Sign languages

Significs

USE Semiotics

#### SIGNS

UF Iconic signs  
Linguistic signs  
Symbolic signs

SN Basic graphic units of  
writing system to repre-  
sent words, syllables or  
speech sounds

BT Writing systems

RT Characters  
Graphemes

#### SIGNS (Cont.)

RT Letter  
Logograms  
Phonograms  
Syllabograms  
Symbols

#### SILENT STRESS

SN When a stressed syllable  
is omitted in colloquial  
or rapid speech, stress  
may be retained on a peri-  
od of silence, often ac-  
companied by a nod or  
other gesture

BT Stress

#### \*SILVER

SN Precious metal

RT \*Gold

#### SIMILES

SN Two things, essentially  
different, are compared by  
means of "like", "as" or  
"as if"

BT Figures of speech

RT Analogy  
Metaphors

#### SIMILITUDE

SN Pronunciation of one seg-  
ment being influenced by  
the pronunciation of an  
adjacent segment

BT Pronunciation

RT Mutations

Simple past tense

USE Past tense

Simple perfect tense

USE Perfect tense

#### SIMPLE SENTENCES

SN Syntactic patterns consisting of a main clause without any subordinate or co-ordinate clauses

BT Sentences

RT Main clauses

Simple stops

USE Stops

Simple vowels

USE Monophthongs

Simple wave forms

USE Sound waves

Simultaneous interpreting

USE Interpreting

Singlebar junctures

USE Junctures

#### SINGULARS

SN Not more than one

BT Number

RT Duals  
Plurals

#### SINGULATIVES

SN Affixes or adjuncts denoting singulars

BT Affixes

RT Pluratives

#### SINOTIBETAN LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

Sinusoidal wave forms

USE Sound waves

Sister languages

USE Family of languages

Situational meaning

USE Meaning

Sixains

USE Sestets

Skills

USE Linguistic skills

#### SLANDER

SN Malicious, false and defamatory statement or report

BT Literature

RT Libels



## SLANG

SN Characterised by newly coined and rapidly changing vocabulary, often with a forced, fantastic or eccentric meaning

BT Manner of discourse

RT Cant  
Colloquialism

Slant rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

Slavic linguistics

USE Slavonic linguistics

## SLAVONIC LINGUISTICS

UF Slavic linguistics

BT Linguistics

Slender vowels

USE Front vowels

## SLICE OF LIFE

SN Accurate transcription into fiction or drama of a segment of actual experience

BT Drama  
Fiction

RT Naturalism  
Realism  
Stream of consciousness

#Slips of the tongue

USE #Speech errors

## SLIT FRICATIVES

SN Fricatives produced through slit-shaped apertures

BT Fricatives

## SLOGANS

UF Catchwords

SN Phrases, mottoes or distinctive sayings of any group, party, organisation or person

BT Propaganda

RT Mottoes

Slopes

USE Syllables

## SLOTS

SN Defined environments into which linguistic items fit

BT Tagmemics

RT Substitution frames

## SLURS

SN Blurred transitions from one speech sound to another

BT Transitions

\*SMIT, BARTHO

\*SMIT, BARTHO. Bacchus in die Boland

\*SMIT, BARTHO. Christine

\*SMIT, BARTHO. Die Keiser  
 \*SMIT, BARTHO. Die verminktes  
 \*SMIT, BARTHO. Don Juan onder  
 die boere  
 \*SMIT, BARTHO. Putsonderwater

Social dialects

USE Dialects

\*SOCIAL GROUPS

RT \*Peer groups  
 \*Social interaction

\*SOCIAL INTERACTION

SN Mutual or reciprocal ac-  
 tion and response  
 RT \*Functional grammar  
 \*Social groups

Sociolects

USE Dialects

SOCIOLINGUISTICS

UF Sociological linguistics  
 BT Linguistics  
 NT \*Language variation  
 RT Anthropological linguis-  
 tics  
 Bilingualism  
 Diglossia

Sociological linguistics

USE Sociolinguistics

SOCIOLOGICAL NOVELS

SN Narratives dealing prima-  
 rily with social questions  
 and problems  
 BT Novels  
 RT Problem novels  
 Propaganda  
 Psychological novels  
 Sociological plays

SOCIOLOGICAL PLAYS

SN Dramatic works dealing  
 primarily with social  
 questions and problems  
 BT Plays  
 RT Problem plays  
 Propaganda  
 Psychological novels  
 Sociological novels

Soft palate

USE Velum

SOFT SIGN

SN Cyrillic character indi-  
 cating palatisation of the  
 preceding consonant  
 BT Palatisation  
 RT Hard sign

Softening

USE Palatisation

Solid compounds

USE Primary compounds

SOLILOQUIES

- SN Speeches delivered by characters in plays while they are on their own
- BT Dramatic conventions
- RT Asides  
Interior monologues  
Monologues  
Stream of consciousness  
Tirades

SONGS

- SN Lyrics or ballads
- BT Poems
- RT Lullabies  
Oral transmission

SONNETS

- SN Poems of fourteen lines, usually in iambic pentameters
- BT Poems
- NT Italian sonnets  
Miltonic sonnets  
Shakespearean sonnets
- RT Octaves  
Pentameters  
Quatorzains  
Sestets

Sonograms

- USE Spectrograms

Sonority features

- USE Distinctive features

\*Sotho language

- USE \*Sesotho language

SOUND CHANGE

- UF Autonomous sound change  
Combinative sound change  
Combinatory sound change  
Conditional sound change  
Conditioned sound change  
Dependent sound change  
Independent sound change  
Isolative sound change  
Spontaneous sound change  
Sporadic sound change  
Unconditional sound change  
Unconditioned sound change
- SN Change in the sound system of a language from one stage in its historical development to another
- BT Diachronic linguistics  
#Phonology
- NT Assibilation  
Assimilation  
Dissimilation  
Environmental conditioning  
Fronting  
Merger  
Phonemic sound change  
Phonetic sound change  
Splitting
- RT #Deletion  
#Insertion  
Sound shifts

Sound change by allophones

- USE Phonetic sound change

Sound change by phonemes

- USE Phonemic sound change

Sound echoism

USE Onomatopoeia

Sound laws

USE Phonetic laws

#### SOUND SHIFTS

SN Series of regular changes in the sound system of a language from one stage of development to another

BT Diachronic linguistics

NT Consonant shifts  
First sound shift  
Second sound shift  
Vowel shift

RT Phonetic laws  
Sound change

#### SOUND SPECTROGRAPHS

UF Spectrographs

SN Basic instruments for the acoustic study of speech

BT Sounds

RT Spectrograms

Sound systems

USE Phonemic structure

#### SOUND WAVES

UF Complex wave forms  
Simple wave forms  
Sinusoidal wave forms

SN Disturbances in the air caused by the vibrations of bodies in the air

#### SOUND WAVES (Cont.)

BT Sounds

NT Amplitude  
Cycles  
Frequency

RT Spectra

#### SOUNDS

SN Impressions received by the brain as a result of vibrations of the ear drum in reaction to changes in air pressure

BT Acoustics

NT Cacophony  
Discords  
Dissonance  
Euphony  
Sound spectrographs  
Sound waves  
Spectrograms  
Volume

RT Hearing  
Phonetics  
Speech sounds

Source features

USE Distinctive features

#### SOURCE LANGUAGES

SN Languages from which original texts are translated or from which loan words are borrowed

BT Translation

RT Target languages

SOURCES

SN Any statements supplying information for use by a writer

BT Book

NT Primary sources  
Secondary sources

\*SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH LITERATURE

SN South African literature written in English

RT \*Black literature

\*SPACE

SN Area or volume between specified boundaries

RT \*Position

Space fiction

USE Science fiction

SPEAKING

UF Speech  
Verbalisation

SN Act of producing speech as a means of communication

BT Linguistic skills

NT Agrammatism  
Articulacy  
Articulation  
#Brain lateralisation  
Competence and performance  
Conversation  
Dialogue  
Diction  
Elocution

SPEAKING (Cont.)

NT Endophasia  
Exophasia  
Expressive function  
Fluency  
Manner of discourse  
Melodics  
Organs of speech  
Origin of speech  
Phonetics  
Pronunciation  
Speech acts  
Speech defects  
Speech pathology  
Speech production  
\*Speech recognition  
Speech sounds  
Speech synthesis  
Speech therapy  
Spoken language  
Whispers  
Whistle speech

RT Gestures  
Langue and parole  
Listening  
Reading  
Rhetoric  
Writing

SPECIAL LANGUAGES

UF Formulaic languages  
Restricted languages

SN Varieties of languages used for particular purposes

BT Languages

Specialisation of meaning

USE Reduction

SPECIALISED MEANING

SN Use of a word in a restricted sense

BT Meaning

## SPECTACLES

- SN Displays on a large scale
- BT Plays
- RT \*Circuses

## SPECTRA

- UF Continuous spectra  
Envelopes  
Line spectra  
Resonance curves
- SN Graphs showing the relative amplitudes of the frequency components of sound waves
- BT Spectrograms
- RT Sound waves

## SPECTROGRAMS

- UF Sonograms
- SN Graphic representations of sounds
- BT Sounds
- NT Spectra
- RT Sound spectrographs

## Spectrographs

- USE Sound spectrographs

## Speculative grammars

- USE Medieval linguistics

## Speech

- USE Speaking

## SPEECH ACTS

- UF Speech events
- SN #Communicative activities defined with reference to the intentions of the speaker while speaking and the effects he achieves on his listener
- BT #Discourse analysis  
Speaking
- NT #Deictic words  
#Deixis
- RT #Pragmatics  
Speech sounds

## SPEECH COMMUNITIES

- SN Groups of people, usually in the same area, speaking the same variants of a language
- BT Languages
- NT Speech islands
- RT Convergence areas

## SPEECH DEFECTS

- UF Speech disorders  
Speech impediments
- SN Due to psycho-physiological disturbances or injuries
- BT Speaking
- NT Alalia  
Anarthria  
Aphasia  
Aphrasia  
Stammering
- RT Speech pathology  
Speech therapy

Speech disorders

USE Speech defects

Speech education

USE Elocution

#SPEECH ERRORS

UF #Slips of the tongue

BT Speaking

NT Spoonerisms

Speech events

USE Speech acts

Speech, Figures of

USE Figures of speech

Speech impediments

USE Speech defects

Speech improvement

USE Elocution

SPEECH ISLANDS

SN Small speech communities surrounded by speakers of other, more dominant languages

BT Speech communities

Speech organs

USE Organs of speech

SPEECH PATHOLOGY

SN Study of defects and disturbances which may impede the communicative effectiveness of a speaker

BT Speaking

RT Clinical linguistics  
Speech defects  
Speech therapy

SPEECH PRODUCTION

UF Phonation  
Regulation

SN Activities in the vocal tract which convert muscular into acoustic energy

BT Speaking

NT Dysphonia  
Exhalation  
Inhalation  
Oesophageal speech  
Register  
Synthesis

RT Air stream mechanism  
Articulation  
Initiation  
Initiator  
Speech synthesis

\*SPEECH RECOGNITION

SN Unambiguous identification of linguistic elements such as syllables or words

BT Speaking

RT \*Perception  
Speech synthesis

SPEECH SOUNDS

SN Units of sound produced by organs of speech

SPEECH SOUNDS (Cont.)

BT Speaking

NT Affricates  
 Allophones  
 Aspirates  
 Bilabiodentals  
 Consonants  
 Continuants  
 Coronals  
 Delabialisation  
 Denasalisation  
 Depalatisation  
 Digraphs  
 Dorsals  
 Egressives  
 Ejectives  
 Flaps  
 Fricatives  
 Frontals  
 Glides  
 Glottal stops  
 Glottalisation  
 Idiophones  
 Ingressives  
 Interdentals  
 Labialisation  
 Labials  
 Laryngeals  
 Liquids  
 Mutes  
 Nasalisation  
 Nasals  
 Nonsyllabics  
 Palatisation  
 Pharyngeals  
 Phonology  
 Quantity  
 Resonants  
 Retroflexes  
 Trigraphs  
 Trills  
 Uvulars  
 Velars  
 Vibrants  
 Voicelessness  
 Voicing  
 Vowels

RT Acoustic phonetics  
 Articulation  
 Manner of articulation  
 Phonic substance

SPEECH SOUNDS (Cont.)

RT Pronunciation  
 Sounds  
 Speech acts  
 Speech synthesis

SPEECH SYNTHESIS

UF Artificial speech

SN Human speech sounds produced by artificial means

BT Speaking

RT Speech production  
 \*Speech recognition  
 Speech sounds

SPEECH THERAPY

UF Logopaedics  
 Logopedics

SN Treatment for the alleviation or elimination of speech and language disorders

BT Speaking

RT Clinical linguistics  
 Phonetics  
 Speech defects  
 Speech pathology

SPELLING

UF Orthography

SN Representation of human speech sounds by means of standardised writing rules

BT Writing systems

NT Phonetic spelling  
 Polyphony  
 Spelling reforms



SPELLING (Cont.)

RT Phoneme grapheme correspondence  
Spelling pronunciation

SPELLING PRONUNCIATION

SN Pronunciation of a word based upon its spelling

BT Pronunciation

RT Spelling

SPELLING REFORMS

SN Measures to improve spelling systems by making them more representative of the sounds of speech

BT Spelling

SPENSERIAN STANZAS

SN Eight lines in iambic pentameters followed by a line of iambic hexameter

BT Stanzas

Spirants

USE Fricatives

\*SPLIT ERGATIVITY

SN Grammatical case used to mark the subject of a transitive verb

BT Case

RT Subjects  
Transitive verbs

SPLIT INFINITIVE

SN Adverbial or other adjunct being embedded between the two parts of a second infinitive

BT Infinitives

SPLITTING

SN Result of a single phoneme in an older form of the language becoming two phonemes at a later stage

BT Sound change

SPOKEN LANGUAGE

SN Mode of linguistic communication

BT Speaking

RT Conversation  
Written language

SPONDEES

SN Feet of two syllables, both long

BT Feet

Spontaneous sound change

USE Sound change

SPOONERISMS

SN Accidental or deliberate interchanging of two initial sounds or syllables

BT #Speech errors  
Word games

RT Tongue twisters

Sporadic sound change

USE Sound change

SPREAD VOWELS

UF Unrounded vowels

SN Produced with spread lips

BT Vowels

SPRUNG RHYTHM

SN Accent falling on the first syllable of every foot with a varying number of unaccented syllables following, but all feet are given equal time length in pronouncing

BT Rhythm

STAGE WHISPER

SN Loud whisper on stage, meant to be heard by the audience but not by other characters on stage

BT Dramatic conventions

RT Asides

STAMMERING

UF Stuttering

SN Usually due to psycho-physiological disturbances and more frequent in male than female speakers

BT Speech defects

Standard dialects

USE Standard languages

STANDARD LANGUAGES

UF Standard dialects  
Standard speech

SN Socially favoured varieties of languages

BT Languages

NT Correctness  
Deviance  
Grammaticality  
Inverse spelling  
Overcorrection

RT Accents  
Dialects  
Diglossia  
Illiteracy  
Institutional linguistics  
Koine  
\*Language variation  
National languages  
Standardisation

Standard speech

USE Standard languages

STANDARDISATION

SN Official acceptance by at least some members of a speech community of certain general patterns of pronunciation, grammar, spelling and vocabulary

BT Languages

RT Institutional linguistics  
Standard languages  
Terminology

Stanislavski method

USE Method acting

STANZAS

SN Arrangements of lines of verse in patterns

BT Prosody

NT Chaucerian stanzas  
Couplets  
Heptastich  
Heroic stanzas  
Hexastich  
Octaves  
Ottava rima  
Quatorzains  
Quatrains  
Quintains  
Refrains  
Septets  
Sestets  
Spenserian stanzas  
Triplets

RT Verse

Starred forms

USE Asterisk forms

STATEMENTS

SN Utterances expressing assertions or hypotheses as opposed to questions or commands

BT Sentence patterns

RT Commands  
Questions

STATIC CHARACTERS

SN Figures in novels or plays who change little or not at all during the progress of action

BT Characterisation

RT Flat characters

Static linguistics

USE Synchronic linguistics

STATISTICAL LINGUISTICS

BT Linguistics

NT Distribution  
Frequency counts

RT Mathematical linguistics

STATISTICS

NT Correlation  
Extrapolation  
\*Null hypothesis

RT \*Research

STEM COMPOUNDS

SN Words consisting of two stems

BT Word formation

STEM INFLECTED LANGUAGES

BT Inflected languages

Stem isolating languages

USE Isolating languages

STEMS

UF Bases  
Roots

SN What is left of words when inflectional affixes are removed; derivations occur when affixes are added

BT Word formation

NT Vowel gradations

STEMS (Cont.)

RT Affixes  
Combining forms

STEREOTYPES

SN Anything in literature  
which is fixed and settled

BT Characterisation  
Style

RT Cliches  
Conventions  
Flat characters  
Stock characters

STOCK CHARACTERS

BT Characterisation

NT Miles gloriosus

RT Flat characters  
Fools  
Round characters  
Stereotypes  
Villains

\*STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. Die  
eland

\*STOCKENSTROM, WILMA. Van ver-  
getelheid en van glas

STOPS

UF Complex stops  
Egressive stops  
Implosive stops  
Ingressive stops  
Occlusives  
Pressure stops  
Simple stops  
Suction stops

STOPS (Cont.)

SN Speech sounds which are  
the result of a complete  
closure in the vocal tract

BT Kinetic consonants  
Obstruents

NT Aspirated stops  
Clicks  
Plosives

RT Affricates  
Closures  
Continuants  
Ejectives  
Flaps  
Implosion  
Nasal plosion

STORIES

SN Narratives, true or ficti-  
tious, in prose or verse

BT Narration

NT Story within a story

RT Frame stories  
Novels  
Prose  
Short stories

\*STORY OF AQHAT

STORY WITHIN A STORY

SN Narrative enclosed within  
another

BT Stories

RT Frame stories  
Play within a play

\*STRATEGY

SN Management of an army or  
armies in a campaign

\*STRATIFICATIONAL GRAMMAR

- UF Sememic stratum
- SN An approach to linguistic analysis
- BT Linguistic analysis

STREAM OF CONSCIOUSNESS

- SN Manner of writing in which a character's perceptions and thoughts are presented as occurring in random form
- BT Fiction
- RT Free association  
Impressionism  
Interior monologues  
Psychological novels  
Slice of life  
Soliloquies

STRESS

- UF Bound accent  
Fixed accent  
Fixed stress  
Free stress  
Heavy stress  
Minimal stress  
Primary accent  
Secondary stress  
Sentence stress  
Tertiary stress  
Weak stress  
Word stress
- SN Greater force exerted in the articulation of one part of an utterance compared with another
- BT Articulation
- NT Emphasis  
Expiratory accent  
Initial stress  
Oxytones  
Paroxytones

STRESS (Cont.)

- NT Proparoxytones  
Silent stress  
Terminal stress
- RT Accent (Stress)  
Contour  
Oxytonic languages  
Paroxytonic languages  
Prosodic features  
Scansion
- Stress accent
- USE Expiratory accent

STRESS MARKS

- SN Diacritic marks placed at the beginnings of syllables to indicate that they carry the main stress
- BT Diacritic marks

Stress timed language

- USE Tempo

STRING ANALYSIS

- SN Method of grammatical analysis
- BT Grammatical analysis
- NT Strings
- RT Immediate constituent analysis
- String constituent analysis
- USE Tagmemics

STRINGS

SN Concatenations of elements in linear sequence

BT String analysis

STRONG DECLENSIONS

UF Indefinite declensions

SN Certain declensional paradigms of nouns and adjectives in Germanic languages

BT Declensions

RT Weak declensions

Strong verbs

USE Irregular verbs

STRUCTURAL LINGUISTICS

UF Structuralist linguistics  
Structuralistic linguistics  
Structuralism

BT Linguistics

Structural meaning

USE Meaning

Structural words

USE Function words

Structuralism

USE Structural linguistics

Structuralist linguistics

USE Structural linguistics

Structuralistic linguistics

USE Structural linguistics

STRUCTURE

SN 1. Planned framework of a literary selection  
2. Organisation of the language as a whole and of individual linguistic elements into meaningful patterns

BT Systemic grammar

NT Deep structure  
Surface structure

RT Form  
Gestalt  
Levels

Structure drill

USE Pattern drill

STURM UND DRANG

SN Eighteenth-century revolutionary literary movement in Germany

BT Literary movements

Stuttering

USE Stammering

STYLE

SN 1. Personal use an individual makes in speech or writing of a language at his disposal  
2. The characteristics of a literary selection concerning form of expression rather than thought conveyed

STYLE (Cont.)

- SN 3. The impress of a writer's personality upon his subject matter
- BT Stylistics
- NT Ambiguity  
Analogy  
Archaisms  
Bombast  
Bowdlerisation  
Cliches  
Coherence  
Continuity  
Conventions  
Economy  
Exaggeration  
#Figurative language  
Fixations  
Incoherence  
Local colour  
Malapropisms  
Motivation  
Originality  
Parrhesia  
Pedantry  
Platitudes  
Poetic license  
Redundancy  
Stereotypes  
Taboos  
Understatement  
Verbosity
- RT Form  
Technique

STYLISTICS

- UF Linguostylistics  
Phonostylistics  
Stylostatistics
- SN Application of linguistic knowledge to the study of style
- BT Literature
- NT Style  
Technique

STYLISTICS (Cont.)

- RT Semiotics
- Stylostatistics
- USE 1. Mathematical linguistics  
2. Stylistics
- Subclauses
- USE Subordinate clauses
- SUBJECTIVE CASE
- BT Case
- RT Nominative case  
Objective case
- Subjective pronouns
- USE Pronouns
- SUBJECTIVITY
- SN Concentration upon self
- BT Aesthetics
- RT Autobiographies  
Bildungsromane  
Objectivity  
Taste

SUBJECTS

- UF Grammatical subjects  
Logical subjects  
Psychological subjects
- SN Nominal phrases functioning as one of two main constituents of sentences
- BT Sentence parts
- RT Objects

SUBJECTS (Cont.)

RT Predicates  
\*Split ergativity

Subjunctive mode

USE Subjunctive mood

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

UF Subjunctive mode

SN Verb form used to indicate subordination

BT Mood

RT Indirect speech

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

UF Dependent clauses  
Hypotactic clauses  
Subclauses

SN Clauses dependent on other clauses for their full meaning and joined to main clauses by means of subordinating conjunctions

BT Clauses

RT Main clauses  
Relator axis clauses  
Subordinating conjunctions

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

UF Qualifying conjunctions  
Subordinative conjunctions  
Subordinators

SN Conjunctions used to introduce subordinate clauses or to join them to main clauses

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS (Cont.)

BT Conjunctions

RT Subordinate clauses

Subordinative conjunctions

USE Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinators

USE Subordinating conjunctions

Subphonemic variants

USE Allophones

Subplots

USE Counterplots

SUBSTANCE

SN Medium by which language is transmitted

BT Systemic grammar

RT Form

Substandard speech

USE Manner of discourse

Substantive universals

USE Universals

Substantives

USE Nominals



## SUBSTITUTION

- UF Contrastive substitution
- SN Process or result of replacing a linguistic item within a larger unit by another to explain linguistic structures to learners
- BT Language teaching
- RT Substitution frames

### Substitution drill

- USE Pattern drill

## SUBSTITUTION FRAMES

- SN Sequences such as phrases or sentences which contain slots that can be filled by several variable items
- BT Language teaching
- RT Pattern drill  
Slots  
Substitution

### Substrate

- USE Substratum

## SUBSTRATUM

- UF Substrate
- SN Forms of a language which affect those of another, more dominant speech community
- BT Change
- RT Adstratum

## Suction stops

- USE Stops

## SUFFIXES

- UF Endings
- SN Affixes added to the ends of words
- BT Affixes
- NT Ameliorative suffixes  
Inflectional suffixes
- RT Infixes  
Prefixes

## SUFFIXING LANGUAGES

- BT Languages
- RT Prefixing languages

## \*SUN

- SN Star which is the centre of the solar system

## Superficial structure

- USE Surface structure

## SUPERIOR COMPARISON

- UF Upward comparison
- SN Comparative form of adjective or adverb indicating something possesses more of a certain quality than something else
- BT Adjectives  
Adverbs
- RT Inferior comparison

Superlative degree

USE Degree

#### SUPINES

SN Forms of verbal nouns in Latin

BT Verbal nouns

#### SUPPLETIVES

UF Forlorn elements

SN Substitutes for missing forms in a paradigm

BT Grammar

Supradentals

USE Alveolars

Supraglottal cavity

USE Cavity

Supraglottal friction

USE Friction

Suprasegmental features

USE Prosodic features

Surface grammar

USE Surface structure

#### SURFACE STRUCTURE

UF Superficial structure  
Surface grammar

#### SURFACE STRUCTURE (Cont.)

SN Relationship existing between elements of a produced sentence as a result of the linear sequencing of these elements

BT Structure

RT Deep structure

#### SURREALISM

SN Style in literature and art stressing the subconscious or nonrational aspects of man's existence

BT Literary movements

RT Futurism  
Theatre of the absurd

#### SUSPENSE

SN State of mental uncertainty, excitement or indecision

BT Plots

RT Cliff hangers

Sustained junctures

USE Junctures

#### \*SYBARIS

BT \*Ancient Greece

#### #SYLLABIC PEAK

UF #Crest of sonority  
#Nucleus  
#Peak of prominence  
#Peak of sonority

#SYLLABIC PEAK (Cont.)

SN That portion of a syllable which stands out due to highest pitch or strongest stress

BT Syllables

Syllabic signs

USE Syllabograms

Syllabication

USE Syllabification

SYLLABIFICATION

UF Syllabication

SN Division of words into syllables

BT Words

NT Anaptyxis

RT Syllables

Syllable signs

USE Syllabograms

Syllable timed language

USE Tempo

SYLLABLES

UF Marginal elements  
Slopes

BT Words

NT Blocked syllables  
Canonic forms  
Cudas  
Disyllabics

SYLLABLES (Cont.)

NT Free syllables  
Monosyllables  
Onset  
#Open syllables  
Polysyllables  
#Syllabic peak  
Trisyllables

RT Moras  
Syllabification  
Syllabograms

SYLLABOGRAMS

UF Syllabic signs  
Syllable signs

SN Graphic signs used in some writing systems

BT Writing systems

RT Logograms  
Signs  
Syllables

\*Syllabuses

USE \*Curricula

SYLLEPSIS

SN The same word (verb or preposition) is applied to two others in different senses

BT Syntax

RT Zeugma

SYLLOGISMS

SN Formulae or patterns for the logical presentation of arguments

BT Logic

SYLLOGISMS (Cont.)

RT Fallacy  
Premises

Symbolic signs

USE Signs

SYMBOLISM

SN Practice of representing  
objects or ideas by sym-  
bols

BT Literary movements

NT Symbols

RT \*Emblems  
Impressionism  
\*Mythology  
Realism

SYMBOLS

SN Something used for, or  
regarded as, representing  
something else

BT Symbolism

RT Allegory  
Signs  
Syntactics

Symmetry

USE Proportion

SYMPATHY

SN Fellow feeling, compas-  
sion

BT Aesthetics

RT Empathy

SYNCHRONIC LINGUISTICS

UF Static linguistics

BT Linguistics

RT Diachronic linguistics

SYNCOPE

SN Loss of one or more sounds  
or letters from the middle  
of a word

BT Pronunciation

Syncretism

USE Deflection

SYNECDOCHE

SN Figure of speech in which  
the part is used for the  
whole or the whole for the  
part

BT Figures of speech

RT Metonymy

SYNONYMS

SN Two or more words with  
identical meanings

BT Semantic pairs  
Thesauri

NT Near synonyms

RT Antonyms

SYNTACTIC COMPOUNDS

SN Compound words consisting  
of two or more free forms  
which have relationships  
similar to those they  
would have in phrases

SYNTACTIC COMPOUNDS (Cont.)

- BT Compound words
- RT Synthetic compounds

Syntactic groups

USE Phrases

#Syntactic lexical categories

USE Parts of speech

Syntactic order

USE Word order

Syntactic patterns

USE Sentence patterns

SYNTACTICS

- SN 1. System and study of the characteristic arrangement of syntactic units in sequence  
2. Studies the relationships between symbols in relation to each other

BT Semiotics  
Tactics

RT Symbols  
Syntax

SYNTAGMEMES

SN Groups of tagmemes at one level representing tagmemes of a higher level

BT Tagmemics

SYNTAX

SN Studies the arrangement of words in sentences and how such relationships are shown

BT Grammar

- NT Agreement
- Coordinate constructions
- Dependency grammar
- Direct speech
- Discontinuity
- Disjunction
- Displaced speech
- Familiar form
- Government
- Heads
- Honorific form
- Immediate speech
- Indirect speech
- Polite form
- Sentence parts
- Syllepsis
- Taxemes
- \*Valency
- Word order
- Zeugma

RT Sentences  
Syntactics

SYNTHESIS

SN Process or result of combining elements to form utterances

BT Speech production

RT Synthetic languages

SYNTHETIC COMPOUNDS

UF #Verbal compounds

SN Compound words at least one part of which consists of bound forms which cannot occur on their own

BT Compound words

SYNTHETIC COMPOUNDS (Cont.)

RT Inseparables  
Syntactic compounds

Synthetic index

USE Index

SYNTHETIC LANGUAGES

BT Languages

RT Analytic languages  
Inflected languages  
Synthesis

System structure grammar

USE Systemic grammar

Systematic phonemic representation

USE Phonology

Systematic phonetic representation

USE Phonology

Systematic phonological representation

USE Phonology

SYSTEMATIC TRANSCRIPTIONS

SN Phonetic transcriptions  
relying on the phonetician's knowledge of the sound system of the language transcribed

BT Phonetic transcriptions

RT Impressionistic transcriptions

SYSTEMIC GRAMMAR

UF Exponence  
Neofirthian linguistics  
Scale and category grammar  
System structure grammar

BT Linguistic analysis

NT Context  
Form  
Rank  
Rank scales  
Structure  
Substance  
Systems  
Units

SYSTEMS

SN 1. Describe languages as organised wholes  
2. Relationships between members of paradigmatic classes

BT Systemic grammar

TABOOS

SN 1. Avoidance of embarrassing words in certain circumstances  
2. Forbidden or excluded from use by custom, order or taste

BT Style

NT Noa words

RT Euphemisms  
Obscenity

TACTICS

SN System and study of the characteristic arrangement of linguistic units in sequence

BT Linguistics

TACTICS (Cont.)

NT Lexotactics  
Morphotactics  
Phonotactics  
Syntactics

RT Selection restriction

\*Tagelieder

USE Albas

TAGMAS

SN Minimum units of substance

BT Tagmemics

RT Tagmemes

TAGMEMES

UF Grammemes

SN Minimum units of form

BT Tagmemics

RT Allotagmas  
Tagmas

Tagmemic analysis

USE Tagmemics

TAGMEMICS

UF String constituent analysis  
Tagmemic analysis

SN School of linguistic analysis

BT Linguistic analysis

NT Allotagmas  
Layering

TAGMEMICS (Cont.)

NT Relator axis clauses  
Relator axis phrases  
Slots  
Syntagmemes  
Tagmas  
Tagmemes

Talking

USE Language acquisition

TALL TALES

UF Cock and bull stories

BT Genre

Tamber

USE Timbre

Tambre

USE Timbre

TANKAS

SN Similar to haikus: thirty-one syllables arranged in five lines

BT Poems

RT Haiku  
Quintains

Taps

USE Flaps

TARGET LANGUAGES

SN Languages into which original texts are translated or into which loan words are borrowed

TARGET LANGUAGES (Cont.)

BT Translation

RT Source languages

TASTE

SN Sense of what is harmoni-  
ous, fitting or beautiful

BT Aesthetics

RT Criticism  
Subjectivity

Tautology

USE Redundancy

TAXEMES

UF Grammatical features

SN Significant features of  
syntactic relationships

BT Syntax

\*TEACHER TALK

SN Communication of taught  
material by the teacher

BT \*Classroom processes

\*TECHNICAL DICTIONARIES

BT Dictionaries

TECHNIQUES

SN Manners or abilities with  
which writers or artists  
employ the skills of  
their crafts

BT Stylistics

TECHNIQUES (Cont.)

RT Style

Teeth ridge

USE Alveolar ridge

TEKNONYMS

SN Names given to parents  
based on the names of  
a child

BT Names

RT Matronyms  
Patronyms

Telescoped words

USE Blends

TELESTICH

SN Poems in which the last  
letters of successive  
lines form words or phra-  
ses

BT Word games

RT Acrostics  
Mesostich

#Television drama

USE Television plays

\*TELEVISION NEWS

SN Newscasts over television  
networks

BT Mass media



## #TELEVISION PLAYS

UF Television drama

BT Plays

## TEMPO

UF Isochronism  
Isosyllabism  
Stress timed language  
Syllable timed language

SN Rate of articulation,  
usually measured in terms  
of syllables per second

BT Articulation

RT Rhythm

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

SN Adverbial clauses refer-  
ring to the time when an  
action takes place

BT Clauses

RT Adverbial clauses

## TENSE

BT Verbs

NT \*Aorist  
Future perfect tense  
Future tense  
Historic present tense  
Imperfect tense  
Past tense  
Perfect tense  
Pluperfect tense  
Present tense  
Sequence of tenses

RT Accidence  
Aspect  
Case  
Gender  
Mood  
Number

## TENSE (Cont.)

RT Weak verbs

## TENSE VOWELS

SN Tension in the muscles of  
the mouth affecting the  
quality of vowels

BT Vowels

RT Lax vowels

## TENSION

SN Quality providing form and  
unity for an artistic work

BT New criticism  
Plots

Terminal junctures

USE Junctures

Terminal rhyme

USE End rhyme

## TERMINAL STRESS

SN Stress on the last syl-  
lable of a word

BT Stress

RT Oxytones

## TERMINOLOGY

SN Sum total of terms used  
in a particular subject

BT Lexicography

RT Standardisation  
Thesauri

TERMS OF ENDEARMENT

SN Showing affectionate relationship between speaker and persons or things referred to

BT Intimate speech

RT Diminutives

Territorial dialects

USE Dialects

Tertiary stress

USE Stress

Test batteries

USE Testing

TESTING

UF Test batteries

SN Setting of exercises and tasks to measure a student's aptitude for a subject or his achievement in the subject

RT Error testing  
Language teaching  
\*Measurements

TETRAMETERS

SN Lines of four metrical feet

BT Verse

Tetrastich

USE Quatrains

TEXTS

SN Sequences of words forming actual utterances in a language

BT Languages

NT Graphs  
Paragraphs  
Segments

RT Messages

\*THAI LANGUAGE

BT Languages

THEATRE

SN 1. Dramatic works collectively  
2. Building or area for staging dramatic representations  
3. Technical aspects of dramatic presentations

BT Drama

NT Acting  
\*Directing  
Mise en scene

RT \*Art  
Little theatre  
Oriental theatre  
Theatre in the round

THEATRE IN THE ROUND

SN Arena theatre

BT Drama

RT Theatre

THEATRE OF THE ABSURD

UF Absurd, Theatre of the

THEATRE OF THE ABSURD  
(Cont.)

SN Avant-garde style of drama ignoring or distorting conventions of structure, plot and characterisation

BT Drama

RT Alienation  
Angst  
Avant garde  
Black comedy

NT Conflict  
Existentialism  
Expressionism  
Obscurantism  
Surrealism

\*THEMISTOCLES

Theoretical linguistics

USE General linguistics

\*THEORIES

SN Generalisations or principles, supported by substantial evidence but not conclusively established, proposed as explanations of observed phenomena or of relations in a given body of fact

RT Hypotheses  
\*Research

Theory of literature

USE Literary theories

THESAURI

SN Lists or dictionaries of lexical items, grouped together by their common or related meanings

BT Vocabulary

NT Synonyms

RT Terminology

Third person

USE Person

Third person imperative mood

USE Mood

\*THREATS

SN Menace of bodily hurt or injury to reputation or property, such as may restrain person's freedom or action

NT \*Indirect threats

THRESHOLD OF HEARING

SN Lowest amplitude which can be heard by the human ear at a certain frequency

BT Hearing

RT Amplitude  
Frequency

THRESHOLD OF PAIN

SN Highest amplitude of sound at a given frequency which can be heard by the human ear without pain

BT Hearing

## THRESHOLD OF PAIN (Cont.)

RT Amplitude  
Frequency

Tight phonation

USE Register

## TILDES

SN Diacritic marks used in phonetic transcription to indicate nasalisation, and in some orthographies to indicate palatisation

BT Diacritic marks

RT Nasalisation  
Palatisation

## TIMBRE

UF Colouring  
Tamber  
Tambre  
Tone colour

SN Features of quality of a vowel sound

BT Vowels

RT Tone

## TIRADES

UF Harangues

BT Rhetoric

RT Soliloquies

## TMESIS

SN Division of a word into its component parts by the interpolation of another word or words

## TMESIS (Cont.)

BT Words

Tonality features

USE Distinctive features

## TONE

UF Lexical tone

SN 1. Significant pitch contour in a tone language  
2. Musical quality in language

BT Melodics

RT Intonation  
Pitch  
Timbre  
Tone languages

Tone colour

USE Timbre

## TONE LANGUAGES

UF Polytonic languages

BT Languages

NT Tonemes

RT Tone

## TONEMES

SN Particular features of pitch which in a tone language distinguish two otherwise identical words or forms

BT Tone languages

RT Pitch

Tones of voice

USE Voice qualifiers

## TONGUE

SN Most important articulator in the vocal tract

BT Organs of speech

## TONGUE TWISTERS

SN Words, or series of words difficult to pronounce

BT Word games

RT Alliteration  
Spoonerisms

## Toponomasiology

USE Toponymy

## Toponomastics

USE Toponymy

## Toponomatology

USE Toponymy

## TOPONYMY

UF Toponomasiology  
Toponomastics  
Toponomatology

SN Branch of onomastics which studies place names

BT Names  
Onomastics

RT \*Place names

## Total assimilation

USE Assimilation

## Total dissimilation

USE Dissimilation

## \*TOWNS

RT \*Place names

## \*TRADE

NT \*Creditors  
\*Debt

RT \*Economics  
\*Industry

## Trade languages

USE 1. Lingua franca  
2. Pidgin

## Traditional grammar

USE Grammar

## TRAGEDY

SN Any compositions with sombre themes carried to disastrous conclusions

BT Genre

RT Comedy

## TRAGICOMEDIES

SN Combine elements of comedy and tragedy

BT Plays

TRANSCRIPTION

- SN Reduction of speech to a written form
- BT Writing
- NT Phonemic transcriptions  
Phonetic transcriptions
- RT Notation

TRANSFER

- SN Process or result of carrying over grammatical forms from one language to another
- BT Language learning
- RT Interference

TRANSFORMATION

- SN Process or result of changing one linguistic structure or structures into another according to certain rules
- BT Transformational generative grammar
- RT Transformation rules

#Transformation cycle

USE #Cyclic principle

TRANSFORMATION RULES

- SN Rules which lay down procedures for converting one grammatical pattern into another
- BT Transformational generative grammar
- NT #Blocking

TRANSFORMATION RULES (Cont.)

- NT Generalised transformation
- RT #Cyclic principle  
Phrase structure  
Transformation  
Transformed sentences

TRANSFORMATIONAL GENERATIVE GRAMMAR

- SN Theory based on Chomsky's work, finding universals and regularities in man's innate ability to understand and produce new "grammatical" sentences
- BT Linguistics
- NT Boundary markers  
Constituent sentences  
Deep structure  
Delimitation  
Derivations  
Downgrading  
Dummy elements  
Embedding  
Phrase structure rules  
Recursiveness  
Semantic components  
Transformation  
Transformation rules  
Transformed sentences
- RT Generative grammar  
Grammar

TRANSFORMED SENTENCES

- UF Derived sentences
- SN Sentences produced after the application of transformation rules
- BT Sentences  
Transformational generative grammar
- RT Transformation rules

Transition areas

USE Areas

Transitional sounds

USE Glides

TRANSITIONS

UF Close junctures  
Close transitions  
Internal hiatus  
Internal open junctures  
Open junctures  
Open transitions  
Plus junctures

SN Phonological features relating to the way in which sounds are joined together

BT Phonology

NT Slurs

RT Junctures  
Liaison  
Prosodic features

TRANSITIVE VERBS

SN Verbs used with direct objects

BT Verbs

RT Factitive verbs  
Intransitive verbs  
\*Split ergativity

TRANSLATION

UF Free translation  
Idiomatic translation  
Literal translation  
Literary translation  
Pragmatic translation  
Word for word translation

TRANSLATION (Cont.)

SN Process or result of converting information from one language variety into another

BT Languages

NT Interpreting  
Machine translation  
Metaphrasing  
Paraphrasing  
Source languages  
Target languages

RT Equivalentents  
Language barriers

TRANSLITERATION

SN Process or result of re-presenting the graphic signs of one writing system by the graphic signs of another script

BT Writing systems

NT Romanisation

TRANSMUTATION

UF Conversion  
Functional change  
#Zero affixation

SN Process or result of changing the class of a word either without changing its form or by a change in stress or other suprasegmental feature

BT Parts of speech

\*TRAVEL

Travesties

USE Burlesques

## TREE DIAGRAMS

SN Illustrations of the genealogical relationships between items

BT Genealogical classification

NT Nodes

RT Family trees

Tremas

USE Diaeresis

## TRIGRAPHS

SN Combinations of three written symbols to represent one speech sound

BT Speech sounds

RT Digraphs

## TRILLS

UF Rolled consonants

SN Speech sounds produced by the air stream causing the tongue or uvula to vibrate several times

BT Manner of articulation  
Speech sounds

RT Flaps

## TRIMETERS

SN Verse lines of three feet

BT Verse

Triphthongs

USE Diphthongs

## TRIPLETS

SN Three successive lines of verse especially when rhyming and of the same length

BT Stanzas

## TRISYLLABLES

SN Words of three syllables

BT Syllables

Triteness

USE Cliches

## \*TRIVIAL LITERATURE

BT Genre

RT \*Escapist literature

## TROCHEES

SN Feet of two syllables, a stressed foot followed by an unstressed one

BT Feet

Tropes

USE Figures of speech

## TROUBADOURS

SN Medieval lyric poets who wrote and sang songs, chiefly about courtly love

BT Poets

RT Minnesingers  
Minstrels



TUDOR		Unconditional sound change
SN	Reigns of Tudor monarchs in England, 1485-1603	USE Sound change
BT	Literary periods	Unconditioned sound change
RT	Elizabethan	USE Sound change
Type		Uncountable words
USE	Genre	USE Mass nouns
TYPOLOGY		Underlying structure
SN	Classification of languages according to phonology, grammar and lexis	USE Deep structure
BT	Categorisation Languages	UNDERSTATEMENT
RT	Comparative linguistics Comparison of languages	SN Form of humour or irony
*UGARITIC LANGUAGE		BT Style
BT	Languages	RT Irony Litotes
*ULRICH VON LICHTENSTEIN. Frauendienst		Unilateral consonants
ULTIMATE CONSTITUENTS		USE Laterals
SN	Smallest units which can be abstracted	UNIT NOUNS
BT	Immediate constituent analysis	UF Class nouns Count nouns Countable nouns Pluralisers
Umlaute		SN Nouns which may form plu- rals
USE	Diaeresis	BT Nouns
Unbounded nouns		RT Mass nouns Plurals
USE	Mass nouns	*UNITED STATES
		RT *American literature

UNITS

SN Elements of linguistic structure

BT Systemic grammar

UNIVERSAL GRAMMAR

UF General grammar

SN View that all languages have linguistic structures in common

BT Grammar

RT Universals

Universal languages

USE Artificial languages

UNIVERSALS

UF Formal universals  
Substantive universals

SN Linguistic categories common to all languages

BT Categorisation

RT Inner form  
Universal grammar

\*UNIVERSITIES

RT \*Public education

Unmarked members

USE Marked members

Unrounded vowels

USE Spread vowels

Unvoiced

USE Voicelessness

Upward comparison

USE Superior comparison

USAGE

SN Way in which members of a speech community use their mother tongue

BT Languages

NT Idiolects

UTOPIAN FICTION

SN Founded upon or involving ideal or imaginary perfection

BT Novels

RT Fantasies

UVULA

SN Appendage to the velum or soft palate, hanging at the centre of the back of the mouth

BT Organs of speech

UVULARS

SN Articulated involving the uvula

BT Speech sounds

NT Dorsouvulars

\*VALENCY

SN Number and type of bonds which syntactic elements may form with each other

BT Syntax

VALUE

SN Relative position a linguistic sign occupies in the semantic system of a language

BT Semantics

\*VALUES

SN Principles and standards that determine the degree of worth or merit of an object or act

RT Norms

\*VANDEN WINTER ENDE VANDEN SOMMER

VARIABLE WORDS

SN Words which can change their form by the addition of inflectional affixes

BT Words

RT Invariable words

VARIANTS

UF Alternants  
Alternative forms

SN Forms which may be used as alternatives

BT Languages

VARIANTS (Cont.)

NT Complementary distribution  
Zeroes

\*VATICANUS GRAECUS

Velaric air stream mechanism

USE Air stream mechanism

Velaric closures

USE Closures

VELARS

UF Gutturals  
Mediovelars  
Postvelars  
Prevelars

SN Articulated with the tongue touching or approaching the velum

BT Speech sounds

NT Dorsovelars  
Labiovelars

RT Nasals

Velic closures

USE Closures

VELUM

UF Soft palate

SN Soft membrane forming the roof of the mouth behind the hard palate

BT Organs of speech

RT Nasal pharynx

Verb clusters

USE Verb phrases

#### VERB PHRASES

UF Phrasal verbs  
Predicate phrases  
Verb clusters  
Verbal groups  
Verbal phrases

SN Groups of words having  
the same syntactic func-  
tion as simple verbs

BT Verbs

NT Modifiers

RT Predicates

Verbal aspect

USE Aspect

#Verbal compounds

USE Synthetic compounds

Verbal groups

USE Verb phrases

#### VERBAL NOUNS

SN Nominals closely related  
in form or meaning to  
verbs

BT Nouns  
Verbs

NT Supines

RT Gerunds

Verbal phrases

USE Verb phrases

Verbal skills

USE Linguistic skills

Verbalisation

USE Speaking

#### VERBOSITY

SN Longwindedness

BT Style

RT Economy

#### VERBS

SN Part of speech functioning  
as predicates in sentences

BT Parts of speech

NT Aspect  
Auxiliary verbs  
Complete verbs  
Composite verbs  
Conjugations  
Copulas  
Defective verbs  
Expanded verb forms  
Factitive verbs  
Finite verbs  
Full verbs  
Gerundives  
Gerunds  
Impersonal verbs  
Infinitives  
Instrumentative verbs  
Intransitive verbs  
Irregular verbs  
Mood  
Nonfinite verb forms  
Participles  
Personal verbs  
Principal parts  
Reciprocal verbs

VERBS (Cont.)

NT Reflexive verbs  
Regular verbs  
Tense  
Transitive verbs  
Verb phrases  
Verbal nouns  
Voice  
Weak verbs

RT Passive infinitive  
Predicates

Vernacular

USE Common language

Vers libre

USE Free verse

VERSE

UF Lines of verse

SN One line of a poem

BT Versification

NT Acatalectic lines  
Alexandrines  
Caesuras  
Catalectic lines  
Dimeters  
End stopped lines  
Epiphora  
Hemistich  
Heptameters  
Hexameters  
Monometers  
Octameters  
Pentameters  
Repetends  
Run on lines  
Tetrameters  
Trimeters

RT Metre  
Stanzas

VERSIFICATION

SN Art and practice of composing verse in terms of related mechanical elements

BT Prosody

NT Verse

VIBRANTS

SN Speech sounds articulated by continuous vibration between a movable and immovable speech organ

BT Speech sounds

RT Resonants

VICTORIAN

SN Reign of Queen Victoria (1837-1901)

BT Literary periods

RT Edwardian

VILLAINS

SN Evil or unwholesome characters

BT Characterisation

RT Antiheroes  
Heroes  
Stock characters

VOCABULARY

UF Word lists

SN Stock of words at the disposal of a speaker or writer

BT Languages

VOCABULARY (Cont.)

- NT Common core  
Dictionaries  
Idioms  
Lexemes  
Lexical items  
#Lexicons  
Thesauri  
Words
- RT Frequency counts  
Idiolects  
Interference  
Loss

Vocabulary changes

USE Semantic changes

Vocal bands

USE Vocal cords

Vocal characterisers

USE Voice qualifiers

VOCAL CORDS

- UF Vocal bands  
Vocal folds
- SN Two folds of tissue which vibrate in the larynx to produce voice
- BT Larynx
- RT Voice

Vocal folds

USE Vocal cords

Vocal qualifiers

USE Voice qualifiers

Vocal tract

USE Organs of speech

Vocalic alternations

USE Vowel gradations

Vocalisation

USE Voicing

VOCATIVE CASE

SN Denotes that the person or personified object is directly addressed

BT Case

RT Direct case

Vocoids

USE Vowels

VOICE

- UF Middle voice
- SN 1. Sound produced by vibration of the vocal cords  
2. Verb form or particular syntactic construction indicating certain relationships between the subject and object of a verb
- BT Verbs
- NT Active voice  
Passive voice
- RT Vocal cords

VOICE QUALIFIERS

UF Tones of voice  
Vocal characterisers

VOICE QUALIFIERS (Cont.)

- UF Vocal qualifiers
- SN Paralinguistic features of the voice conveying information about the state of the speaker
- BT Paralinguistic features

Voice state

- USE Glottis

VOICELESSNESS

- UF Unvoiced
- SN Production of sounds without vibration of the vocal cords
- BT Speech sounds
- RT Voicing  
Whispers

VOICING

- UF Phonation  
Vocalisation
- SN Vibrating the vocal cords during the articulation of speech sounds
- BT Speech sounds
- RT Voicelessness

VOLAPUK

- BT Artificial languages
- RT Esperanto  
Interlingua  
Novial

VOLUME

- UF Loudness
- SN Intensity with which a sound is perceived
- BT Sounds
- RT Amplitude  
Frequency

VORTICISM

- SN Artistic movement of the early twentieth century relating art forms to the machine and to modern industrial civilisation
- BT Literary movements
- RT Futurism

VOWEL CLUSTERS

- SN Combinations of more than one vowel sound
- BT Vowels
- RT Diphthongs

VOWEL GRADATIONS

- UF Ablaut  
Apophony  
Gradations  
Internal changes  
Internal inflexions  
Internal modifications  
Introflexions  
Vocalic alternations
- SN Means of marking different functions of words by varying the vowel sounds in their stems
- BT Stems
- RT Mutations

VOWEL GRADATIONS (Cont.)

RT Vowels

VOWEL HARMONY

SN Feature of some languages where all vowels of a particular polysyllabic word form have a certain feature in common

BT Languages

RT Vowels

VOWEL MUTATIONS

UF Front mutations  
Metaphony

SN Modifications in the vowel sounds of words brought about by neighbouring sounds

BT Mutations  
Vowels

RT Vowel reduction

Vowel quantity

USE Quantity

VOWEL REDUCTION

SN Change in the pronunciation of a vowel under special conditions

BT Vowels

RT Vowel mutations

Vowel rhyme

USE Approximate rhyme

VOWEL SHIFTS

SN Series of regular changes in vowels at a particular stage in the history of a language

BT Sound shifts

RT Consonant shifts  
Vowels

VOWELS

UF Vocoids

SN Speech sounds produced with vibration of the vocal cords but with no closure or stricture in the vocal tract above the glottis

BT Manner of articulation  
Speech sounds

NT Back vowels  
Blocked vowels  
Cardinal vowels  
Close vowels  
Diphthongisation  
Diphthongs  
Free vowels  
Front vowels  
Half close vowels  
Half open vowels  
High vowels  
Lax vowels  
Low vowels  
Monophthongisation  
Monophthongs  
Neutral vowels  
Open vowels  
Peripheral vowels  
Spread vowels  
Tense vowels  
Timbre  
Vowel clusters  
Vowel mutations  
Vowel reduction

RT \*Advanced tongue root features  
Consonants



VOWELS (Cont.)

RT Frictionless continuants  
Intervocalics  
Vowel gradations  
Vowel harmony  
Vowel shifts

Vox nihili

USE Ghost forms

Vulgar speech

USE Manner of discourse

\*WAKHI LANGUAGE

BT Languages

NT \*Hunza dialect

\*WATCHMEN

SN Sentinels or members of  
nightwatch

BT Characterisation

RT Middle ages

WEAK DECLENSIONS

UF Definite declensions

SN Term for certain declen-  
sional paradigms of nouns  
and adjectives in Germa-  
nic languages

BT Declensions

RT Strong declensions

WEAK ENDING

SN Verse ending in which me-  
trical stress falls on a  
syllable or word which  
would not normally be  
stressed

BT Accent (Stress)

Weak stress

USE Stress

WEAK VERBS

SN Verbs in Germanic langua-  
ges which form their past  
tense by the addition of  
inflections

BT Verbs

RT Irregular verbs  
Tense

\*WEISS, PETER. Abschied von den  
Eltern

\*WEST GERMANY

BT \*Germany

WESTERN STORIES

SN Deal with the Wild West  
of America

BT Novels

RT Melodramas  
Mystery stories

WHIMSY

SN Fanciful, capricious or  
playful humour dealing  
with odd or bizarre situ-  
ations

WHIMSY (Cont.)

BT Humour

Whisper state

USE Glottis

WHISPERS

SN Speech produced without voice but with audible friction as a result of partial closure of the glottis

BT Speaking

RT Voicelessness

WHISTLE SPEECH

SN Intonation patterns of speech transmitted by whistling

BT Speaking

Whistling consonants

USE Sibilants

Whodunits

USE Detective stories

Wide diphthongs

USE Diphthongs

Widened meaning

USE Meaning

WIT

SN Acute perception and cleverly appropriate expression of ideas providing amusement and pleasure

BT Comedy

RT Humour

\*WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH. Sine Klauen

Word counts

USE Frequency counts

Word for word translation

USE Translation

WORD FORMATION

UF Derived primary words  
Derived secondary words  
Primary derivatives  
Primary words  
Secondary derivatives  
Secondary words

BT Words

NT Abbreviations  
Acronyms  
Affixes  
Anagrams  
Augmentatives  
Back formation  
Blends  
Coinage  
Compound words  
Derivations  
Derivatives  
Diminutives  
Ghost forms  
Inflection  
Innovation  
Neologisms  
Nonce formations  
Root creations

WORD FORMATION (Cont.)

NT Stem compounds  
Stems  
#Word formation rules

#WORD FORMATION RULES

BT Word formation

Word frequency

USE Frequency

WORD GAMES

BT Literature

NT Acrostics  
#Alliteration  
Anagrams  
#Assonance  
Mesostich  
Palindromes  
Pangrams  
Puns  
Riddles  
Spoonerisms  
Telestich  
Tongue twisters

RT \*Crossword dictionaries  
#Figures of speech

Word groups

USE Phrases

Word lists

USE Vocabulary

WORD ORDER

UF Syntactic order

WORD ORDER (Cont.)

SN Placing of words in a sequence according to the conventions of a given language

BT Syntax

NT Fixed word order  
Free word order  
Inverted word order

Word signs

USE Logograms

Word stress

USE Stress

WORDS

SN Linguistic units

BT Grammatical units  
Vocabulary

NT Ambivalent words  
Auxiliaries  
Cognate words  
Colligations  
Collocations  
Compound words  
Content words  
Cooccurrence  
Epithets  
Function words  
Heterographs  
Heteronyms  
Holophrases  
Homographs  
Homonyms  
International words  
Invariable words  
Lapses  
Loan words  
Mimetic words  
Monosyllables  
Native words  
Numerals  
Qualifiers

WORDS (Cont.)

NT Syllabification  
Syllables  
Tmesis  
Variable words  
Word formation

RT Groups  
Morphemes

WRITING

SN Process or result of re-  
cording language in the  
form of conventionalised  
visible marks or graphic  
signs on a surface

BT Linguistic skills

NT Agraphia  
Archaeography  
Epigraphy  
Illiteracy  
Literacy  
Palaeography  
Preliteracy  
Transcription  
Writing systems  
Written language

RT Reading  
Rhetoric  
Speaking

WRITING SYSTEMS

SN Codes of conventionalised  
graphic signs represent-  
ing speech by reference  
to words, groups of  
sounds or individual pho-  
nemes

BT Writing

NT Arabic script  
Braille  
Characters  
Codes  
Cuneiform script  
Defective writing

WRITING SYSTEMS (Cont.)

NT Digrammatic signs  
Graphemes  
Hieroglyphics  
Iconography  
Ideograms  
Kana  
Linear scripts  
Notation  
Phoneme grapheme corres-  
pondence  
Phonograms  
Punctuation  
Scripts  
Signs  
Spelling  
Syllabograms  
Transliteration

RT Preliteracy

WRITTEN LANGUAGE

SN One of the means or modes  
of linguistic communica-  
tion

BT Writing

RT Spoken language

\*XERXES I

SN Monarch of ancient Persia

\*XHOSA LANGUAGE

BT Languages

RT \*Sesotho language

\*YAHYA IBN HILAL

\*ZEPHANIAH

BT \*Minor prophets

#Zero affixation

USE Transmutation

Zero morphs

USE Zeroes

ZEROES

UF Zero morphs

SN Variant morphs character-  
ised by lack of change

BT Variants

ZEUGMA

SN Use of a verb with two  
subjects or objects or an  
adjective with two nouns,  
though the verb or adjec-  
tive is only appropriate  
to one noun; incorrect  
form of syllepsis

BT Syntax

RT Syllepsis

ZOOSEMIOTICS

SN Study of communication  
between animals

